



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

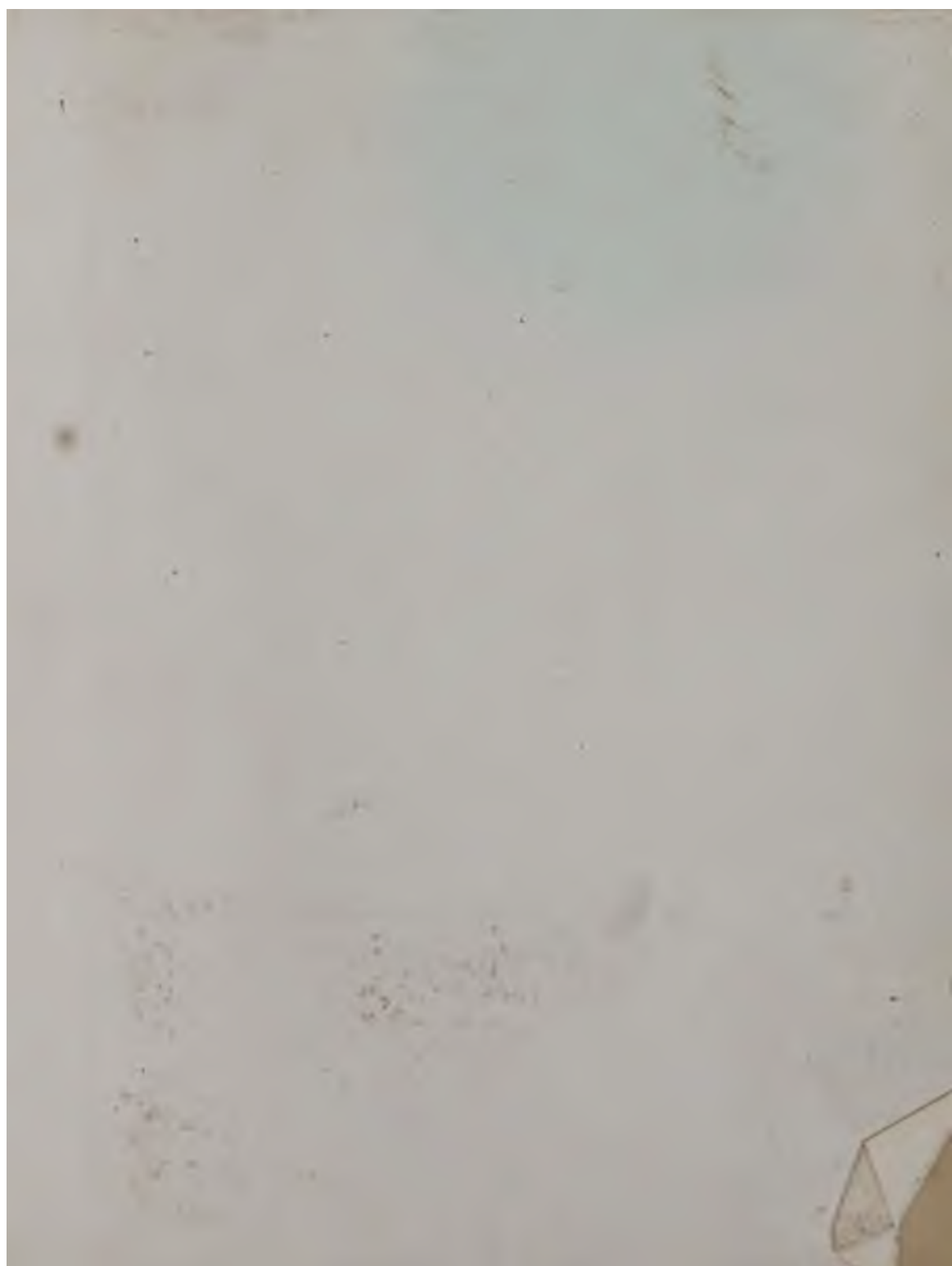




Harvard College Library

FROM

Thomas Yost Cooper





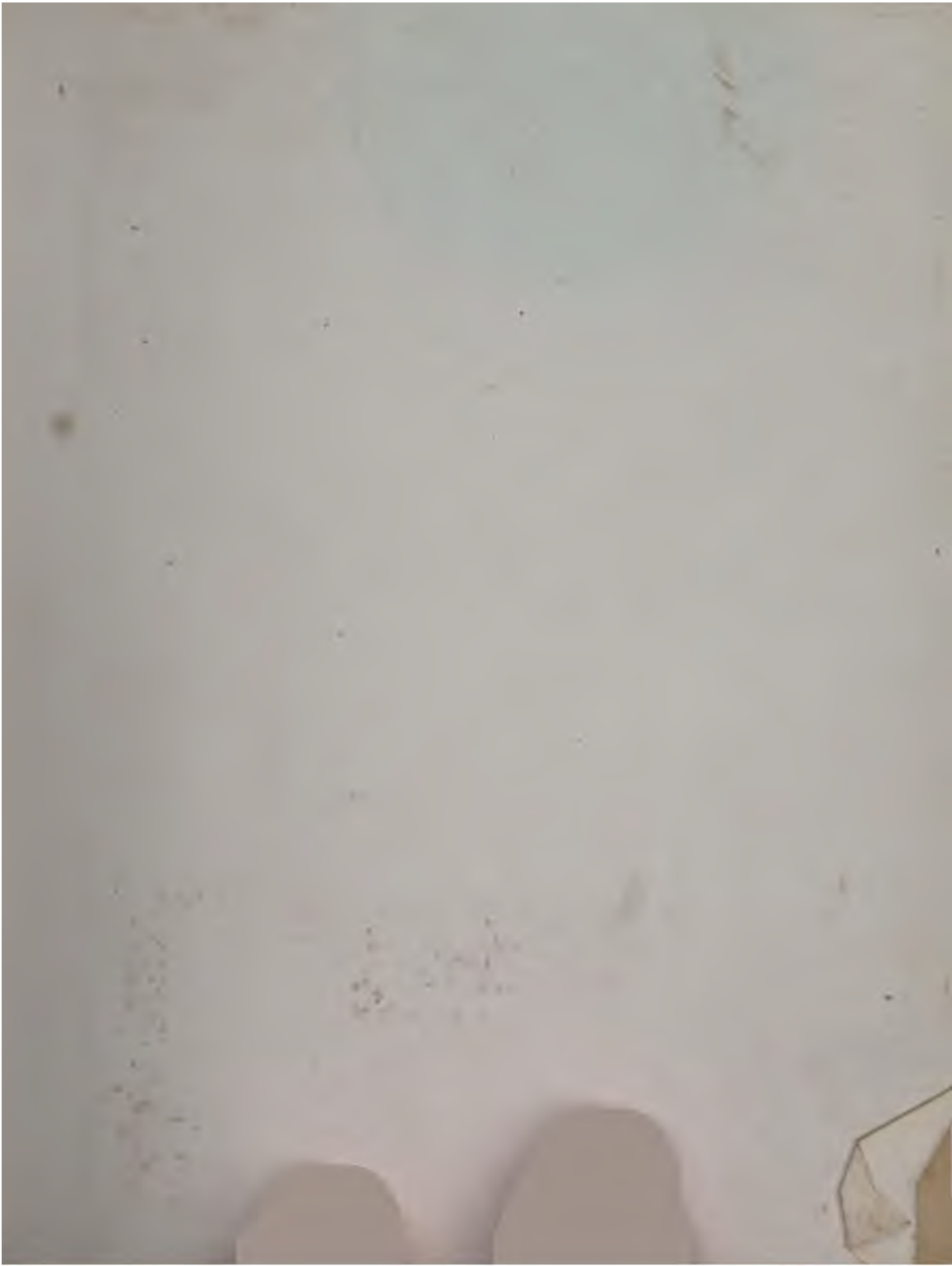
282  
4(1)



Harvard College Library

FROM

Thomas Yost Cooper







*250 copies have been printed of this edition*

To  
Col. H. M. Delavoye  
in grateful remembrance  
of his kindness  
With H. Oskar Sommer's  
compliments & best  
wishes.

THE RECUEILL OF THE  
HISTORIES OF TROYE





# THE RECUYELL OF THE HISTORIES OF TROYE

WRITTEN IN FRENCH BY RAOUL LEFEVRE

TRANSLATED AND PRINTED BY WILLIAM CAXTON

(ABOUT A.D. 1474)

THE FIRST ENGLISH PRINTED BOOK, NOW FAITHFULLY REPRODUCED  
WITH A CRITICAL INTRODUCTION, INDEX AND GLOSSARY  
AND EIGHT PAGES IN PHOTOGRAPHIC FACSIMILE

BY H. OSKAR SOMMER, PH.D.

VOL. I.

LONDON

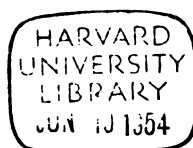
PUBLISHED BY DAVID NUTT IN THE STRAND

1894

27282.67.4

(1)

✓



*Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & CO.  
At the Ballantyne Press*

TO  
THE GENEROUS PROMOTER OF SCHOLARLY STUDIES  
THE RIGHT HONOURABLE  
THE LORD AMHERST OF HACKNEY  
WHOSE KINDNESS AND LIBERALITY HAVE  
RENDERED THE PUBLICATION OF  
THESE VOLUMES POSSIBLE

10

## PREFACE

THE present edition owes its existence in the first place to the initiative of Sir Henry Howorth, M.P.

Persuaded of the value of Caxton's works to the students of the history of the English tongue,<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry long desiderated an edition of "The Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye," adequate to the requirements of modern scholarship. Succeeding, at length, in securing the support of Lord Amherst of Hackney, he has now been enabled to realise his wish.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry Howorth says in the *Athenæum* (Dec. 10th, 1892), speaking of "The Recuyell": "It may sound like a paradox, but in many respects the history of English begins with Caxton. It was the printers who eventually fixed English orthography, but they did much more—they created a normal and typical language. . . . What I wish to emphasise, is the importance of the printer in the fixing and shaping of normal English, and the importance, therefore, of Caxton's works as the earliest sources of printed English, and it seems to me that in tracing the genealogy of the English language, the first occurrence of any word in print is almost the most important stage in its history."



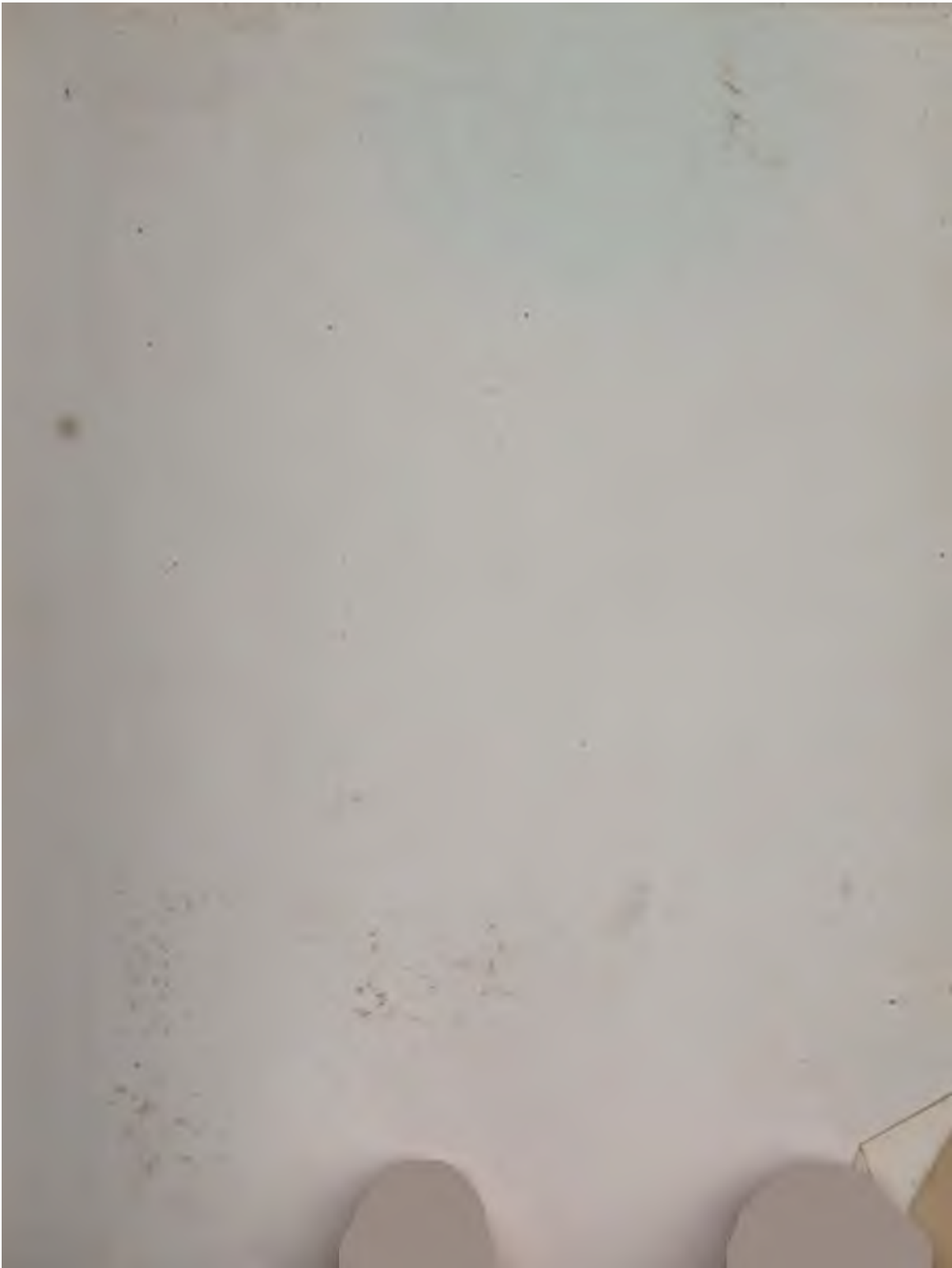
82  
2(1)

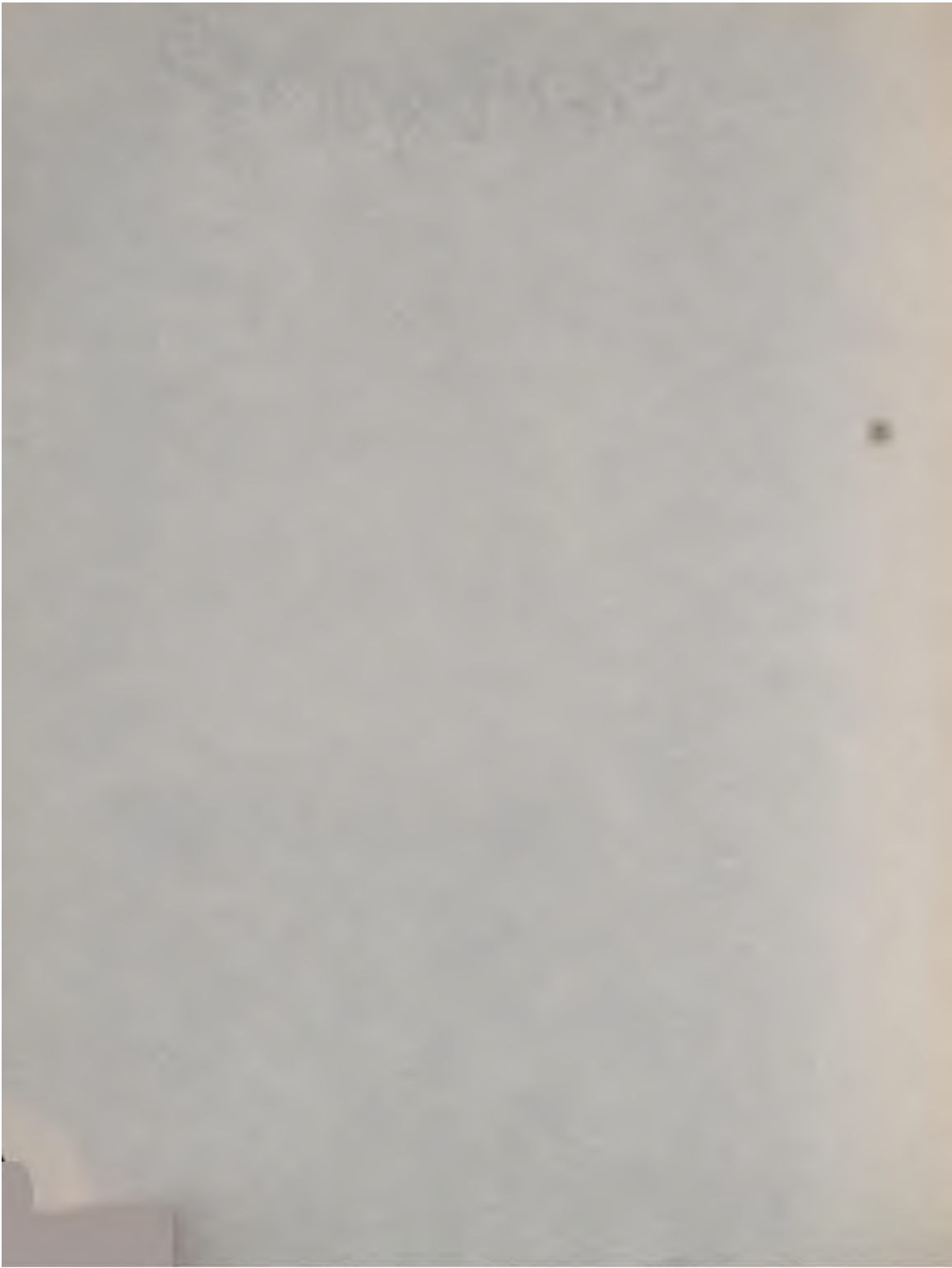


Harvard College Library

FROM

Thomas Yost Cooper







*250 copies have been printed of this edition*

## INTRODUCTION





## THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TROY-LEGEND IN THE MIDDLE AGES.

FROM BENOÎT DE SAINTE-MORE TO RAOUL LEFEVRE.

FOUR great cycles of romance, grouped round Alexander the Great, King Arthur, Charlemagne, and the siege and destruction of Troy by the Greeks, form, as it were, the four ground-pillars of the stately edifice of mediæval literature which, owing to its magnitude and the intricacy of its numberless compartments, presents so many difficulties to the searcher after truth.

To judge from the number of versions of the Troy-legend in the principal European languages, which have been preserved to us in a great many MSS., and from the fact that from the Romans down to the Britons<sup>1</sup> various

---

<sup>1</sup> See G. Heeger, "Über die Trojanersage der Britten." Munich, 1886. 8vo. A. de la Borderie, "L'histoire Britonum attribué à Nennius et l'histoire Britannica avant Geoffroi de Monmouth." Paris, 1883. G. Paris, *Romania*, vol. xii. pp. 367-371. And H. Zimmer "Nennius Vindictus. Über Entstehung, Geschichte und Quellen der 'Historia Brittonum.'" Berlin, 1883. 8vo. — F. Zarncke, "Die sogenannte 'Trojanersage der Franken' in den Berichten über die Verhandlungen der königl. sächs. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften "

nations have successively endeavoured to trace their descent to some of the heroes who distinguished themselves in the Trojan war, it must have enjoyed a great popularity, greater perhaps than that of any other romance-cycle.

The interest which scholars of different nationalities in the present century have taken in the exploration of the origin and development of these romances seems to have been as great as was their popularity in bygone days; and the literature which records their many attempts to throw light on their subject has grown so compendious, that any one who wishes to get an idea of what has really been achieved is compelled to read as many volumes as would make up a small library.

Although the Early English literature is richer than that of any other nation in metrical versions of the Troy-legend—sufficient proof of its great popularity—we cannot boast of a single attempt at a history of the development of this legend such as the French and the Germans possess. To remedy this state of things, at least to some

---

Leipzig, vol. xviii. pp. 257-85. E. Lütgen, "Die Quellen und der historische Werth der fränkischen Trojasage." Bonn, 1876. 8vo. Florentius Turonensis, "De destructione Constantinopolitane sive de ultione Trojanorum contra Græcos." Paris, 1496.—Joannes Parisien-sis, "De Gallica origine Regnorum, etc.," in vol. i. of A. du Chesne's "Historiae Francorum Script." 1836. Fol.—P. Rajna, "Le origine delle famiglie padovane," *Romania*, vol. iv. p. 178. Further, A. Joly in his "Introduction to Benoît de Sainte-More, etc." Paris, 1870 and 1871. Th. Warton, "Hist. of Engl. Poet," ed. Hazlitt, vol. ii. p. 130, note 2; the appendix to MS. No. 253 of the "Bibliothèque Nationale," reproduced in the next chapter. And, last, Victor Rydberg, "Under-sökningar i Germanisk Mythologi." Stockholm, 1889-90. 2 vols., 8vo. English translation by R. B. Andersen. London, 1889. 8vo.

extent, and with a view to clearly defining Lefevre's position and relation to his predecessors, I have here, as an introductory chapter to W. Caxton's translation, given a concise account<sup>1</sup> of the state of our knowledge on the subject up to the present day.

It was not the poetical account of the fall of Troy and the fate of the Greek heroes, so familiar to us from Homer's "Ilias" and "Odyssee," which formed, as we should suppose, the basis for the productions of the mediæval romancers; on the contrary, Homer was very little known, and only through the "Epitome Iliados Homeri" of a Pindarus Thebanus,<sup>2</sup> and, what is worse, despised and considered as unreliable. The following passage from a letter of the pseudo-Cornelius Nepos to Sallustius Crispus, serving as prologue to Dares' "Historia," many times repeated in different words by other writers, "qui post multos annos natus est quam bellum hoc gestum est, de

<sup>1</sup> The following works treat on the whole cycle:—Herrmann Dunger, "Die Sage vom trojanischen Kriege in den Bearbeitungen des Mittelalters und ihre antiken Quellen." Leipzig, 1869. 8vo. A. Joly, "Benoit de Sainte-More et 'Le Roman de Troie,' ou 'Les Métamorphoses d'Homère et de l'Epopée Gréco-Latine au Moyen-Âge.'" Paris, 1870-71. 2 vols., 4to. W. Greif, "Die Mittelalterlichen Bearbeitungen der Trojaner Sage." Marburg, 1886. 8vo. J. G. T. Graesse, "Die grossen Sagenkreise des Mittelalters." Dresden, 1842. 8vo. The "Geschichte der Troja-Sage," of which G. Koerting in his "Grundriss, etc.," p. 114, says, "soll 1888 erscheinen," I have not been able to find anywhere. I have mentioned in the foot-notes of this chapter every work of importance on the subject; works not named are quoted in those here enumerated.

<sup>2</sup> A Latin poem of 1100 hexameters supposed to be written in the first century of the Christian era. See K. Lachmann, *Bericht der Berliner Academie der Wissenschaften*. January, 1841; and Lucian Müller, "Über den Auszug aus der 'Ilias' des sogenannten Pindarus Thebanus." 1857. 8vo, p. 15.

qua re Athenis iudicium fuit, cum pro insano haberetur quod deos cum hominibus belligerasse scripserit," is characteristic of the opinion people held about Homer in the Middle Ages.

The principal sources of the mediæval Troy-legend—which, however, were used directly but by few of the romancers—are, besides Virgil,<sup>1</sup> who must have been very popular, the works of two spurious writers, Dares Phrygius and Dictys Cretensis,<sup>2</sup> belonging to the decadence period of Roman literature.

<sup>1</sup> See D. Comparetti, "Vergilio nel Medio Evo." Livorno. 2 vols., 1872, 8vo; translated into German as "Vergil im Mittelalter" by H. Dutschke. Leipzig, 1875, 8vo. The earliest known mediæval poems in Latin on the fall of Troy, viz., "De excidio Troiae," by Bernhardus Floriacensis, and the "Ilias" by Simon Capra aurea (Chèvre d'or), also owe their origin to the influence of Virgil.

<sup>2</sup> The MSS. of the works attributed to Dares and Dictys, still extant, are very numerous. I have seen several in the Bibliothèque Nationale, the Arsenal, and the Royal Library, Brussels, and the following in the British Museum:—

Dictys Cretensis: Burney, 170; Add. 15,429; Harl. 3,514. — Dares Phrygius: Cotton, Vespasian, B xxv. ff. 98 verso-117; Royal, 15 A xxii. ff. 73-90; Royal, 15 B. xi. ff. 57-66 v.; Vitellius, A. xiii. f. 90 (a fragment); Burney, 216, ff. 89-93 v.; Royal, 6, C. viii. ff. 122-133 v.; Cotton, Vitellius, C. viii. ff. 5-6; Sloane, 1,619, ff. 29-37; Claudius, B. vii. ff. 214-18 b.; Royal, 13 A. v. ff. 88-98; Add. 10,094, ff. 1-14. These MSS. are all more or less complete and written in Latin; there are also three Welsh MSS. of Dares—viz., Add. 15,042; 19,709, and Cotton, Cleopatra, B. v. ff. 223-50. There exist also some early printed editions. Both Dares and Dictys, together with Josephus Iscanus, are printed in Valpy's Classics. London, 1825. 8vo. Dictys is published by A. Dederich ("Dictys Cretensis sive Lucii Septiminii, Ephemeridos belli Trojani, libri sex"). Bonn, 1833. 8vo; and by Ferdinand Meister (Leipzig, 1872, 12mo), who also edited Daretis Phrygii, "De Excidio Trojæ Historia," in 1873. Leipzig, 12mo. See further: G. Koerting, "Dictys und Dares, ein Beitrag zur Geschichte



The first of them, the "Historia de excidio Trojae," is attributed to a certain Dares Phrygius (mentioned by Homer, "Ilias," v. 9), who is said to have been an eye-witness of the war on the side of the Trojans. We possess many MSS. of a Latin version of this work, dating from about the sixth century after Christ, and in a letter addressed to Sallustius Crispus, preceding it as a sort of prologue, it is described as the work of Cornelius Nepos! The existence or non-existence of such a Greek original has given rise to a long controversy, which is not yet, and probably never will be, decided to the satisfaction of all. After having carefully examined and weighed the arguments adduced on either side, and seeing that all evidence brought forth in support of the existence of a

---

der Troja-Sage in ihrem Übergange aus der antiken in die romantische Form." Halle, 1874. 8vo. R. Jäckel, "Dares Phrygius und Benoit de Sainte-More." Breslau. Dissert., 1875. 8vo. Gaston Paris, in the third volume of *Romania*, p. 129, etc. H. Dunger, A. Joly, and W. Greff in their above-mentioned works. See also H. Morf, "Notes pour servir à l'Histoire de la légende de Troie en Italie et en Espagne," *Romania*, vol. xxi. (1892), pp. 18-38. I have been unable to see, before going to press, the second instalment which H. Morf promised to publish in *Romania*.

In favour of a Greek original of Dares have pronounced: A. Dederich (p. xxii. in his edition of Dictys, p. vi. and vii. of Dares); G. K. Fromman (p. 15 of his edition of "Herbert of Fritaldr"); L. Moland and C. d'Héricault (Introd. to "Le Roman de Troilus," Paris, 1858, 8vo, p. 86). A. Pey (in Ebert's *Jahrbüchern*, vol. i. p. 226); and A. Ebert in the same work, vol. iv. p. 90. Gaston Paris, *Romania*, iii. p. 129; and G. Koerting (see above). Against the existence of such a Greek text are: Joly, Meister, Greff, Dunger, Wagner, and Gaston Paris, *Revue Critique* (having changed his opinion), No. 19, p. 120. As to the existence of a Greek Dictys, nearly the same names, with a few exceptions, have to be mentioned, comp. G. Koerting, pp. 10 and 11.



Greek original of the "Historia" attributed to Dares, such as references in early writers, has been conclusively shown to have no value whatever, I incline to consider the Latin text which we possess to be the original, and not a translation.

The second work is the "Ephemeris belli Trojani," in six books, attributed to a certain Dictys of Crete, in which the Trojan War is related from the ravishment of Helena to the return of the Greeks. Dictys is supposed to have been a companion of arms of Idomeneus and Merion. Of this work also we possess only a Latin version, dating from about A.D. 150, and in a letter prefixed to it this is said to be translated from Greek, and the Greek a translation of a Phenician original, discovered by the shepherds of a certain Eupraxis in some tombs destroyed by an earthquake, and brought to the Emperor Nero, who caused it to be rendered into Greek. Whether there ever existed a Greek, or a Phenician, original it is impossible to say; at any rate, no trace of either has ever been heard of, and it is highly probable that the whole story set forth in the letter is false, but this question has yet to be dealt with.

Benoît de Sainte-More, a poet of the north of France, a contemporary of Robert Wace, the author, among other things, of the "Brut d'Angleterre" and the "Roman de Rou" (Rollon), is—as has only been discovered in our own time by H. Dunger—the father of the mediæval Troy-legend: for, directly or indirectly, most of the versions can be traced back to his "Roman de Troie,"<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Of Benoît's "Roman" I have seen the following MSS. :—  
1. Bibliothèque Nationale, Nos. 60 (6737<sup>2</sup>), 375 (6987), 782 (7189), 783

which was finished about 1184. Besides the "Roman de Troie" Benoît wrote "Le Roman d'Eneas," and at the command of Henry II., the "Cronique des Ducs de Normandie."

Much as Benoît has been wronged for centuries through the perfidiousness of one Guido delle Colonne, whom I shall mention presently, he has been most brilliantly vindicated by M. A. Joly, to whom we are not only indebted for the first complete edition of Benoît's "Roman de Troie," but also for a volume of "Prolegomena" such as we find prefixed to few works. Nor has M. Joly limited himself to merely dealing with Benoît, he has examined every work derived from or related to the "Roman de Troie," and there is hardly a question concerning the mediæval Troy-legend which he has not touched upon in some way.

Benoît's poem is written in French, and consists of

---

(7189<sup>7</sup>), 794 (7191), 821 (7209), 903 (7268), 1450 (7535), 1553 (7595), 1610 (7624), 2181 (7990), 12,600, 19,159. 2. Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, Nos. 206 and 207. 3. British Museum: Harl. 4482; Add. 30,863. There exist, further, seven MSS. which I have not seen—viz., in the École de Médecine de Montpellier; in the Royal Library, Vienna; in the Bibliotheca Ambrosiana, Milan; in the St. Mark's Library, Venice; in the Royal Library, St. Petersburg (2 MSS.), and in the Library of Sir Thomas Phillipps. Extracts from "Le Roman de Troie" were published by G. K. Fromman in vol. ii. of Pfeiffer's *Germania*. For further information see "Recueil de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres," vol. iii.; P. L. Ginguené, in vol. xiii. of "Histoire littéraire de France"; Abbé de la Rue in *L'Archéologie*, vol. xii.; Clemens Fischer, "Der altfranzösische Roman de Troie des Benoît de Sainte-More als Vorbild für die mittelhochdeutschen Troja-Dichtungen des Harbort von Fritslar und des Konrad von Würzburg," in *Neuphilologische Studien* (ed. G. Koerting). Paderborn, 1883. 8vo. Further, H. Dugue, A. Joly, H. Greif, R. Jäckel, E. Meybrinck in their works already mentioned.

29,896 lines. While his predecessors have more or less preserved the antique aspect of the materials they made use of, Benoît is the first who, breaking with the past, clothes the whole in a mediæval garment. He transforms the Greek and Trojan heroes into Knights of the Round Table, and their gods and goddesses into men and women of superior intelligence or sorcerers. He has stamped upon his work such a lasting seal that its impression can be recognised, more or less distinctly, on the works of all his successors until the days of the classical revival.

The sources Benoît made use of, as can be seen from passages literally translated, are Dares and Dictys, besides Ovid, and probably Servius Morus Honoratus and Cajus Julius Hyginus. He has greatly improved upon his sources, and dealt with his subject as a poet. Several mistakes which have crept in are more likely caused through the inferiority of his texts than through his own negligence. As in most of the mediæval writers, the references to his sources are not always correct and to be depended upon.

In the year 1287 a certain Guido delle Colonne, a native and judge of Messina, published, at the instance of the Archbishop of Salerno, Mathæus de Porta, under the title of "*Historia*<sup>1</sup> *Destructionis Troiae*," a prose translation

---

<sup>1</sup> Besides several early printed editions there still exist numerous MSS. of Guido's "*Historia*." There were no less than eight MSS. in the Library at Bruges in 1467; there are several in the Bibliothèque Nationale, and the following in the British Museum:—Harl. 4,123, ff. 50-126; Add. 15,477; Royal 15, C. xvi. ff. 86-145; Add. 22,155; Harley, 176 and 3,637; Royal 12 B. iii. ff. 38-143; and 13 C. xii. ff. 6-82; Arundel, 174; there are two MSS. of a French translation in prose, Royal 16, F. ix.; and Add. 1785; one in verse,

of Benoît's "Roman de Troie" in very barbaric Latin, with some additions of his own; but, instead of naming Benoît, he refers repeatedly throughout his work to Dares and Dictys, whose works, according to him, are the only true and trustworthy accounts of the Trojan War, while he declares the descriptions of Ovid and Homer to be fictitious.<sup>1</sup> Although several writers<sup>2</sup> had pointed out the possibility of Guido's indebtedness to Benoît; it was not until 1869 that H. Dunger disclosed the real state of things—i.e., that Guido's "Historia" is little more than a translation of Benoît's "Roman de Troie." Undeservedly Guido has enjoyed for nearly

---

Lansdown, 380, ff. 36-39; and one contains a translation into South German (fifteenth century): Arundel 6, ff. 242-342. Guido's "Historia" was first printed at Louvain ? 1475; then at Cologne, 1477, in quarto, and at Strassburg in 1486, 1489, and 1494, in folio. There does not exist any modern edition, as far as I know. For further information, see: R. Barth, "Guido de Columna." Leipzig, Dissertat., 1877; E. Meybrinck, "Die Auffassung der Antike bei Jacques Milet, Guido de Columna and Benoît de Sainte-More," Marburg, Dissertat., 1886; and the works of H. Dunger, A. Joly, and W. Greif, already mentioned.

<sup>1</sup> Compare the passage on Guido in Chancer's "House of Fame" (ed. R. Morris). Book III. 387.

"Oon seyde that Omere made lyes,  
Feynyng in hys poetries,  
And was to Grekes favorable;  
Therfor held he hyt but fable."

<sup>2</sup> F. Douce, "Illustrations of Shakespeare and of Old Manners, etc." London, 1807. 8vo. J. C. Dunlop, "The History of Fiction," being a critical account of the most celebrated prose works. 3 vols. London. 1816. 8vo (a new edition revised by Henry Wilson. London. 1888. 8vo.). G. K. Fromman in Pfeiffer's *Germania*, vol. II. p. 52, etc. H. L. Cholerius, "Geschichte der deutschen Poesie nach ihren antiken Elementen." Leipzig, 1854-56. 2 parts, p. 112.



six centuries all the honour which is due to Benoît, for what he had borrowed from the latter was, in those uncritical days, considered as the outcome of his learnedness and erudition. The fact that Guido is known as one of the founders of Sicilian poesy, and that he possessed a considerable knowledge for a man of his time, does not, in my opinion, render him less culpable.

Having thus briefly described the four fundamental works of the mediæval Troy-legend, I will now proceed to enumerate the different versions which were derived from them. With a view of making this complicated subject as lucid and clear as possible, I have sacrificed the chronological order, and dealt with the works successively according to their direct relationship to Dares, Dictys, Benoît and Guido.

The following four versions are directly derived from the "*Historia de excidio Trojæ*," attributed to Dares:—

1. "*De bello Trojano, libri sex*," a poem in Latin hexameters, written towards the close of the twelfth century by the English monk, Joseph of Exeter, better known as Josephus Iscanus. It was printed for the first time at Basle, in 1541,<sup>1</sup> and until S. Dresemius, in 1620, discovered

---

<sup>1</sup> The title of the edition, "*Basileae*," 1541, runs thus: "*Daretis Phrygie Poetarum et Historicorum omnium primi, de bello Troiani, in quo ipse militavit, Libri (quibus multis seculis caruimus) sex a Cornelio Nepote Latino carmine Heroico donati & Crispo Sallustio dedicati nunc primum in lucē æditi. Item Pindari Thebani Homerice Iliados Epitome, etc. Adhæc Homeri poetarum principis Ilias, etc.*" The edition of 1620: "*Josephi Iscani . . . de bello Troiano libri sex hactenus Cornelii Nepotis nomine aliquoties editi nunc auctori restituti et notis explicati . . . a S. Dresemio*" (2 parts). Frankforti, 8vo. There appeared editions at Antwerp, 1608; at Milan, 1669; and at London, 1675. The poem is published in J. Valpy's *Classics*,

its real author, was commonly attributed to Cornelius Nepos. Joseph's sources are, besides Dares, Ovid and Virgil.

2. "Troilus," a Latin poem of 5320 lines by Albertus Stadensis,<sup>1</sup> finished, according to his own statement, in 1249. We possess one unique MS. of this poem in the Library at Wolfenbüttel, which was edited by Merzdorf in 1875. Albertus is one of the most faithful renderers of Dares, and uses, besides Pindarus Thebanus, Ovid, Virgil, and Orosius.

3. "Trojumanna Saga," an Icelandic version, by an unknown writer, in one MS., at the Royal Library, Copenhagen; published in 1848 by Jon Sigurdson for the Royal Society of Northern Antiquaries.<sup>2</sup> The sources of this version are Dares, Pindarus, Ovid; in the beginning Theodul's "Ecloga,"<sup>3</sup> and in the end Virgil's "Æneis," are used.

4. "Seege (Batayle) of Troye," a Middle English poem<sup>4</sup>

vol. II. London, 1819, etc. 8vo. *See also:* A. Saradin, "De Josepho Iscani Beili Troiani . . . poeta." 1878. 8vo.

<sup>1</sup> Troilus Alberti Stadensis, "Primum ex unico Guelpherhytano codice editus a T. Merzdorf." Lipsiae, 1875. 8vo.

<sup>2</sup> Published in "Annaler for Nordisk Oldkyndighed." Copenhagen, 1848, pp. 4-101; not to be confounded with the Icelandic "Trojumanna Saga," translated from the Danish, to be noticed under Guido.

<sup>3</sup> Printed at Cologne in 1492 and 1496, and at London by R. Pynson about 1500. Edited by A. Beck, Marburg, 1836.

<sup>4</sup> The MSS. of the British Museum and Lincoln's Inn Libraries are published side by side by A. Zietsch under the title: "Zwei mittellenglische Bearbeitungen der Historia de excidio Troiae des Phrygiens Dares," in the xxxviii<sup>th</sup> year, volume lxxii, of Herrig's *Archiv* (Braunschweig, 1884), pp. 11-58. *See further:* A. Zietsch, "Über Quelle und Sprache des mittellenglischen Gedichtes 'Seege, oder, Batayle of Troye.'" Kassel (Dissertation, Göttingen), 1883. 8vo. E. T. Granz, "Über die Quellengemeinschaft des mittellenglischen Gedichtes etc. und

by an unknown author. Three MSS. are known of this poem, one in the British Museum, Harl. 525; a second in the Library of Lincoln's Inn, London, No. 150; and a third in the Library of the Duke of Sutherland, at Trent-ham. The sources of this poem are Dares, an unknown account of the youth of Paris, the *Achilleis* of Statius, and, very probably, Benoît's "*Roman de Troie*."

The "*Ephemeridos belli Troiani*," attributed to Dictys, has likewise been the direct principal source of several Troy-versions; but, while Dares was the favourite of the Western nations, Dictys was used with preference by the writers of the East and but little by those of the West.

1. The incomplete work of Konrad of Würzburg, which I shall notice under Benoît de Sainte-More, has been continued and terminated by an unknown writer;<sup>1</sup> but, while Conrad derived his information chiefly from Benoît's "*Le Roman de Troie*," and so exhaustively treated the subject that he has not related half of the events of the Trojan war in 40,424 verses, his continuator, without paying attention to the conclusion of the fragment, relates all the remaining events in little more than 9000 verses. This continuator, unacquainted with Benoît's "*Roman*," derives his information chiefly from Dictys, makes occasional use of Dares, now and then of Virgil, and perhaps Ovid. His statements about the Amazons, which have

---

des mittelhochdeutschen Gedichtes vom trojanischen Kriege des Konrad von Würzburg." Dissertation, 1888.

<sup>1</sup> Edited, together with Konrad's poem, in No. 44 of *Bibliothek des Literarischen Vereins zu Stuttgart*: A. von Keller, "*Der Trojanische Krieg von Konrad von Würzburg, nach den Vorarbeiten K. Fromman's und F. Roth's, zum ersten Male herausgegeben*." 1858. 8vo.—*See further*: C. Fischer, Dissert.; W. Greif, etc.; H. Dunger, etc.



induced some to believe he used Benott's "Roman," are, as he says himself, from a "bucche . . . das von Alexander was geschriben." Here may be mentioned that the two tragedies of Hans Sachs, the "Meistersinger," published in 1554, viz., "Zerstörung der Stadt Trojá von den Griechen" and "Mörderisch Königin Clitimestra," have also Dictys as source.

2. The *Χρονογραφία*, by Joannes Malalas,<sup>1</sup> a Syrian monk who lived not later than the sixth century of the Christian era. He uses for his account of the Trojan war the Latin version of Dictys as we possess it, and a lost account of the same war by a certain Sisypchos of Kos; he further borrows from Dominos, Plutarch, Pheidaios of Corinthus, Euripides, and Homer.

3. Through the medium of Malalas' *Χρονογραφία* the following works<sup>2</sup> are derived from Dictys:—

a. *Ἀρχαιολογία (Ἱστορία χρονική)* of Joannes Antiochenus,<sup>3</sup> belonging to the seventh century. There are only some fragments preserved of it.

b. *Σύνοψις Ἱστοριῶν*, by Georgios Kedrenos,<sup>4</sup> not earlier than the eleventh century.

c. *Περὶ τῶν καταλειψθέντων ὑπὸ τοῦ Ὁμήρου*, by Isaakios Porphyrogennetos.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> J. Malalas' *Χρονογραφία* was edited from the unique MS. at Oxford by L. Dindorf in Niebuhr's "Corpus scriptorum historiae Byzantinae." Part 3. Bonn, 1831. 8vo. For further information, see W. Greff, pp. 173-246.

<sup>2</sup> See W. Greff, "Nachfolger Malalas'." Pp. 246-268.

<sup>3</sup> C. Müller in "Fragmenta historicorum Graecorum." Vols. iv. & v.

<sup>4</sup> Edited by J. Bekker in Niebuhr's "Corpus, etc."

<sup>5</sup> H. Hinck, "Polemonis Declamationes quae exstant duae, etc." Leipzig, 1873. 8vo.



d. *Tà prò 'Oμήrou τὰ 'Oμήρου καὶ τὰ μεθ' 'Ομηρον*, by Joannes Tzetzes.<sup>1</sup>

e. *Tà Tρωϊκά*, by an anonymous writer.<sup>2</sup>

We have now to mention the Latin, Greek, French, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, and Middle-High German versions of the Troy-legend, which were directly derived from Benoît's "Roman de Troie":—

1. Guido delle Colonne's "Historia destructionis Troia," which I have already noticed above.

2. The fragments of a Greek translation of the fourteenth century, represented by the MS. No. 2878 of the Bibliothèque Nationale.<sup>3</sup>

3. Benoît's "Roman," modified in various places and with some additions by Jean Malkaraume, a scribe of the thirteenth century, who pretends to be the author of his MS. This version is represented by the MS. No. 903 of the Bibliothèque Nationale.<sup>4</sup>

4. Enlargements, either prefixed and added to Benoît's poem (*e.g.*, MS. No. 821, Bibl. Nat.)<sup>5</sup> or reproductions in prose, as MS. No. 785, and the same with some variations in MSS. Nos. 1612, 1627, and 1631.

5. The accounts of the Trojan War which are to be found in works bearing general titles, such as: "Histoire

<sup>1</sup> F. Jacobs, J. Tzetze, "Ante-Homerica, Homerica et Post-Homerica." Leipzig, 1793. 8vo. Edited by J. Bekker, Berlin, 1816. 8vo.

<sup>2</sup> J. H. Maius, "Bibliotheca Uffenbachiana." Halle, 1720. Fol.

<sup>3</sup> A. C. Gidel, "Études sur la Littérature grecque moderne, etc." Paris, 1866. 8vo, pp. 97-229; and A. Joly, vol. i. pp. 520-22.

<sup>4</sup> Compare: A. Joly, vol. i. pp. 405-7, and W. Greif, pp. 70, 71 and 94, note.

<sup>5</sup> A French poem written by an Italian (14th century), published by A. Bartoli, "I codici francesi della Bibliotheca Marciana, Venezia." Venice, 1872. 8vo. See A. Joly, vol. i. p. 412.

Universelle," "Chronique Universelle," "Histoires d'Oroses," "Fleur des Histoires," "Mer des Histoires," etc.<sup>1</sup>

6. The poets of the south of France have probably also used Benoit's "Roman."<sup>2</sup>

There still exist two Italian versions, one of which is a translation of Benoit's "Roman":—

7. Binduccio dello Scelto translated Benoit's poem about A.D. 1322.<sup>3</sup>

8. The author of the Italian poem "L'Intelligenza"<sup>4</sup> made use of Benoit's "Roman" for his account of the Trojan war.

We, further, possess some Spanish versions:—

9. The version represented by a Castilian (Bibliothèque de l'Escorial, H. I. 6) and a Galician MS. (Bibliothèque d'Osuna, I. N. 16). These were both finished in December 1350; the scribe's name is Nicolas Gonzales.<sup>5</sup>

10. The metrical version represented by MS. No. L.

<sup>1</sup> See A. Joly, vol. i. p. 414, etc.; and P. Meyer, "Les premières Compilations françaises d'Histoire 'ancienne.'" *Romania*, vol. xiv. p. 63, etc.

<sup>2</sup> A. Birch-Hirschfeld, "Über die den provenzalischen Troubadours des 12. und 13. Jahrhunderts bekannten epischen Stoffe." Leipzig, 1878. 8vo. C. Bartsch, vol. ii. p. 319, etc., in Gröber's *Zeitschrift*, and Gaston Paris, *Romania*, vol. vii. p. 456.

<sup>3</sup> A. Mussafia, "Sulle Versioni italiane della Storia Trojana," in *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener-Academie, phil.-hist. Classe.* 1871, p. 301. P. Meyer, *Romania*, vol. xiv. p. 77.

<sup>4</sup> P. Gellrich, "Die Intelligenza, ein altitalienisches Gedicht, nach Vergleichung mit den beiden Handschriften herausgegeben." Breslau, 1883. 8vo; and A. Mussafia in the *Literaturblatt* volume of 1884, columns 153-58.

<sup>5</sup> A. Mussafia, "Über die spanischen Versionen der Historia Trojana," *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener-Academie.* 1871, p. 39.

II. 16, of the Escorial Library, is probably also derived from Benoît's "Roman."

Next we have to notice some Dutch versions:—

11. Segher Dieregotgaf's poem.<sup>1</sup>

12. Jacob van Maerlant's "Istory van Troyen,"<sup>2</sup>

And, lastly, some Middle-High-German versions have to be mentioned:—

13. Herbort von Fritslâr's "liet von Troye,"<sup>3</sup> composed at the instance of Herrmann, "Landgraf" of Thuringia. Besides Benoît's "Roman," Herbort used Dares, Ovid, and the Achilleis of Statius.

14. The incomplete poem of Konrad of Würzburg.<sup>4</sup> Death (1287) prevented Konrad from finishing his work. He had written 40,424 verses and yet not related half of the events told by Benoît. He made use of an account of the youth of Paris which we no longer possess, Ovid, Statius, Pindarus Thebanus, perhaps Herbort's poem.

15. Konrad's poem was utilised by Heinrich of Braunschweig, Rudolf von Ems in his "Weltchronik," and by the

<sup>1</sup> Published for the first time in "Oudvlaemsche Gedichten der xii<sup>e</sup>, xiii<sup>e</sup> en xiv<sup>e</sup> Eeuwen." Ghent, 1838. Vol. i.

<sup>2</sup> "Oudvlaemsche Gedichten" (wrongly attributed to Segher), i. pp. 27-56; ii. p. 73 and p. 93; and in Theophilus, "Gedicht der xiv<sup>e</sup> Eeuw gevolgd door negen andere Gedichten uit de Middeleeuwen." Ghent, 1858. The complete poem was only in 1871 discovered by J. A. Wolff. See *Anzeiger für Kunde der deutschen Vorzeit*, 1871, No. 2.—For information on both Dutch versions, see J. Verdam, "Episodes uit Maerlant's 'Historie van Troyen,'" in H. E. Holtzer's "Bibliothek van Mittelnederlandsche Letterkunde, etc.," 30, 33. 1882. 8vo.

<sup>3</sup> Edited by K. Fromman in vol. v. of "Bibliothek der gesammten National Literatur." Quedlinburg and Leipzig, 1837. 8vo. See C. Fischer's "Dissertation," mentioned, above p. xxiii., under Benoît.

<sup>4</sup> A. Keller, "Der trojanische Krieg, etc." Stuttgart, 1858. 8vo.

author of the account of the Trojan war in the "Repgau-ische Chronik."<sup>1</sup>

16. The poem, which is preserved in a unique MS. of the fifteenth century at the monastery of Gottwich, by an author who uses the pseudonym, Wolfram of Eschenbach,<sup>2</sup> although it resembles in some points "Le Roman de Troie," has evidently no definite source.

Lastly, we have to name the versions which were translated or derived from the "Historia destructionis Troiae" by Guido delle Colonne:—

1. The translation by Filippo Ceffi of Florence, 1324. It was printed for the first time at Venice in 1481, and is reprinted in 1868 at Naples by Michele Dello Russo. The Italian MS., No. 120, of the Bibliothèque Nationale contains Ceffi's text in its beginning, while in its end it follows a prose-version of Benoît's "Roman," the same as is represented, save as to some variants, by the MSS. Nos. 785, 1612, 1627, and 1637, and by one MS. of the Royal Library at St. Petersburg. Mussafia<sup>3</sup> mentions two other codices which evidently contain the same version.

2. "Storia di Guido, recata in volgare per ser Matteo di ser Giovanni Bellebuoni da Pistoja, fatto li anni 1333."

3. The Italian poem "Il libro del Trojano," belonging to

<sup>1</sup> Extracts from the version of Heinrich of Braunschweig, see in A. Dederich's edition of "Dares und Dictys"; A. F. C. Vilmar, "Die zwei Recensionen der Weltchronik Rudolph's von Ems," Marburg, 1839, 8vo. Compare further W. Greif, pp. 122-25.

<sup>2</sup> See H. Dunger, pp. 70-74, and W. Greif, pp. 125-29.

<sup>3</sup> A. Mussafia, "Sulle Versioni italiane della Storia trojana," in *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener Academie*, 1870, p. 297, etc.; and P. Meyer, in *Romania*, vol. xiv. p. 77. See also W. Greif, pp. 64-65; and A. Joly, vol. i. pp. 417-504.



the fifteenth century, was very probably also derived from Guido's "Historia."

4. "Historia de Troya," probably written by Pedro Lopez de Ayala (about 1375), and preserved in the library of the Duke of Osuna (II. M. 23).<sup>1</sup>

5. The Spanish translation of Guido's "Historia," by Jacme Conesa (1367), is also in the library of the Duke of Osuna (III. M. 2).

6. "Cronica Troyana," printed for the first time in 1490 at Burgos.

7. The version of Pedro Nuñez Delgado, printed for the first time in Sevilla, 1502, considerably enlarged in the edition printed in 1587 at Medina.

There exist, besides Lefevre's "Recueil des Histoires de Troie," the best known of the French translations of Guido's "Historia," others, and it is highly probable that some more existed of which we have no record. The MS. No. 253 of the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal (written about 1420) is a very free translation, as the specimens printed by M. Joly<sup>2</sup> show. The writer of this MS. has prefixed to his "Histoire de Troie," from the "Heroides" of Ovid, "Les Epîtres des dames de Grèce à leurs maris;" and added at the end the same short genealogy which occurs in the MS. No. 253 (Lefevre's "Recueil") of the Bibliothèque Nationale, and which I have quoted further on in a note on p. xlix., note i.

Here have also to be mentioned the versions represented

---

<sup>1</sup> Concerning No. 4-7, see W. Greif, pp. 65-66; and A. Mussafia, "Über die spanischen Versionen der 'Historia Trojana,'" in *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener Academie*, 1871, p. 39. See also Morel Fatio in *Romania*, vol. iv. p. 83.

<sup>2</sup> A. Joly, "Le Roman de Troie, etc.," vol. i. pp. 485-87.

by the MSS. Royal 16 F. ix., Add. 9785, and Lansdown 380, in the British Museum.<sup>1</sup>

Next, M. Joly<sup>2</sup> refers us to a MS. at St. Petersburg in these terms :

"La bibliothèque de St.-Petersbourg, sous le No. 2, possède un exemplaire d'une traduction semblable, ayant pour titre : *La vraie histoire au long de la destruction de Troie la grant*. C'est un manuscrit à deux colonnes, orné de soixante-douze grandes et très-belles miniatures et de cinquante-cinq petites. Il est de la fin du xvi. siècle. Il se termine par ses mots : *Jasoit ce que on doit croire que ou la bouche de preudhomme n'a que vérité . Et Ditis racompte de ce qu'il vit et secut depuis qu'il eut perdu la compaignye de son bon compaignon Darès . Ci fin is la vraie histoire de Troie la grante dicte.*"

And, at last, he quotes M. Brunet<sup>3</sup> as to a printed book :

"*Histoire de la destruction de Troie* (sans lieu ni date) in f° goth., probablement vers 1480.—*Prologue* : *Celluy qui a ceste histoire commencé d tous*. Teste 115 ff.—*Ce liure traicte dont procédèrent ceuz qui édifièrent Troie la grant quant en généalogie par quelz gens elle fut destruite et l'occasion pour quoy, de la persécution aussi de ceulx qui la destruirent et de ceuz qui se portèrent (sic !) pour la destruction*. Dernier f°, fin : *seuille donner et ottroyer.*"

<sup>1</sup> Compare H. L. D. Ward, "Catalogue of Romances, etc." London, 1883, vol. i. pp. 54-9.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 487, notes 1 and 2.

<sup>3</sup> J. C. Brunet, "Manuel du Libraire, etc. Columna messan," vol. ii. cols. 169-172. In column 170 M. Brunet mentions two other printed editions of the same work, of equal rarity ; the one which he has not seen himself was printed about 1480, the other by Jehan Trepperel at Paris about 1505.

The only known copy of this edition, at one time in the library of Mr. Heber, is now in the British Museum (C. 39. g. 5). It is very little known, and has been repeatedly confounded by bibliographers with Lefevre's "Recueil" or Milet's mystery, but it is in no way connected with either of them. M. Joly, not having seen this copy, has left me to make the interesting discovery that the translation of Guido's "Historia" contained in it is identical with that of the above-mentioned MS. at St. Petersburg.

The book consists of 125 leaves, nine of preliminary matter and 116 of text. As the prologue contains a good deal of information regarding the contents of the book, I have here quoted some passages from it:

"Celluy qui a ceste histoire commencee a tous ceulx qui celle veront salut, pour ce que pluseurs comme princes, nobles bourgeois marchans et aultres se doubtoient de la genealogie de ceulx par qui troye la grant fu destruite et la raison pour quoy emprist ceste oeuvre a faire combien que la simplesse de son engin ne souffist a traicter oeuvre de si haulte histoire lirront ou orrond lire q se aulcune chose il truuent a blasmer quilz le seuffrent paciamment sans reprehencion villaine. . . . Et pour ce que en ce present liure traictera de pluseurs matieres lesquelles deuisera en trois parties principales / en la premiere traictera des choses aduenues deuant la destruction . En la seconde de la destruction . Et en la tierce quelz pays peuplerent eschappez de troye la destruite . En la premiere partie principale parlera du nom du roy de egipte qui tout le monde vouloit gouverner / & cōment il fu desconfit de ceulx de siche . En la seconde parlera cōment ceux de siche furent si longuement en la terre de egipte q leurs femmes leur manderent quilz sen retournassent a siche ou quelles prendroient daultres barons . En la tierce parlera comment les ieunes enfans de siche allerent aprez eurs peres | et comment en aprez les femmes allerent vengier leurs barons et enfans . En la quarte parlera de la royne marphesis et ses pucelles lesquelles aprez ce quelles eurent conquis grans pays elles furent desconfites des assiriens . A la quinte parlera cōment la fille de marphesis alla venger la mort de sa mere et de ses compaignes . En la

sixieme parlera de hercules et theseus lesquels firent moult de fais appartenans a cheualerie . A la septiesme parlera de quelle lignee les roix de troye furent . . . . En la tierce partie principale traicterai quels pays les eschappes de troye peuplerent et principalement des eneydiens et quel pays premierement ils arriverent et quels pays il conquererent . Et pour plainement entendre la matiere sans confusion sera devisee par chapitres selon l'ordre laquelle cy dessus a mise par parties finissant au commencement des fais et gestes des nobles roix de franse lesquels sont issus par succession de la noble puissante haulte et cheualereuse lignee des troyens tant de helenus fils du roy priant et plusieurs autres barons lesquels tant par leur vaillances que autrement eschapperent et respendirent en plusieurs et diverses parties et pays . Cellui helenus fils du roy priant sen repaire en grece avecques mil et deux cens eschappes de troye la destruite a vng royaume nomme pandrase du quel helenus depuys issit grant lignee et moult cheualereuse . . . . Celluy pharamon eut vng fils qui eut nom clodio lequel apres luy fut couronne roy . En son temps fist moult de nobles fais lesquels sont plus a plain conte aux croniques de franse et la lignee qui depuys est issue de luy par succession / laquelle lignee depuys quelle eut aye la sainte predication de nostre seigneur tost y obeit et de si tres grant deuotion prindrent la foy cristienne . . . . Paix doit et vueille prier celluy qui vit et regne au siecle des siecles. Amen."

The prologue runs from fol. i. to fol. iii. verso, and is followed on fol. iv. recto by a table of contents running on to folio ix. recto; the verso is a blank. The text begins on fol. 1. Eight leaves are devoted to the events which took place before the destruction of Troy. On fol. 9 begins "La vraye histoire de troye," i.e., the translation of Guido's "Historia," and ends on fol. 71 recto thus:

"Dyomedes occist le roy anthipum le roy prothenor et le roy opthomeu . Et tout ce tesmoigne dares auoir veu et sceu lequel estoit homme de grant prudence / et de tout ce sont assez d'accord luy et ditis . Et ce qui sensuyt tesmoigne ditis non pas dares pour quoy tiendroient et tiennent aucuns plus vraie histoire ce que dessus est dit que la consequence pour ce que en leurs oeuvres ils estoient deus / et ditis parle tout seul en ses oeuvres que cy apres il a escriptes / la soit ce q on doit croire que en la bouche de preudhomme na q verite et



ditis racompte de ce quil vit et sceut depnis quil eut perdue la compaignie de son bon compaignon dares.

¶ Cy finist la vraye histoire de troye deuant dicte . Et cy cōmence des troiens en quelz pais il habiterent par especial des enediens cest a dire de enneas."

The remainder of the book (*i.e.*, ff. 71-116) is taken up by an account of the adventures of those who escaped from Troy after its destruction.

The version of the MS. of the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal is earlier than Lefevre's "Recueil;" this printed version is according to all appearance later or contemporary, but may also be earlier, for the MS. in the Library at St. Petersburg may be a copy of an earlier one.

Jacques Milet dramatised in 1450 Guido's "Historia." His "Mystère" had the title: "L'histoire de la destruction de Troye la Grant translatee de Latin en François mise par parsonnages et composee par Maistre Jacques Milet, estudiant es loix en la ville d'Orléans," and was printed for the first time in 1484. I have seen a MS. in the Royal Library at Brussels.

There still exist versions<sup>1</sup> in German, Low-Saxon,

---

<sup>1</sup> *German*: 1. Version of Hans Mair von Nordlingen, 1392; 2. Heinrich von Braunschweig; 3. David Förster, 1598 (printed at Basel in 1612); *Low-Saxon*: Version by an anonymous writer, beginning: "Hyr begynth the inuoringe des bokes der historien van der verstoringe der stat Troye." *Dutch*: First printed at Gouda, 1479, and then at Harlem, 1485, with this title: "Die Vergaderinge der Historien van Troyen ghecompoeert en vergadert van den Eerbaren man, Meester Roelof die smit (!), Priester en Cappellaen van mijn zeer geduchte Heere mijn Heere den Hertoghe van Bourgongen Philippus, in't jaar 1464." *Danish*: Christopher Livendsøn Gilmager, "Bellum Trojanum, historiske Beskrivelse om den trojanske Krig, udsiit paa Danske." Copenhagen, 1623. See Ward's Catalogue of Romances. The MS. Add. 4869, fol. 2-66, is an Icelandic

Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Icelandic, and Bohemian of Guido's "Historia"; but I can only here briefly refer to them in a note.

It is only natural that I should deal a little more fully with the English versions. Besides the six books "De Bello Troiano" by the English monk Joseph of Exeter (Josephus Iscanus), and the Middle-English poem "Seege (Batayle) of Troye," by an unknown writer, both drawn from the "Historia de excidio Troiae" attributed to Dares Phrygius, and both already mentioned, we possess four more metrical and two more prose versions, which are all closely related to Guido's "Historia," although in several of them the poets have treated their subject very freely. As far as possible I have arranged these versions in chronological order. The earliest of all appears to be:

The "Gest Hystoriale" of the Destruction of Troy as preserved in the unique MS. in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow<sup>1</sup>—which was, until its publication, owing to the erroneous description in the Hunterian Catalogue, supposed to have been a translation of the "Bellum Trojanum" of Josephus Iscanus—is, perhaps, the earliest of the English versions of Guido's "Historia," and consists of 14,044 alliterative lines. By some it is supposed to be the work

---

translation, under the title of "Trojumanna Saga," of this Danish version. (*Compare also*: R. Nyerup, "Almindelig Morskabelsening," Copenhagen, 1816, p. 32.) An Icelandic metrical version is contained in the MS. Add. 11,113, ff. 171-281. — A Swedish translation by Daniel Hansson Hund of Runsbö under the title, "Saga om Trojaniska Kriget," appeared in 1607.—The Bohemian translations date from 1485, 1488, 1603. *Compare*: J. G. T. Græsse, "Die grossen Sagenkreise des Mittelalters," Dresden, 1842, 8vo.

<sup>1</sup> Nos. 39 and 56 of the Series of the E. E. T. S., edited in 1869 and 1874 by the Rev. G. A. Panton and D. Donaldson.

of the Scotch poet, Huchown;<sup>1</sup> but this theory, probable as it may be, has yet to be more conclusively proved.

The next version in chronological order is probably that of the Scotch poet Barbour, of which, however, only two fragments, of together 3715 lines, have come down to us, attached to two paper MSS. of Lydgate's "Troy-Book."<sup>2</sup> The first MS. is Kk. v. 30 (323 ff.) of the University Library, Cambridge; the second, MS. Douce 148 in the Bodleian Library, Oxford.

The first fragment, on ff. 1-9a of Kk v. 30, contains 567 lines; the second fragment, on ff. 304b-323 of the same MS., contains 1562 lines. The first 918 and the last 378 of these 1562 lines are also contained in Douce 148 (ll. 918-1180 are replaced by Lydgate's version). Besides, the Douce MS. contains 1938 lines not found in the Cambridge MS. From these fragments it appears highly probable that Barbour's complete account of the Trojan war was not much shorter than that of Lydgate or the "Gest Hystoriale."

Next we have to mention John Lydgate's "Troy-Book," which, in my opinion, is the best and most beautiful of all the English versions, both in prose and in verse. Lydgate professedly translated or paraphrased Guido's "Historia," but he has dealt with his subject, like Benoît

<sup>1</sup> M. Trautmann in *Anglia*, vol. i. pp. 109-149.—For the source of this poem, see W. Bock, "Zur 'Destruction of Troy.' Eine Sprach- und Quellenuntersuchung," Halle, 1883, 8vo; and H. Brandes, "Die mitttelenglische 'Destruction of Troy' und ihre Quelle," in vol. viii. pp. 398-410, of *Englische Studien*.

<sup>2</sup> C. Horstmann, "Barbour's, des schottischen Nationaldichters, Legendensammlung, nebst den Fragmenten seines Trojaner Krieges," Heilbronn, 1881, 2 vols. 8vo, vol. ii. pp. 215-307.

de Sainte-More with the version of Dares, as a true poet. He has added a great deal of his own, and by so doing he must be said to have greatly adorned his tale. "This poem," says Warton,<sup>1</sup> "is replete with descriptions of rural beauty, formed by a selection of very poetical and picturesque circumstances, and clothed in the most perspicuous and musical numbers." While Benoît and Guido had given the Troy-legend its first and original mediæval garment, Lydgate completed it to the minutest detail. Not satisfied to see the Greek and Trojan heroes knights of the Round Table, he transformed them into personages such as we find fighting in the Crusades, with all the implements of war belonging to their period. W. Caxton mentioned Lydgate's poem, but evidently when he said, "And also paraventure he translated after some other Auctor than this is," he had no idea that Guido's "Historia" was translated both by Lefevre and Lydgate. This is the more surprising as he mentions in the prologue to his book of "Iason" that Dares Phrygius and "Guido de columpnys wrote in the begynnyng of their bookes / touchyng the conqueste of the golden fiese."

One of the annotators<sup>2</sup> of Warton's "History of English Poetry" seems to have misunderstood Caxton's reference to Lydgate, for he says: "Caxton did not translate the account of the final destruction of the city from his French author Raoul le Feure."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Th. Warton's "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt, 4 vols, London, 1871, 8vo, vol. iii. pp. 80-93.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibidem*: Page 80, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> Another annotator of Warton (vol. ii. p. 140, note 1) speaks of Lefevre's "Recueil," and of the "liure de Hercules," represented by



Lydgate began his book in 1414, at the command of Henry IV., and finished it in 1420, in the reign of Henry V., to whom he presented it. The MS.<sup>1</sup> Digby 232 in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, to conclude from its elaborate get-up and the miniatures, appears to be the presentation copy. The "Troy-Book" was printed in 1513 for the first time by R. Pynson, by order of Henry VIII., with the title, "The hystorye / Sege and dysturceyon of Troye." In 1555 Thomas Marshe printed the text revised by a Robert Braham for the second time. His edition bears the following lengthy title:

"The Auncient Historie and onely trewe and syncere cronicle of the warres betwixte the Grecians and the Troyans, and subsequently of the fyrst everycyon of the auncient and famouse cyte of Troy under Laomedon the king, and of the last and fynall destruction of the same vnder Pryam: wrytten by Dares a Troyan and Dictys a Grecian both souldiers and present in all the sayde warres and digested in Latyn by the lerned Guydo de Columpnis and sythes translated in to englyshe verse by John Lydgate, Moncke of Burye. And newly imprinted An. M.D.L.V."

Lydgate's "Troy-Book" furnished the dramatist Thomas Heywood,<sup>2</sup> in the beginning of the seventeenth century,

---

the British Museum MS. Royal 17, E. ii., as of two entirely different works, whereas they are both one and the same.

<sup>1</sup> There are four MSS. of Lydgate's poem in the British Museum—viz., Cotton, Augustus, A. iv.; Royal 18, D. vi.; Arundel 99 and Royal 18, D. ii. There are several other MSS. in the libraries of Oxford and Cambridge.

<sup>2</sup> The full titles of Thomas Heywood's dramas are these: (a) "The Life and Death of Hector. One, and the first of the most Puissant,

with material for his two dramas, "The Life and Death of Hector, etc.," and "The Iron Age."

The unique MS., Laud 595 (late Laud K 76) in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, represents another English metrical translation of Guido's "Historia;" but, although ascribed in these terms to Lydgate: "Dares a Troian heralte and Dictas a Grecian haralte, wrat this booke in Greke and lefte it in Athenes, and theare it was founde by Guido de Columpnis, a notary of Rome, and digested into Latyn, and in anno 1414 translated into Englishe by John Lidgate, monke of Bury," it is not his work. Warton,<sup>1</sup> speaking of the "Troy-Book" refers to this version in these terms: "It is an entirely different work, and is written in the short minstrel-metre. . . . It appears to me to be Lydgate's "Troy-Book" divested of the octave-stanza, and reduced into a measure which might more

Valiant, and Renowned Monarches of the world, called the Nyne worthies. Shewing his invincible force, together with the marvillous, and most famous Acts by him atchieved and done in the great, long and terrible Siege, which the Princes of Greece held about the towne of Troy, for the space of Tenne yeares. And finally his vnfortunate death after hee had fought a Hundred mayne Battalles in open field against the Grecians: The which heerein are all at large described. Wherein there were slayne on both sides Fourteene Hundred, and Sixe Thowsand, Fourscore and sixe men. Written by John Lidgate, Monke of Berry, and by him dedicated to the high and mighty Prince Henrie the fift, King of England." This was printed by Thomas Purfoot, London, 1614, fol. (b) "The Iron Age: Contayning the Rape of Hellen: The siege of Troy: The Combate betwixt Hector and Ajax: Hector and Troilus slayne by Achilles: Achilles slaine by Paris: Ajax and Ulisses contend for the Armour of Achilles: The Death of Ajax etc.," London, 1632, 8vo.

<sup>1</sup> Th. Warton, "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt, 1871, 4 vols., vol. iii. pp. 92-95.

commodiously be sung to the harp. It is not likely that Lydgate is its author: that he should either thus transform his own composition, or write a new piece on the subject. That it was a poem of considerable estimation appears from the size and splendour of the MS.: and this circumstance induces me to believe that it was at that very early period ascribed to Lydgate. On the other hand, it is extraordinary that the name of the writer of so prolix and laborious a work, respectable and conspicuous at least on account of its length, should never have transpired. The language accords with Lydgate's age, and is of the reign of Henry VI., and to the same age I refer the handwriting, which is executed with remarkable elegance and beauty." The Rawlinson MS. misc. No. 82, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, contains also a prose adaptation of Guido's "Historia."

The latest, and I am of opinion the most inferior, but notwithstanding the best known, of all English versions is undoubtedly Caxton's "Recuyell," translated from the French original of Lefevre. How popular and widely known this work must have been is sufficiently proved, I think, by the number of editions it went through from 1503-1738; but the reason for this popularity is by no means to be found in its intrinsic value, but must rather be sought for in the fact that it was accessible to a much greater number of people than any other version, except only Lydgate's, owing to its being printed. What I shall say in the chapter on Lefevre's sources will, I hope, be considered sufficient justification of the unfavourable opinion on this work I have here expressed.

I cannot conclude this chapter without briefly referring to an episode from the Troy-legend which has been very

fascinating, and for which, although indirectly, English literature is indebted to Guido's "Historia:" I mean the story<sup>1</sup> of Troilus, the son of Priamus, and Briseida, Greseida, or Cressida, the daughter of the Trojan priest Calchas. It is well known that this subject has inspired Boccaccio to write his "Filostrato,"<sup>2</sup> and this, again, induced Chaucer to compose his "Troilus and Cryseyda."<sup>3</sup> Shakespeare's<sup>4</sup> tragedy of the same name is not, as some have advanced, derived from Chaucer, but from Lydgate's "Troy Book," or, still more likely, from Caxton's "Recuyell;"<sup>5</sup> but as the introduction of several characters

---

<sup>1</sup> For general information on this subject, see L. Moland and C. d'Hérissault, "Introduction to 'Le Roman de Troilus,'" Paris, 1858, 8vo; C. Keitner, "Die Troilusfabel in ihrer literaturgeschichtlichen Entwicklung, *Shakespeare-Jahrbuch*, vol. iii. p. 252, and in the same work, vol. vi. p. 169, the treatise by W. Herzberg.

<sup>2</sup> I have seen one MS. at the British Museum of Boccaccio's "Filostrato"—viz., Add. 21,246. An analysis of "Filostrato" is to be found in R. Barth, "Guido de Columna," Leipzig, 1877, 8vo, pp. 34-38.

<sup>3</sup> There are the following MSS. of Chaucer's poem at the British Museum:—Harley, 1239, 2280, 2392, and 4912, and Add. 12,044. Compare: W. M. Rossetti, "Chaucer's 'Troilus and Cryseyde' compared with Boccaccio's 'Filostrato' (translated into English by W. M. R.)." London, Chaucer-Society, 1873; A. Kussner, "Chaucer in seinen Beziehungen zur italienischen Literatur. Dissertation." Bonn, 1867, 8vo. Chaucer himself names Lollius as the writer of his source. Compare B. ten Brink, "Chaucer Studien," p. 87, and M. Koch, *Englische Studien*, vol. i. p. 291.

<sup>4</sup> Shakespeare's tragedy was first printed in two quarto editions of 1609; this drama was altered, and the plot new-modelled by John Dryden, and printed in 1679 under the title: "Troilus and Cressida, or, Truth found too late," 4to.

<sup>5</sup> George Steevens, "The Plays and Poems of W. Shakespeare," Dublin, 1794, 16 vols. 8vo, vol. xii.; and F. Douce, "Illustrations of Shakespeare, etc.," London, 1807, 8vo.



**xlvi THE TROY-LEGEND IN MIDDLE AGES.**

from Homer shows, Shakespeare has used Chapman's translation. In order to enable the reader to get, at a glance, a clear idea of the contents of this chapter, I have designed the Plate facing this page. All the English editions are encircled by a dotted line.

# T OF THE TROY-LEGEND IN THE LITERATURE OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

NOÛT DE SAINTE-MORE.  
Roman de Troie." 1184).

BE  
("I

GUIDO DELLE COLONNE  
("Historia Troiana")  
1287

German.  
Pseudo-WOLFRAM of  
Eschenbach.

RAOUL LEFEVRE,  
"Recueil des Historiques  
de Troie." 1464.

JACQUES MILLET,  
"L'histoire de la  
Destruction de  
Troye la Grant."

Versions.

Italian.

Spanish.

German.

Dutch.

Icelandic.

HERBERT VON FRITSCH,  
"Lied von Troie."

KONRAD of Würzburg.

KONRAD's Successors.

Teutonic.

Middle-High-

(3 MSS.)

WILLIAM CAXTON's  
"Recuyell," etc.

CHAUCER, "Troilus and  
Cressida."

"The Great Historiale of  
the Destruction of Troye."  
(1 MS.)

BARBOUR Fragmenta.

"De Bello Troiano," libri sex.

"Scene (Retavio) of Troye."

SHAKESPEARE'S  
"Troilus and  
Cressida."



THE MANUSCRIPTS OF "LE RECUEIL DES  
TROYENNES YSTOIRES" AND THE  
QUESTION OF ITS AUTHORSHIP.<sup>1</sup>

THE text of "Le Recueil" as it is reproduced in the printed editions is still extant in various manuscripts. I have seen and examined the following ones:

A. BIBLIOTHÈQUE NATIONALE, PARIS.<sup>2</sup>

1. Fonds français No. 59 (formerly 6737), originally the property of Louis de Bruges,<sup>3</sup> Seigneur de la Gruthuyse († 1492), who was a contemporary and favourite of Duke Philip the Good of Burgundy. It is written in *grosse bâtarde* on vellum and large folio. No less than forty-four miniatures adorn this MS., and seven times in the ornamental borders are painted the arms of its original

---

<sup>1</sup> A résumé of this chapter was published in No. 1 of *Bibliographica*, March, 1894.

<sup>2</sup> For information on the MSS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale, see Paulin Paris, "Les Manuscrits français de la Bibliothèque du Roi," Paris, 1836-48, 7 vols. 8vo.

<sup>3</sup> See J. van Praet, "Recherches sur Louis de Bruges, etc.," Paris, 1831, 8vo.

proprietor. The text begins on fol. 1 thus: "Cy commence le volume intitule le recueil des histoires de Troyes compose par venerable homme raoul lefeure prestre chapelain de mon tres redoubte seigneur monseigneur le duc Philippe de Bourgoingne en lan de grace mil iiij<sup>e</sup> lxiiij." Hereafter follows the prologue: "Quand je regarde et congnois les oppinions" (exactly like that in the printed editions), and a table of contents; the preliminary matter occupies eleven leaves. At the end of Book II. occur the following lines: "Dont me tairay atant suppliant acelui qui est cause de ceste oeuvre Cest assaوير philippe par la grace de dieu duc de bourgongne etc que en gre voeille receuoir mon rude labeur present."

2. No. 252 (No. 6896), written in *grosse bâtarde* on vellum folio, begins: "Cy commence le volume Intitule le recueil des hystoires de troies Compose par venerable homme Raoul lefeure prestre chappelain de mon tresredoubt seg. Mons. le duc Phelippe duc de bourgoingne En lan de grace mil cccc lviiij." Book II., on fol. 169, ends thus: "Et ycy apres pour la perfection de ce liure traicte de la generalle destruction de troyes qui vint a loccasion du rauissement de dame helayne feme du noble Roy mene-laus de Grece Comme cy apres sensieut."<sup>1</sup> The following lines are at the head of Book III.: "Et non obstant ce que listoire de la quelle ie traicte soit plus connue que les precedentes et que plusieurs layent en plusieurs manieres Toutesuoyes si le traicteray ie & metteray au long ainsi ie ay pent trouuer en diuers voullumes au moins mal que possible me sera."

3. No. 253 (No. 6897), written on vellum, folio, the

---

<sup>1</sup> This passage occurs also in MS. 59.

ornaments are not executed; begins on fol. 1 thus: "Cy commence le volume intitule le recuel des histoires de troyes Compose par venerable homme Raoul Le feure prebstre Chappelain de mon tresredoubte Seigneur monseigneur le Duc phelippe de Bourgoingne En lan de grace mil quatre cens et Soixante quatre." The first book ends on fol. 92, the second begins on fol. 93 with the following paragraph: "Après ce que ou premier liure a este declairie la genealogie et les fais de saturne de Iupiter son filz du vaillant cheualier perseus et en parte de hercules. . . . Lacteur au plaisir de dieu veult en ce second liure monstrier ad plain les grans fais dignes de memoire dicellui hercules . . . selon ce quil en a peu trouuer en ouide methamorphose et saint augustin de la cite de dieu en bocace de la genealogie des dieux Lesquelz traitent en plusieurs lieux desdis liures." Book II. ends with the paragraph: "Dont men tairay atant, etc.," on fol. 162. The third book is headed by these lines: "Cy apres sensient le derrenier liure de ce volume compose en latin Iadis par maistre guy de colompne et nagaires translate en francois par le commandement de mons. le duc de Bourgongne."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> At the end of Book III., fol. 221 in this MS., is appended the following paragraph.

"Il fait a noter que Iceulx qui eschapperent detroyes qui s'espandirent en diuerses terres vindrent diuerses nacions par le monde especiallement es parties occidentales. Comme de anthenor qui fonda la noble cite de venise descendirent les veniciens. De eneas qui arriva en ytalle descendirent plusieurs nacions qui fonderent romme et un homme brutus qui arriva en lisle d'albion quil conquist et nomma de son nom bretagne et qui se nomme maintenant bretagne descendirent les anglois. De son compaignon corneus qui conquist la terre des geans et la nomma de son nom cornuaille descendirent ceulx de cornuaille De francho le filz de anchises yssirent ceulx de franchoine



4. No. 255 (No. 6897<sup>3</sup>) is written on paper and in double columns; begins on fol. 1: "Cy commence la table des rubriques, etc." This table runs to the end of fol. 9. The first leaf of the text, the half of fol. 96, fol. 97, and fol. 98 (end of Book I.), and fol. 141 (end of Book II.), and three leaves after fol. 224 (end of Book III.), are left blank. Fol. 142 is vellum, with a beautiful ornamental border and a miniature; the third book, which begins on this leaf, is headed by a passage like that in MS. 252 noted above. The author's name is not mentioned.

5. No. 22,552 (4087), a very beautiful manuscript<sup>1</sup> which is written in double columns on vellum in *grosse bâtarde* and consists of 304 leaves. It must have belonged to the illustrious house of Oettengen in Suabia, as the arms repeatedly painted in the ornamental borders indicate. It contains 123 miniatures, and the initials of its original proprietor occur repeatedly—in one case they occupy a whole page. The MS. begins thus: "Cy commenche le volume Intitule le Recueil des hystoires de Troyes composees par venerable homme Raoul le feur prestre chapelain de montresdoubte Seigneur Monseigneur le duc Philippe de Bourgoingne en lan de grace mil .cccc .lxiij." This MS. is written as late as 1495, according to

---

en allemaigne. Ce francho engendra Griphon. Griphon engendra Balphisus. Balphisus engendra Indupigmis. Indupigmis engendra Alpheus. Alpheus engendra Agdulphus. Agdulphus engendra Ausgisus. Ausgisus pepin. Pepin fut pere de charles le martel qui fut roy de france Duquel descendis charles le grant qui fut roy de france et empereur de romme."

<sup>1</sup> A full account of this beautiful MS. is to be found in the "Catalogue des Livres de la Bibliothèque de feu M. le duc de la Vallière," Paris, 1763, vol. ii. pp. 630-32. This MS. is not noticed by M. Paulin Paris in his "Les Manuscrits françois, etc."

the passage at the end: "Finist le Recueil des hystoires de troyes . . . . Escript et furni en lan iiiij<sup>e</sup>. iiiij<sup>xx</sup>. xv enuiron le jour de toussains par pierrot gousset escript- uaint," and furnishes a proof that MSS. were in favour for some time after the invention of the art of printing.

6. No. 697 (No. 7138),<sup>1</sup> written on vellum in double columns of thirty-eight lines each, 146 fols. only, contains the two first books. The following paragraph, followed by the prologue, occurs at the head of Book I.: "Cy commence le recueil des troiennes ystoires translate du latin en francois par messire guillê de failly euesq de tournay et abbe de saint bertin en la ville de saint omer en flandres Au commandement de tresredoubte prince monag' phelippe duc de bourgongne . Et cetera." The first book ends on fol. 61 verso: "Cy fine le premier Liure," and Book II. begins on fol. 62 recto thus: "Cy commence le second liure et premier comment iupiter coucha avecques alcumena ou il engendra hercules comment la royne Iuno enuoya deux serpens a hercules pour le faire mourir et comment hercules estrancla les serpens." The MS. ends with the paragraph "Dont men tairay atant suppliant a cellui qui est cause etc. . . . que en gre vueille mon rude labour recevoir . Cy fine Hercules compose par messire guillame de failly euesque de tournay & abbe de saint bertin en saint aumer." The MS., as an autograph at its end indicates, belonged one day to Françoise d'Alancon.

---

<sup>1</sup> Paulin Paris, "Les Manuscrits etc.," vol. v. 375-79.



## B. BIBLIOTHÈQUE DE L'ARSENAL, PARIS.

7. No. 5068. This manuscript, which was made for Louis XII. when he was still Duke of Orleans, is a make-up of "Le Recueil" and the "Iason." The name of the author is not mentioned.<sup>1</sup>

C. BIBLIOTHÈQUE DU ROI, BRUXELLES, ANCIENNE  
BIBLIOTHÈQUE DES DUCS DE BOURGOGNE.<sup>2</sup>

8. Nos. 9261-62, two volumes containing each one book of "Le Recueil." These volumes are most probably written in Raoul Lefevre's own hand. The first volume begins thus: "Prologue du premier liure du Recoeil des histoires de troye compile par Raoul le feure pb̄re au commandement de tr̄snoble et tres vertueux prince Philippe par la grace de dieu duc de bourg<sup>ne</sup> &c vij<sup>e</sup> de ce nom." It ends on fol. 215 verso: "Cy fine le premier liure du Recoeil des histoires de troyes." The second volume, containing the second book, begins: "Cy commence la table des Rubriques dun chascun chappitre de ce second volume du recueil des hystoires de troyes qui traite, etc." The table occupies three folios; the fourth is blank, it has evidently been added when the volume was finished. On folio 5 (marked in red ink fol. 1), preceding the text, occurs the following paragraph: "Apr̄s ce que ou liure precedent lauteur a determine les descendies et genealogies de Saturne de Iupiter et aucunement de herculez comment premierement il prist et destruisy la cite de troye

<sup>1</sup> "Ministère de l'Instruction Publique, etc. Catalogue Général des Bibliothèques publiques de France," Paris, 1886, etc., H. Martin, "Catalogue de la Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal à Paris," vol. v. p. 35.

<sup>2</sup> E. J. F. Marchal, "Catalogue des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Royale des Ducs de Bourgogne," Bruxelles et Leipzig, 1842, 2 vols., folio.

sur laomedon Il vult en ce second liure monstrier les grans fais dignes de memore decellui hercules lesquelz sont comme impossibles a croire se ce ne fust que Bocace en son liure qu'il fist et intitula De la genealogie des dieux et aussi plusieurs autres que en ont escript assez largement Car il destruisy et dissipa plusieurs ours & lyons sauuagez bestes cruellez & horribles plusieurs gayans occist de sa massue Et aussy deliura plusieurs pays & citez de la seruitude & subgection des monstres tant terrestres comme marins si comme il apparra ou proces de ce liure.—Comment hercules par lennortement de Iuno ala combatre trois fieres lions &c.—Pour entrer en matiere. Comme doncques la vielle Iuno par sa mauuaise euure se donna A ymaginer et songier comment et par quele maniere elle pourroit faire morir hercules [et?] son mary Nouuelles vindrent au royaume de crete que en la forest," &c. The volume ends on fol. 143 recto: "dont me tairay atant suppliant a cellui qui est cause de ceste oeuvre cest assauoir philipe par la grace de dieu duc de bourgoingne etc quen gre voeille mon Ruide labeur recepuoir ¶ Amen."

9. No. 9263. The first two books only, written on vellum, but in double columns exactly like MS. No. 9261-62 in matter; but the paragraph attributing the authorship to Lefevre on fol. 1 is omitted, probably because the large miniature occupied more space than was originally intended.

10. No. 9254, written on paper containing the three books of "Le Recueil," like the printed editions beginning: "Cy commence le volume intitule le recueil des histoires de troyes compose par venerable homme Raoul Lefeuire presbître et chappellain de mon tres doubte seigneur le duc Phelippe de Bourgongne lan de grace

mil . cccc . Lxiii."<sup>1</sup> Book I. occupies ff. 1-78; II., 79-140; III., 141-207.

D. BIBLIOTHECA REGIA, BRITISH MUSEUM, LONDON.<sup>2</sup>

11. Royal 17 E ii.,<sup>2</sup> a beautiful MS. on vellum, of 368 leaves folio. Written in *grosse bâtarde*, double columns, and illuminated with sixty-two small and three large miniatures surrounded by ornamental borders. It is the work of the Bruges school and evidently written about 1476. Below the three large miniatures at the beginning of the three books, ff. 1, 143, and 263, are painted the Royal arms of the Kings of England, a fact which has led to the supposition that the MS. was executed for King Edward IV. Instead of "Recueil" the book is styled "liure Hercules." The table of contents, occupying seven leaves, begins thus: "Cy commence la table des rubriques du liure nomme Hercules." Lefevre's name is not mentioned, the prologue "Quand je regarde et congnois, etc.," omitted.

These eleven MSS., which I have enumerated, and to which I shall refer in the future by their numbers, 1, 2, 3, etc., agree all—except 7, which is a make up of the "Iason" and "Le Recueil"—in so far as the text is concerned; there are now and then differences in style and orthography noticeable, but these are altogether insignificant. MSS.

<sup>1</sup> In this MS., which appears to be written by the same hand as the MS. 255 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, occur also two or three leaves of vellum with miniatures and ornamental borders.

<sup>2</sup> For a description of this MS. see W. Blades, "Life and Typography of W. Caxton," 2 vols. 4to, vol. ii. p. 14; and F. Douce, "Illustrations from Shakespeare and of Ancient Manners, etc.," London, 1807, 8vo, p. 354.



1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, and 11 contain all three books of "Le Recueil," like the printed editions and Caxton's translation; 6, 8, and 9 contain the two first books only. In 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, and 10 Raoul Lefevre is acknowledged as the compiler or author; in 4, 9, and 11 no author's name is mentioned; and in 6 a certain Guillaume de Failly is stated to be the "translator."

The prologue, "Quand je regarde et congnois, etc.," is to be met with in MSS. 1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 8, 9, and 6; in 1, 2, 3, 5, and 10, it is exactly, save as to small differences of style and orthography, like that of the printed editions and the one which Caxton translated, viz.:

"Quant Je regarde et congnois les oppinions des hommes  
nourris en aucunes singulieres histoires de troyes / Et voy et  
regarde aussi que de Icelle faire vng recueil Je Indigne ay  
receu le commandement de tres noble et tres vertueux prince  
Philippe par la grace faiseur de toutes graces duc de bourgoingne  
/ de lothrique / de brabant et de lembourch / Conte de flandres.  
dartois et de bourgoingne / Palatin de haynau de hollande de  
zeelande et de namur / Marquis du saint empire Seigneur de  
frise de salins et de malines / Certes Je treuve assez a penser.  
Car des histoires dont vueil recueil faire Tout le monde parle  
par liures translatez du latin en francois moins beaucoup que  
Je nen traitteray / Et aucuns en y a qui sahurtent seulement  
aleurs particuliers liures Pourquoi Je craing escripre plus que  
leurs liures ne font mencion / Mais quant Je considere et poise  
le tres cremeu command de Icellui tres redoubte prince qui est  
cause de ceste oeuvre non pour corriger les liures Ia solemp-  
nellement translatez Aincois pour augmenter Je me rendray  
obaisant Et au moins mal que Je pourray feray *trois liures qui  
mis en vng prendront pour nom le recueil des troyennes histoires*

*/ Ou premier liure Ie traicteray de saturne et de Iupiter et de l'aduencement de troyes et des faiz de perseus. Et de la merueilleuse natiuite de herculez et de la premiere destruction de troyes / Ou second Ie traicteray des labours de hercules en demonstrent comment troyes fut reedifie et destruite par le dit Hercules la seconde fois Et ou tiers Ie traicteray de la derreniere et generale destruccion de troyes faicte par les gregois acause du ravisement de dame helaine femme de Menelaus / Et y adiousteray les faiz et grans prouesses du preu hector Et de ses freres qui sont dignes de grant memoire / Et aussi traicteray des merueilleuses auantures et perilz de mer qui aduindrent aux gregois en leur retour / de la mort du noble roy Agamenon qui fut duc de lost / Et des grans fortunes du roy Vlises et de sa merueilleuse mort Si requier et supplie celui qui est cause de ceste oeuvre Et tous ceulx qui la liront pour oyseuse euitier que se rudement Ie metz ma plume es histoires nommees Il leur plaise auoir regarde non a mon pource concepuoir Aincois a l'obscure abisme ou Ie les ay recueillies par obeissance et soubz toutes tres humbles corrections."*

In the MSS. 8 and 9 the passage printed above in italics is replaced by these lines :

"¶ Non pour corriger les liures ja solennellement translatez Aincois pour les augmenter je me renderay obeissant et au moins mal que porray feray iiij. liures qui mis en vng prendront pour nom le recoeil des troyenes histoires ¶ Ou premier liure je traicteray de saturne et de jupiter ¶ de l'aduencement de troyes et de la premiere destruction de troyes Ou second je traicteray de la seconde destruccion qui fu faicte po<sup>r</sup> Iason et sy y adiousteray les fais dhercules Ou tiers je traicteray de la iiij<sup>eme</sup> destruction qui fu faicte po<sup>r</sup> le ravisement de la belle hellaine Et ou quart je descriray la quarte destruccio q<sup>e</sup> fu faicte par fimbria consul romain au temps de la contencion qui fu a

Romme entre marius et sulla Et y adjousteray la naissance de paris et ses aduentures de jeunesse la naissance de vlixes et ses anciens perilz de mer et les genealogies de la plus part de ceux qui troyes perdirent durant le regne du Roy Priant ¶ Si supplie cellui qui est cause de cest oeuvre et tous ceulz qui la lirront po' oyseuse euitier que se Ruidement je metz ma plume es histoires nommees Il leur plaise auoir regard non a mon poure concevoir Aincois a lobecur habisme ou je les ay Recoeillies par obeissance et soubz toute treshumble correction."

And in MS. 6 the passage printed above in italics is replaced by the following lines :

"deux liures qui mis en un prendront pour nom le Recueil des Troyennes histoires Ou premier liure je traicteray de Saturne et de Jupiter de l'advenement de Troyes et des fais de Persees Ou second et derrenier je metteray par escript les grans labours de Hercules en demonstrant comment il destruisi Troye par deux fois Mais de la derreniere et tierce destruction dicelle jen laisse les aultres conuenir priant et requerant cestui qui est [cause de ceste oeuvre et tous ceulx qui la lirront], etc."<sup>1</sup>

While in all the MSS. the first book of "Le Recueil" finishes with the first destruction of Troye by Hercules and the second book begins with Hercules fighting against the lions of Nemea, in the MS. 6 the second book begins with the birth of Hercules.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The words in brackets are omitted in the MS.

<sup>2</sup> MS. 6 (No. 697, Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris) contains 148 ff. Book I. ends on fol. 61, col. 2, "Cy fine le premier Liure," and Book II. begins on fol. 62 recto thus : "Cy commence le second liure et premier comment iupiter coucha avecques alcumena ou il engendra hercules comment la royne Juno enuoya deux serpens & hercules pour le faire nourrir et comment hercules estrancha les serpens."



The "Guillaume de Faily," who is the translator, according to this MS., of the two first books, can be no other than Guillaume Fillastre, Filastre or Filâtre, for there never existed a man of the name of "de Faily" who was Bishop of Tournay and abbot of St. Bertin, at St. Omer in Flanders, during the reign of Duke Philip the Good of Burgundy. But how could the scribe write "de Faily" for Filastre?

M. Paulin Paris, in his work on the MSS. of the Royal Library, declares that for some reason or other, the scribe has made a mistake, but he cannot, or does not, explain why. He goes, indeed, so far as to accuse Raoul Lefevre, on the sole authority of this scribe, of a serious literary fraud. In his opinion, Filastre wrote the two first books of "Le Recueil," Lefevre added the third, and passed the whole work off under his own name. M. Paris<sup>1</sup> explains matters as follows:

"On peut admettre que le duc de Bourgogne, jaloux de l'ordre de la Jarretière et voulant à toutes forces donner à ses duchés un patron chevaleresque, aura témoigné le désir de réunir en faisceau le récit des prouesses des anciens preux Persée, Hercules et Jason. Fillastre, alors son secrétaire, aura été chargé de satisfaire ce caprice souverain et d'abord il aura fait son Recueil des Troyennes Histoires, dont il fixa la division en trois parties."

and further on:

"Je laisse donc notre manuscrit à l'auteur qu'il signale et je dépouille Raoul Lefevre de la plus considérable et de la

---

<sup>1</sup> Paulin Paris, "Les Manuscrits français, etc.," vol. v. pp. 375-79.

meilleure partie de l'ouvrage qui a fait sa réputation. Lefevre s'est contenté de mettre la dernière main aux deux grandes compositions, entreprises, sans doute dans le même but, par Guillaume Fillastre. Il n'en avoit pas fait l'aveu, Fillastre avoit dédaigné de le rappeler, mais cela ne doit pas être passé sous silence dans l'histoire de notre littérature nationale."

M. Paris also states that "Le Recueil" seems to have been composed before the creation of the order of the Golden Fleece—i.e., before 1430.

Mr. William Blades,<sup>1</sup> commenting on M. Paris's theory, says: "In that age a similar course was by no means uncommon, nor was it an infringement of any recognised literary right; we can hardly, therefore, with M. Paris, call it (even if true) 'une grande fraude littéraire.'" M. A. Joly<sup>2</sup> expresses his opinion on M. Paris's statements thus:

"Les dates seules, à ce qu'il me semble, s'opposent à cette conclusion, et il paraît plus naturel de croire à une confusion du copiste qu'à une si complète et si impudente usurpation du chapelain du duc de Bourgogne, usurpation d'ailleurs à peu près impossible du vivant du véritable auteur et avec la notoriété et la condition des deux personnages."

As to myself, I never doubted that Raoul Lefevre compiled "Le Recueil," for there are, in addition to the reasons adduced by M. Joly and internal evidence, others

---

<sup>1</sup> William Blades, "The Life and Typography of W. Caxton," London, vol. II. pp. 13-15. In a note Mr. Blades says "Guillaume de Failly is evidently a clerical error for G. Fillastre."

<sup>2</sup> A. Joly, "Benolt de Sainte-More et Le Roman de Troie, etc.," Paris, 1870, 4to, vol. I. p. 489, note.

which are very strongly in his favour. Would W. Caxton, in his translation, have named Lefevre as the author, if he knew that Lefevre had only composed the third book?—Caxton, who, owing to his position at the Court in Bruges, was probably personally acquainted with both men, whose contemporary he was? Would the Duchess Margaret, if she knew (and she surely would have known from her husband) that Lefevre had wrongfully assumed the authorship of "*Le Recueil*," not have corrected Caxton's statement, at least for his printed edition? Would not Filastre, who only died in 1473, have taken steps to prevent Lefevre from committing a fraud, as, according to the unanimous statement of MSS. and printed editions, the three books of "*Le Recueil*" were ready in 1464? It further struck me at first sight that in this MS. the usual "compose" or "compile" of the other MSS. is replaced by "translate du Latin en francois." The first two books, at any rate, as we shall see later on, are by no means a translation, but a compilation in the truest sense of the word, in which, it must be added, the compiler has often taken very great liberties with his sources.

The difficult point in this problem was the name "de Faily." At first, misled by M. Paris's statements, I tried to explain the name as a corruption or misreading of "Filastre." During my experience with MSS. of the Middle Ages I have repeatedly come across cases where names which occurred in them were most curiously reproduced in other MSS. on the same subject. The scribe comes across a name which he cannot decipher, perhaps the passage is injured by water or some other cause: he simply finds out how many letters would fill up the gap and then puts in a name according to his own ideas. But

I soon gave this theory up, as not plausible enough in the present case. To settle the point satisfactorily, it was necessary to collect all the information possible about the lives of both men. Perhaps Filastre was in some way connected with a place "Faily," or there was some strong evidence to be found to establish Lefevre's rights. The means at my disposal in London, I soon discovered, were insufficient, and I made a journey on purpose to Paris and Brussels, to find in the libraries and archives of these cities sufficient evidence for the solution of the enigma.

Guillaume Filastre was born in 1400; he was the illegitimate son of Etienne Filastre, governor of the province of Maine under Louis III. of Anjou, and nephew of Guillaume Filastre, a well-known scholar and cardinal archbishop of Aix.<sup>1</sup> He entered the Order of St. Benedict at Châlons-sur-Marne, became successively prior of Sermaise and St. Thierry at Rheims, and for this reason is often named so—*e.g.*, in the catalogue of bishops, "Guillaume de St. Thierry." In 1436 he obtained a doctor's degree at Louvain. He was appointed Bishop of Verdun on Nov. 1st, 1437. After ten years of discord and struggle with his chapter, the nobility and citizens, he gave the See of Verdun up. He was a deputy at the *concile* of Bâle, to defend the rights of the Count de Vaudémont to the duchy of Lorraine against René d'Anjou. From 1449-1460 he was Bishop of Toul, and from 1460 to his death, August 21st, 1473, he held the bishopric of Tournay. He was twice sent as ambassador

---

<sup>1</sup> "Guillaume Filastre, Archevêque d'Aix, Cardinal du titre de St. Marie et Légat en France."



to Pope Eugen IV. He presided over the Privy Council of Duke Philip the Good, and was chancellor of the Order of the Golden Fleece. It was he who pronounced the *oraison funèbre* at the grave of his patron in 1467. Filastre's remains were deposited in the Church St. Bertin at St. Omer, which he had richly endowed.<sup>1</sup>

In 1461 he applied to King Louis XII. of France for a decree of legitimation ; it was granted him through the intermediation of Philip the Good. This curious document I found in the Archives of Paris, and faithfully reproduce it here :

ARCHIVES NATIONALES : CODEX J.J. 198, Trésor des CHARTRES, PIÈCE 221, fol. 204, recto and verso.

“Loys par la grace de dieu Roy de France Savoir faisons a tous presens et avenir Nous avons receue la devote supplication de Religieuse personne nostre ame et feal conseiller Guillaume a present evesque de Tournay natif de nostre Royaume contenant Que des le temps de son enfance il fut ordonne et reduit Religieux de lordre Monseigneur Saint Benoist et depuis mis aux estudes ou il sest honnestement maintenu et gouverne Telement que par sa diligence et bonne estude il a acquis science et receu le degre de Docteur en decret, et autrement telement que par ses moiens il a este en son temps pourveu de

<sup>1</sup> An eye-witness tells me that the tomb in the Church St. Bertin at St. Omer still exists. It bears the following inscription :

“ Abbas quisquis erat, clara Willelmus in abba,  
Hoc jacet in templo cui bona multa tulit.  
Virduni fuit hic praesul, Tullique deinceps  
Indeque Tornaci per pietatis opus.  
Hic ducis invicti Burgundi in sede Philippi  
Consilii primus, qui bene nosset, erat.  
Sic omnes morimur, sed virtus sola beatos  
Efficit, illa comes, teque Guillelme beat.”

plusieurs prelatures dignitez et benefices prieurez abbayes et eveschiez tant en nostre Royaume comme dehors et dernièrement de leveschie dudit lieu de tournay avec labbaye de Saint Bertin en Saint Omer quil tenoit par avant en nostre dit Royaume Et pour ce des biens qu'il a euz et acquis aux causes dessus dites et aussi pour son service et que il pourra avoir et acquerir doresnavant disposeroit volontiers tant pour le salut de son ame comme a ses parens et amis ausquelz il est et pourra estre tenu en temps avenir Mais objectant ce quil est illegitime procee et ne de couple illicite et defendue il doubte combien que luy comme Religieux par concession et octroy appliques a lui faiz peust faire testament Il ne peust en nostre dit Royaume disposer de ses biens sans avoir et obtenir de nous nostre grace et legitimation Requerant humblement iceulx pour ce est il que nous oye la supplication de nostredit Conseiller Guillaume evesque de Tournay considerans quil nous a fait le serment de feaulte quil estoit tenu nous faire a cause du temporel dudit evesche et que a ce lavons benigne-ment receu et comme il appartient Considerans aussi que par ses merites et la grande recommandation de sa personne preudomie loialte science et bonne diligence il a este promeu ausdites dignitez et prelatures Et que pour ces causes nostre tres cher et tres ame oncle le duc de Bourgoigne la ordonne et constitue chief de son Conseil en absence de son chancelier Et pour les bons et agreables services quil nous a faiz et desire faire comme de ce sommes accoustumez Icellui Guillaume evesque de Tournay de nostre certaine science plaine puissance et grace especiale avons legitime et legitimons et le deffault de sa nativite encouru par vice de nature et couple illicite avons pour ses merites et recommandation de ses vertus aboly et effacie abolissons et effacons du tout par ces presentes voulons et lui octroyons de nostredite grace que comme personne legitime et habile il puisse de tous les biens quil a desia acquis et quil acquerra en temps avenir par testament ou autrement



ordonner et disposer ainsi que bon lui semblera sauf et reserve les biens par lui acquis et a acquerir quil a donnez ou donra au prouffit de leglise et pour laccroissement du service divin voulons aussi et lui octroyons que doresenavant il soit tenu et reppute pour personne legitime et que apres son trespas ceulx de son lignaige procreez ou a procreer en loial mariage lui puissent succeder par droit de hoirie en tous ses biens meubles et immeubles acquis et a acquerir et qui lui sont escheuz ou escherront tout ainsi quilz feissent ou peussent faire se il fust ne et procee en loial mariage reservez ceulx quil auroit acquis ou donnez a leglise et service divin comme dit est Sans ce que soubz vmbre dudit deffault de sa nativite nous ou noz successeurs y puissions ou doions demander ou reclamer aucun droit ou temps a venir Non obstant quelzconques constitutions ordonnances statutz droits usaiges et coustumes a ce contraires Et sans ce quil soit tenue de faire autre declaration ou specification de ses pere et mere desquelz nous sommes assez advertiz et dont pour certaines causes a ce nous mouvons nous ne voulons aultre declaracion estre faicte Et sans ce que ledit suppliant nostre Conseiller soit pour ce tenu paier a nous ou a nosdits successeurs aucune finance ores ou pour le temps avenir laquelle finance Nous pour la louenge et Recommendation de ses vertuz merites et sciences dessusdits lui avons de nostre grace donner remise et quictee donnons quictons et remectons par ces mesmes presentes voulant quil en soit du tout tenu quicte et paisible Si donnons en mandement a noz amez et feaulx les gens de noz comptes et tressoriers a Paris et a tous noz autres justiciers et autres officiers ou a leurs lieutenans presens et avenir et a chacun deulx sur ce a lui appartenra Que de nostre grace legitimation don octroy et quittance facent souffrent et laissent ledit suppliant nostre conseiller ses hoirs et successeurs joir et user plainement et paisiblement sans les travailler molester ou empescher aucunement au contraire Non obstant quelzconques Ordonnances faictes ou a faire

lesquelles ne voulons preiudicier a leffect et vertu de ces presentes Et non obstant aussi quelzconques lettres mandemens ou deffenses a ce contraires Et afin que ce soit chose ferme et estable a tousiours Nous avons faict mettre nostre seel a ces mesmes presentes Sauf en autres choses nostre droit et lautrui en toutes Donne a Paris ou mois de Septembre lan de grace mil quatre cens soixante et vng et de nostre Regne le premier Ainsi signe Par le Roy les Sires De Croy Dulau De Beuvor et autres presens J. Bourre visa."

Besides an historical work, which was little thought of, and is long forgotten, Filastre wrote "L'Histoire de la Toison d'Or." As is seen from the Prologue to Book I., addressed to Charles the Bold, he intended originally to write six books, according to the six fleeces of Jason—Jacob, Gideon, King of Moab, Job, and David. He further states in this prologue that he was charged in his capacity of Chancellor of the Order of the Golden Fleece, by Charles, to address the Chapter, held in May, 1468, on the six "thoisons." The brevity of time, however, allowed him only to deal with the three first. Afterwards, Charles the Bold, who presided over this assembly in person, bade him treat the subject exhaustively in writing. He had written in French, as his work was intended for knights and noblemen, who preferred "leur langage vulgaire" to any other. From this it is apparent that Filastre's work cannot have been earlier than 1468 and no later than 1473, the year of his death. As far as is known, he only wrote the three first; the third, however, of which the Royal Library at Copenhagen possesses a unique MS., is unknown in France<sup>1</sup> and in Belgium, and not mentioned

<sup>1</sup> D. de Sainte-Marthe, "Gallia Christiana, etc.," vol. iii. cols. 234-35 :

by any of the historians who write about Filastre or the Order of the Golden Fleece. In all the MSS. of "L'Histoire de la Toison d'Or"<sup>1</sup> which I have seen he is described thus: "Guillaume par la diuine miseration euesque de tournay abbe de saint bertin chancellier de ycelluy ordre," or "Guillaume euesque de Tournay;"

---

"Scripsit Gallice *duos* libros de ordine equestri Velleris aurei ad Carolum Burgundiae ducem, cujus operis volumen primum prodit Parisiis anno 1515 ex officina Francisci Rigault, etc."—In the copy of this work in Royal Library, Brussels, which, as I was told, was formerly in a Belgian Monastery, I found the following MS. note added to this passage: "Plus Recueil des hist. Troyenes, p. 788<sup>b</sup> (7288<sup>b</sup>) M. F. li. 2." Evidently this note refers to MS. No. 697 of the Bibliothèque Nationale, but I have been unable to find out to which work the "p. 788<sup>b</sup>" refers. On the same page is, further, a MS. note relative to the document in the Archives Nationales, Paris, Cod. J.J. 198.

<sup>1</sup> The MSS. of the first two books of "L'Histoire de la Toison d'Or" I have seen are these—British Museum: 1. Royal, 19. A vi.; Bibliothèque Nationale: 2. 138 (6804); 3. 139 (6805); 4. 140 (6806); 5. 141 (6807), formerly the property of Louis de Bruges; 6. 8998; and 7. 19,024. Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal: 8. 3680. Bibliothèque Royale, Bruxelles: 9. 9027; 10. 9028. I have not seen No. 4-5 of the Bibliothèque de Mâçon, and Nos. 463, 464, and 465 of the Royal Library at Copenhagen. The MSS. 463 and 465 belonged one day to the dukes of Cleves; both are signed by Duke Philip of Cleves. In the former, Filastre, in the Prologue addressed to Charles the Bold, is referred to in these terms: "Guillaume par la diuine miseration euesque de tournay abbe de saint bertin chancellier de ycelluy ordre, etc." In the latter, the following passage from the Prologue to Charles the Bold is interesting: "Commande a moy Guillaume euesque de tournay abbe de saint bertin vostre humble et devot orateur et chancellier de vostre dit ordre escrire des six thoysons dont parle la sainte escripture en diuers pas. Et que en vous rendant l'obeissance iay par la grace de dieu declairie des dis six thoysons les deux par deux liures precedens ensemble deux vertus qui souuerainement afflerent a lestat de noblesse. Cest a sauoir magnaninite par la thoyson de iason qui est le premier



but nowhere occurs the name "de Faily," nor is it mentioned in any of the numerous works<sup>1</sup> I have consulted on the history of the bishoprics which he occupied. The early portion of his life, up to the moment when he became Bishop of Verdun, is enveloped in impenetrable darkness; perhaps he has himself done all in his

---

liure. Et iustice par la thoyson de iacob qui est le second liure. Maintenant . . . est a parler de dame prudence . . . nous ferons le tiers liure qui sera de la thoyson de gedeon sur le mistere de la quelle thoyson est principalement fonde vostre dit tresnoble ordre," etc.

Compare: N. C. L. Abrahams, "Description des Manuscrits français du Moyen-Âge de la Bibliothèque Royale de Copenhague, etc." 1844, 4to; F. A. F. T. de Reiffenberg, "Histoire de l'Ordre de la Toison d'Or," Brussels, 4to; "Mémoire sur l'Origine de l'Ordre de la Toison d'Or," "Mélanges, etc.," vol. xxx. pp. 3-272, by the Prince Charles de Ligne. The two first books of Filastre are printed at Paris, 1517 and 1530, at Troyes, 1530. A detailed analysis of them is to be found in Don Julian de Piedro y Salazar. For information on the MSS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale, see Paulin Paris, "Les Manuscrits français, etc.," and J. van Praet, "Recherches, etc." H. Martin "Catalogue de la Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, etc."

<sup>1</sup> P. P. B. Gams, "Series Episcoporum Ecclesie Catholicae," Ratisbonae, 1873, 4to. D. de Sainte-Marthe, "Gallia Christiana," Lutetiae Paris, 1715-1865, 16 vols. fol., vol. iii. pp. 233-35; ix. p. 193; xiii. pp. 1038-40; 1233-35. (This work is now being reprinted. I have seen the three volumes of the new edition ready up to the present day, but there is no difference from the original edition noticeable in the account of Filastre.) N. Roussel, "Histoire de Verdun ecclésiastique et civile," 2nd edition (British Museum only possesses the 1st), Bar-le-duc, 1864, 2 vols. 8vo, vol. i. pp. 362-68. Le Père Benoit, "Histoire ecclésiastique et politique de Toul," 1707, 4to, pp. 541-51. D. Calmet, "Histoire de la Lorraine, etc.," 1751, 4 vols. fol., vol. iv. p. 367, and various others. The accounts in the "Biographie universelle" and "Nouvelle Biographie générale" and in other Biographies do not contain all the facts which I have collected from the sources. If space had permitted I should have written a detailed biography of the Bishop of Tournay, for which I have collected the materials.

power to destroy everything that might throw some light on his illegitimate birth.

When I had found that in none of the many accounts of Filastre's life anything was to be discovered that could explain the scribe's "de Failly," I endeavoured to find an explanation on the maps of the districts where he passed his life, and in works on their topography. There really existed and still exist two places bearing the name Failly, one in the Department of the Moselle,<sup>1</sup> the other in the Department of the Marne.<sup>2</sup> The latter, being situated near Châlons-sur-Marne, where Filastre entered the Order of St. Benedict, was very promising. The "Failly" in the Marne was a dependency of the Abbey de Chatrices, in the old diocese of Châlons-sur-Marne, in Filastre's days probably the seat of a noble family, now but a farm, and only marked on the maps of the General Staff on the largest scale.<sup>3</sup> The fact, however, that all documents and papers of this abbey were destroyed by fire<sup>4</sup> terminated all research in this direction.

Next I searched the works on the genealogy of the

---

<sup>1</sup> "Dictionnaire Topographique de l'ancien Département de la Moselle," par M. de Bouteiller, Paris, 1874, 4to.

<sup>2</sup> "Dictionnaire Topographique du Département de la Marne," par A. Longnon, Paris, 1891, 4to. E. de Barthélemy, "Histoire et Monuments de la Diocèse ancien de Châlons-sur-Marne," Paris, 1861, 2 vols. 8vo, vol. i. p. 151.

<sup>3</sup> "Carte topographique de la France levée par ordre du Gouvernement, etc., et gravé à l'échelle de 1 pour 80,000," Sheet 51: Bar-le-Duc, Paris, 1832, etc.

<sup>4</sup> E. de Barthélemy, "Diocèse ancien, etc.," vol. i. p. 192: "Les documents manquent absolument pour l'abbaye de Chatrices . . . les incendies répétés qui réduisirent ce monastère en cendres n'ont rien laissé subsister de ses archives antérieurement au XVI<sup>ème</sup> siècle."

nobility in the provinces where Etienne Filastre and Guillaume Filastre held important offices. There existed in Lorraine, and there still exists in the "généralité Châlons-sur-Marne," a family "de Faily,"<sup>1</sup> which has various branches in different places; but it was utterly impossible to prove that any one of these families were in any way related to Etienne Filastre.

I had already given up all hope of solving this problem when I was fortunate enough to discover in a huge MS. volume\* in the Royal Library at Brussels the pedigree of a family de Faily which begins thus:

"Gilles de Faily, seigneur de Vully et de Richecourt en Bourgogne, épousa une dame *Filastre*, dite de Nausoy." They had one son, "Guillaume de Faily, chevalier-seigneur de Bernisart, chambellan et écuyer de Charles duc de Bourgogne en 1465;" he married twice and had children by both wives.

As Charles the Bold was in 1465 only the heir

---

<sup>1</sup> Mathieu Husson, l'Ecosais, "Le simple Crayon, utile et curieux de la Noblesse des duchés de Lorraine, et Bar, et des évêchés de Metz, Toul et Verdun, etc.," 1674, fol. p. 90: "Faily: Maison fort noble & ancienne dans le Barrois non mouvant souz la Chastellanie de Longuol.—Porte, d'argent à un Rameau de trois feuilles de gueulle accompagné de deux merlettes affrontés de sable. Autres de ce nom portent vn choulx simple, autres trois Maillets."—E. de Barthélemy, "Armorial Général de la Généralité de Châlons-sur-Marne," Paris, 1862, 12mo, p. 52. "De Faily (Jean), seigneur de Vilmontre (existe encore): De gueules à la face d'argent accompagné de trois haches d'armes couchées de même."—J. Le Carpentier, "Histoire généalogique des Pays-Bas ou Histoire de Cambray," Leide, 1664, 2 vols., 4to, vol. i. p. 465 and in other places.—Jean Cayon, "Ancienne Chévalerie de Lorraine," Nancy, 1850, 4to.

<sup>2</sup> Marius Voet. F. A. français, MS. No. 736, fol. 83, see "Catalogue de la Bibliothèque de B. V. Goethals," Bruxelles, 1878, 8vo.



presumptive to the throne of Burgundy, this MS. must have been written after his accession in 1467. Gilles de Failly would have been about the same age as Etienne Filastre, the father of Guillaume, the Bishop of Tournay. Is it not highly probable that the "dame Filastre" belonged to the family, members of which were both Etienne and Guillaume Filastre, the father and uncle of the Bishop of Tournay? And, what is more important still, is it not very likely, although not absolutely certain, that the mother of the Bishop of Tournay was a member of the family "de Failly"? If we admit of this possibility, the scribe of the MS. 697 in the Bibliothèque Nationale was perfectly justified in writing of the Bishop of Tournay "guillam de failly," for until September, 1461,<sup>1</sup> this would have been his real name, and only from this date forward he had a right to the name "Filastre." This fact must have been known to many, especially to the monks of St. Benedict, Châlons-sur-Marne, the monasteries of Sermaise and St. Thierry; why not to the scribe who copied the MS. in question, and who most probably never heard of the charter by which the Bishop of Tournay was made legitimate, as the latter would naturally have made as little noise as possible about it, in order not to recall attention to his illegitimate birth? In this endeavour he was assisted by the custom according to which bishops were addressed and spoken of by their Christian names, and indeed in all the MSS. of the "Thoison d'Or" he is referred to as "Guillaume evesque de Tournay," etc. But whether we admit of this theory or not, so much is certain: the scribe did not blunder in the name "de

---

<sup>1</sup> See the document from the Archives Nationales, Paris, pp. lxii.-lxv.

Failly," although, as we shall see later on, he made another mistake.

As to the life of Raoul Lefevre<sup>1</sup> who, it appears, had not the good fortune to be the son of a "gouverneur de la province du Maine," or the nephew of a cardinal-archbishop, hardly anything is known. According to the majority of MSS. of "Le Recueil," the printed editions, and the English translations, he was a priest and chaplain of the Duke Philip the Good of Burgundy, and compiled as such, at the command of his lord and master, the trilogy of Troye; but even this statement is challenged by the MS. 697 above described.

Solely on the authority of William Caxton<sup>2</sup> (for the few

---

<sup>1</sup> Works such as: Ph. Papillon, "Bibliothèque des Auteurs de Bourgogne," Dijon, 1742, 2 vols., fol.; I. F. Foppen, "Bibliotheca sive virorum in Belgio vita scriptisque, etc.," 2 vols., Brussels, 1738, 4to; L. E. S. T. Laborde, "Les Ducs de Bourgogne," Paris, 1842, 3 vols., 8vo; "La Biographie universelle" and others only repeat the few facts which we can glean from the Prologue of "Le Recueil." In none of these works the fact is mentioned that Lefevre also compiled "le liure de Iason."

<sup>2</sup> W. Caxton, in the Prologue to his translation (London, 1477 ?) of the "Iason," does not mention Lefevre's name, but, as will be seen from the following passage, plainly states that Lefevre compiled the book:

"**F**OR as moche as late by the comaundement of the right hye & noble princesse my right redoubted lady / My lady Margarete by the grace of god Duchesse of Bourgoyne Brabant &c + I translated a boke out of frensshe in to Englissh named Recuyel of the histories of Troye in whiche is comprehended how Troye was thries destroyed And also the labours & histories of Saturnus Tytan / Iubyter Perseus and Hercules / & other moo therin Rehersed + but as to the historie of Iason / towchyng the conqueste of the golden fiese / myn auctor hath not sett in his boke + but brevely and the cause is for as moche as he hadde

MS. known<sup>1</sup> and all printed editions do not mention any author's name), we know that Raoul Lefevre also compiled a "liure du Iason" or "Histoire de la Conquête de la Toison d'Or." Neither in England nor in France<sup>2</sup> it was

---

made before a booke of the hooelylef of Iason . Whyche he presented vnto the noble Prynce in his dayes Philippe Duc of burgoyne . And also the sayde boke shulde haue ben to grete + if he had sett the saide historie in his boke + for it conteyneth thre bokes beside historie of Iason + Theñe for as moche as this sayd Iason & the historie of him Whiche that Dares Frigius & Guido de columpnys wrote in the begynnynge of their bookes / touchyng the conqueste of the sayd golden flese + by occasion wherof grewe the cause of the seconde destruccion of the sayd cite of Troye + is not sett in the sayd boke of Recuyel of histories of Troye Therefor vnder the proteccion & suffraunce of the most hyghe puissant & xpen kyng + my most dradde naturel liege Lord Edward by the grace of god kyng of england and of Fraunce and lord of Irland / I entende to translate the sayd boke of thistories of Iason + folowyng myn auctor as nygh as I can or may not chaungyng the sentence. ne, etc."

<sup>1</sup> The MSS. of Lefevre's "Livre 'de Iason" are not numerous. The Bibliothèque Nationale possesses two copies: 1°. No. 12570, 1 vol. paper 4to. 2°. No. 331 (formerly 6953), beautiful illuminated MS. on vellum, once the property of Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse (see P. Paris, "Les Manuscrits, etc.," vol. ii. pp. 335-40, and J. van Praet, "Recherches, etc.," p. 175). To conclude from the "en son temps duc de bourgoingne, etc.," this MS. was written after Philip the Good's death, i.e., after 1467.—The British Museum only possesses the "liure de Iason" in a Dutch translation, viz., MS. Add. 10,290. In none of these MSS. the name of Lefevre nor of any other writer is mentioned.—There exist three copies of an edition probably printed by Colard Mansion at Bruges, ca. 1478, with the same type as "Le Recueil"—at Eton College, England, at the Bibliothèque Nationale, and the Arsenal, Paris. For other French editions see J. C. Brunet, "Manuel du Libraire, etc." Paris, 1862. vol. iii.

<sup>2</sup> "Je dois avouer d'ailleurs que j'ignore sur quel fondement n'est



(generally) known up to the present day, that there exists a much stronger evidence for Lefevre's claims to the authorship of the "Iason." There was until 1777 at the "Bibliothèque des Ducs de Bourgogne" at Brussels a MS. of the "Iason" written in Lefevre's own handwriting, the genuineness of which is proved by the fact that this MS. formed part of the Library at Bruges in 1467.<sup>1</sup> This MS. was taken to Paris—when, we do not know, but certainly before 1480—when it was the property of a M. de Paulmy, whose library is now the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal,<sup>2</sup> where I have seen and examined it.

---

appuyée l'opinion suivie par M. van Praet et par M. Weiss, qui fait Raoul Lefevre auteur de notre roman. Dans les éditions françoises, et dans les traductions belges et angloises qu'on en a faites au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle Lefevre n'est jamais nommé. Cependant il est certain que l'histoire de Troyes du meme Raoul Lefevre offre de grands rapports de style avec celle de la Toison-d'Or."

<sup>1</sup> See J. Barrois, "Bibliothèque protypographique ou Librairies des fils du Roi Jean : Charles V., Jean de Berri, Philippe de Bourgogne et les siens," Paris, 1830, 4to. "Librairies de Bourgogne, inventoriées à Bruges, 1467 [shortly after the death of Philip the Good] d'après les pièces authentiques trouvées es archives de l'ancienne Chambre des Comptes à Lille en 1827. Livres de Gestes, No. 1270, liure de Iason."

<sup>2</sup> MS. No. 5067 of the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal is written on vellum and adorned with ten miniatures. It consists of 155 ff. The headings of the chapters are written in red ink. For further particulars, see H. Martin, "Catalogue," vol. v. p. 34. Until 1785 this MS. belonged to Marc-Antoine-René de Paulmy, who had collected one of the most wonderful libraries a private man has ever possessed. He sold it two years before his death (in 1787) to Count d'Artois, and this library bears now the title of Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal. M. de Paulmy, who was an indefatigable writer and conceived the idea of publishing the well-known "Bibliothèque universelle des Romans," gives in his "Mélanges tirés d'une grande Bibliothèque," Paris, 1780, 8vo, vol. viii., an analysis of the "liure de Iason." In his introductory remarks he

At the beginning of the MS., below a miniature, we read :

“ Proheme de listoire de Jason extraite de pluseurs liures et presentee a noble et redoubte prince Phelipe par la grace de dieu duc de Bourgoingne.”

At the end, written in red ink :

“ Escript de la main de lacteur Raoul Le Feure prebstre indigne.”

Any one who would take the trouble of carefully comparing this “ liure de Iason ” with the three books of “ Le Recueil,” could not fail to discover many features which are common to both works—nay, he would find out that there exists such a striking similarity in the style and phraseology as to lead, naturally and necessarily, to the conclusion that both the “ Iason ” and “ Le Recueil ” are the work of one and the same man. On the other hand, a comparison of the “ Iason ” and “ Le Recueil ” with the “ liure de Iason ” by Filastre does not only disclose no such common features, but shows distinctly by every line that Lefevre and Filastre wrote for two different purposes—the former to entertain, the latter to instruct and to moralise.

Now, after having produced all the information I was able to find about Filastre and Lefevre, I will try to show

---

says : “ Mais nous partons d’une édition sans date, qui est conforme à un beau manuscrit qui est dans *ma* Bibliothèque. L’auteur s’appeloit Raoul le Febvre ; il a présenté son Roman à Philippe le Bon, duc de Bourgogne, par une Epître Dédicatoire ou Prologue fort ridicule,” etc.

that the scribe of the MS. No. 697 was wrong in attributing the two first books of "Le Recueil" to Filastre. We have seen that, beyond the statement of this scribe, nowhere in all the books written on Filastre is the slightest allusion made to his having written "Le Recueil," while six MS., all the printed editions,<sup>1</sup> and the English translation,<sup>2</sup> attribute it to "Lefevre." We have, further, seen that there exists a strong resemblance between "Le Recueil" and the "liure de Iason," undoubtedly written by "Lefevre."

As the scribe refers to Filastre as Bishop of Tournay, the MS. 697 cannot have been written before 1461. I believe it was written after 1467, in the early part of the reign of Charles the Bold, but it is copied from a MS. written about 1461, or even a few years earlier.

The MSS. Nos. 9261-62 and 9263 in the Royal Library at Brussels, which, like MS. No. 697 in the Bibliothèque Nationale, only contain the first two books of "Le Recueil," and one of which (9261) attributes these to Raoul Lefevre as we have seen above, and which belonged in 1467 to the Library at Bruges,<sup>3</sup> were certainly written before 1461, I believe several years earlier. The fact that the work in these MSS., in common with the MS. No. 697, is styled "recoeil des troyennes histoires," while in all other MSS. and printed editions it is called "recueil des histoires de Troyes," insignificant as it is in itself, nevertheless seems to indicate that all three descend from

<sup>1</sup> MSS. 1, 2, 3, 5, 8 and 10, compare pp. xlvii.-liv. and p. xcii.

<sup>2</sup> See further on.

<sup>3</sup> See J. Barrois, "Bibliothèque protygraphique, etc.," Nos. 884, 894, 893, 895, and 1603.



the same source. As these MS. are, as far as the text is concerned, exactly like the MS. 697, and it is impossible to suppose that the two men can both have written the same work, this point, in addition to the reasons already adduced<sup>1</sup> and in consideration that there exist no differences of style and phraseology between Books I. and II. compared with Books III. (which is, as generally acknowledged, written by Lefevre), but, on the contrary, a great resemblance, we can have no doubt that Lefevre was the man who was charged by Philip the Good with the compilation of the Trojan trilogy, and the three books we possess are his work. If I could have carried the MS. of the "liure de Iason" from the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal at Paris to Brussels, and placed it side by side with the MSS. 9261-62, I think I could have adduced still stronger evidence. I was, at first sight of the Brussels MS., struck by the great resemblance of the handwriting to the "Iason," and I am of opinion that these two MSS. are written by the same hand as that stated in the "liure de Iason," viz., Lefevre's own. These two volumes, then, were the copies which Lefevre presented to Philip the Good. For this hypothesis the following reasons speak: 1. All three MSS. belonged in 1467 to the Library at Bruges; 2. All three are written right across the page, while most of the other MSS. are written in double columns; 3. The headings and miniatures are arranged in like manner; 4. While in all the MS. where Lefevre's name occurs he is styled "venerable homme," and "prestre chappellain," in MSS. 9261-62 he is spoken of plainly as "prestre." To the name "Philippe par la

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare pp. lix.-lx.

grace de dieu duc de bourgongne," is added "vième de ce nom." There occurs at the beginning of Book II. the curious passage reproduced above, p. lii., about Hercules whose feats are "comme impossibles a croire se ce ne fust que Bocace en son liure des dieux et aussi pluseurs autres qui en ont escript assez largement," ending up with the remark "Pour entrer en matiere." All these passages, which give one the impression that the author himself has written them, are not to be found in any other of the MSS. I firmly believe that one day, when, either through the help of photography or through the interest evinced in the subject by the authorities of the two Libraries, these MSS. will be placed together before an expert, the correctness of the hypothesis I now advance will be proved.

Having shown the impossibility of the scribe's statement in MS. 697, I will now also explain how I think he was led to make the mistake. As we have seen, both Filastre and Lefevre wrote books on the golden fleece, the former, "l'histoire de la Toison d'Or;" the latter "l'histoire de la conquête de la Toison d'Or." In the MSS. the former and the first book of the latter of these works are sometimes shortly referred to as "Liure de Iason." As is shown by MSS. 4, 9, and 11, there existed MSS. in which Lefevre's name was not mentioned. The MS. from which the scribe copied was evidently belonging to this class. He had heard that the author of "Le Recueil" was also the writer of a "liure de Iason"; having heard of the "liure de Iason" by the Bishop of Tournay, and, either not knowing Lefevre's "Iason," or confounding it with Filastre's, and only knowing the Bishop of Tournay as Guillaume de Failly, in the good

intention of remedying the defect of the MS.—*i.e.*, the omission of the author's name—he attributed on his *own* authority the two books of "Le Recueil" to Filastre, unconscious that by so doing he rendered him the worst possible service, as he put on record his illegitimate birth. This plausible explanation cannot fail to immensely strengthen all the arguments from intrinsic probability which I have adduced.

But there is still something more to be learnt from these MSS.

Raoul Lefevre wrote first, as Caxton<sup>1</sup> quite correctly states in his prologue to "Iason," his "liure de Iason," which he compiled, according to his own statement, from "pluseurs liures," one of which was certainly the "Historia Trojana," by Guido delle Colonne. As he had described the adventures of Iason in a separate work, he could not very well repeat them in the second book of "Le Recueil." The "Iason" was probably finished by the year 1456, perhaps much earlier. As the Order of the Golden Fleece is not mentioned in the "Iason," M. Paulin Paris<sup>2</sup> declares it must have been written before the foundation of this Order—*i.e.*, before 1430. I fail to see the force of this argument. After this time Lefevre began his "Recueil." He originally intended only to write two books, leaving the description of the third

<sup>1</sup> Compare pp. lxxi.-lxxii. note 2.

<sup>2</sup> "Les Manuscrits, etc.," vol. ii. p. 338: "Il est facile de voir que cette 'Histoire de la Toison d'Or' est antérieure à celle de Guillaume Fillastre . . . et même à l'institution de l'ordre de la Toison d'Or. Autrement l'auteur, quel qu'il fût, en présentant son livre au fondateur de l'ordre, n'auroit pas manqué d'y insinuer quelque allusion naturellement inspirée par le choix du sujet."



and general destruction of Troy to some one else. This fact we glean through the medium of the MS. 697 from the MS. which the scribe had before him.<sup>1</sup> This MS. would, therefore, represent the earliest stage in the history of Lefevre's "Recueil," where he had divided the matter differently, beginning from the later stages, with the second book the birth of Hercules, so that in his first book none of the destructions of Troy was mentioned.

Later on Lefevre altered his mind, and, instead of writing only two books, intended to write four, the third treating of the general destruction of Troy by the Greeks, and the fourth dealing with a fourth destruction of Troy by the Roman consul Fimbria<sup>2</sup> at the time of Marius and Sulla. Evidently, for the reason that each of his books should deal with one of the destructions of Troy, he altered the division in the original plan, ending the first book with the first destruction of Troy, thus necessarily adding a part of the adventures of Hercules to it. This second stage in the history of Lefevre's "Recueil" is represented by the MSS. Nos. 9261-62 and 9263 in the Royal Library at Brussels.

Probably, finding out that the materials for the fourth destruction of Troy by Fimbria were too scanty to fill a fourth volume, or not to be had at all, Lefevre changed

---

<sup>1</sup> That the scribe really copied from some MS. is plainly shown by the fact that he omitted exactly the contents of two lines in the Prologue, without which the passage in question makes no sense.

<sup>2</sup> Plutarch mentions in "Lucullus" a Roman officer who besieged Mithridates in Pritaine, but failed in his attempts to capture him; deserted by his troops for his cruelty, he committed suicide. I cannot find anywhere that he was a Roman consul or that he destroyed Troy.

his mind for the third time, and satisfied himself by writing the three books of "Le Recueil" as we possess them in the MSS. Nos. 59, 252, 253, 255, 22,552 of the Bibliothèque Nationale; No. 5068 of the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal; No. 9254 of the Royal Library at Brussels; and Royal 17 E ii. of the British Museum; and in all the printed editions, French and English, as indeed it was completed by the year 1464.

And from the fact that there were in the Library at Bruges copies of the "Iason" and the two first books of "Le Recueil," we may reasonably infer that there was also a fourth volume, containing the third book of "Le Recueil;"<sup>1</sup> but what has become of this volume, whether it no longer exists, or whether it was also carried to France and is still in some private library, I have been unable to ascertain; perhaps what I write here may lead to some information on this point.

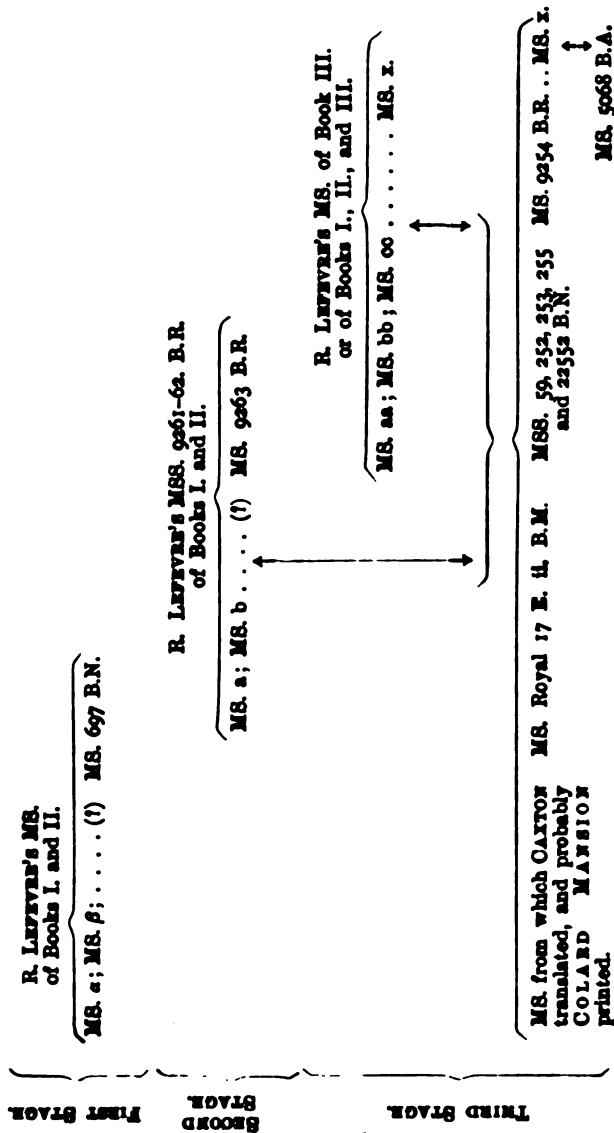
In the table facing this page I have endeavoured to graphically give the reader an idea of the three stages in the history of "Le Recueil" and of the relationship of the various MSS. to one another. As it is most likely that Lefevre's MSS. of the first, second, and third stages were reproduced in more copies than have come down to us, I have indicated this by MS<sup>a</sup>., MS<sub>b</sub>. . . . MS<sub>x</sub>., MS<sub>a</sub>., MS<sub>β</sub>. . . . MS<sub>x</sub>., and in the same way in the third stage. In the table, B. M. stands for British Museum; B. N., for Bibliothèque Nationale; B. R., for Royal Library, Brussels; and, finally, B. A., for Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal.

---

<sup>1</sup> Unfortunately the description of the MSS. in J. Barrois, "Bibliothèque protypographique," etc., is not full enough to enable us to decide this question, but probably Nos. 895 and 1603 refer to such a MS.



TABLE SHOWING THE THREE STAGES IN THE HISTORY OF R. LEFEVRE'S "RECEUIL,"  
AND THE RELATIONSHIP OF THE VARIOUS MSS. TO ONE ANOTHER.



WILLIAM CAXTON'S "THE RECUYELL OF THE  
HISTORYES OF TROYE" AND COLARD  
MANSION'S "LE RECUEIL DES  
HISTOIRES DE TROYES."

"THE Recuyell of the historyes of Troye," the first English printed book—the book, indeed, during the production of which, William Caxton,<sup>1</sup> England's first printer, according to his own statements, practised

---

<sup>1</sup> Besides the information on Caxton's life to be derived from prologues and epilogues attached to his printed books, very little is known about him. He was born about 1421 "in the weald of Kent." In 1438 he became an apprentice to the mercer, Alderman Robert Large, in 1439, the Lord Mayor of London. Upon his death, in 1441, Large left Caxton a small legacy. From Caxton's own statement in 1471, that he had been thirty years for the most part in the countries of Brabant, Flanders, Holland and Zeeland, we may conclude that he left England shortly after Large's death. In 1446 he was at Bruges a surety for a fellow mercer in a sum of about £1500. In 1462 he figures as Governor of the English Nation abroad. In 1464 he was nominated with Sir R. Whitehill as ambassador to the Duke of Burgundy for a treaty of commerce. In 1468 he fulfilled a similar mission together with two other mercers. About 1470 he entered the service of Margaret, wife of the Duke of Burgundy. In 1477 he settled as printer in Westminster, where he produced, until his death in 1491, at least ninety-nine works, of which, however, only one-third are dated.

the newly invented art, destined to exercise such an immense influence on the development of culture and civilisation—resembles very much in its appearance the manuscripts which it was intended to supersede; in its execution it is very inferior to many of them. The historical interest of this book, in a certain sense the fountain-head of modern literary English, is enhanced by the fact that its author, or more accurately its translator, is at the same time its printer. "The Recuyell" has neither a title-page<sup>1</sup> nor a colophon (such as Caxton was afterwards wont to suffix to the productions of his press) by which we could ascertain the date of its publication. The second leaf, however, contains information which, together with another fact, affords us the means of fixing its date within very little. Caxton tells us that he finished his translation of Lefevre's work on the 19th of December, 1471. We know that he returned early in the year 1477 to England, settled in London, set up the first printing establishment in Westminster, and published on November 18th of the same year the first English book printed on English soil, viz., "The Dictes and Sayengis of the Philosophers." If we, therefore, fix the date of the publication of "The

---

<sup>1</sup> William Blades, "The Life and Typography of William Caxton," London, 1861-63, 4to, vol. i. p. 33, says: "Title-pages are purely typographical in their origin, the scribes having satisfied themselves with heading their first page with the *Hic incipit* and name of the treatise. Caxton followed the manuscript practice in this particular, for, with one single exception ('The Chastising of God's Children') where the title of the book is printed alone in the centre of the first page, his books appear without any title-page. Wynkyn de Worde adopted title-pages immediately after the death of his master."

Recuyell" about 1474, I do not think we shall be very far wrong.

"The Recuyell" has neither signatures, pagination, nor catchwords. It is printed with type<sup>1</sup> No. 1 (*grosse-bâtarde*); the lines are of uneven lengths, varying from  $4\frac{3}{4}$  to  $5\frac{1}{4}$  inches, a full page contains thirty lines. There are spaces left throughout the book for initials from 3-7 lines in height. The paper of the volume is arranged in quinternions, or gatherings of ten leaves. Each of the three books of "The Recuyell" begins with a fresh quinternion, but as the matter of the first and second books did not fill up their last quinternions, quaternions and a ternion are used. The first book consists of fourteen quinternions and one quaternion, or 148 leaves; the second of nine quinternions, one quaternion, and one ternion, or 104 leaves; and the third consists of ten quinternions, or 100 leaves: the whole volume, therefore, contains 352 leaves, of which the first is a blank. If we assume that the gatherings were marked, as Caxton has done in his later works, with the letters of the alphabet, the collation of the volume would be thus graphically expressed:

Book I. A-O<sub>16</sub>; P<sub>1</sub> = 148 leaves (1-148), leaf 1 blank.

Book II. a-i<sub>16</sub>; k<sub>1</sub>; l<sub>1</sub> = 104 " (149-252).

Book III. Aa-Kk<sub>10</sub> = 100 " (253-352).

On leaf 2, recto (A<sub>1</sub>)<sup>2</sup>, occurs the paragraph beginning

<sup>1</sup> *Ibidem*. Mr. Blades has arranged all Caxton's books according to the type into six, or, more accurately eight, classes, the second and fourth being subdivided.

<sup>2</sup> In the present edition, in order to avoid confusion, I must state that the first leaf, which is a blank, is only included in the pagination, but not in the numbering of leaves. Therefore, page 3 is leaf 1 recto, and page 4 leaf 1 verso, etc.



with a three line initial: "Here begynneth the volume intituled and named," in which Caxton informs us that Raoul Lefevre composed and drew out of various Latin books, in 1464, what he, a mercer of the city of London, translated into English by the command of the Duchess Margaret of Burgundy; that he began his translation at Bruges, the 1st of March, 1468, and finished it at Cologne on the 19th of September, 1471.<sup>1</sup>

On the verso of this leaf follows Caxton's Prologue, in which he relates the history of his translation. As a pastime he began this translation, but, after having done five or six quires, he laid it aside, abandoning the idea of bringing it to an end. Later on (probably in 1470), the Duchess Margaret commanded him to finish his work. He further informs us that he was born in the weald of Kent, and had spent thirty years in Brabant, Flanders, Holland, and Zealand, and that he was a servant to the Duchess of Burgundy and received a yearly fee from her.

On leaf 3 verso begins the prologue which Raoul Lefevre prefixed to his work. I have reproduced it in the preceding chapter.

On leaf 4 verso are printed four lines, being the heading of the first chapter of Book I. of "The Recuyell." The text begins with a seven-line initial on leaf 5 recto and ends on leaf 148 verso. Book II. runs from leaf 149 recto to 251 recto, ending with the lines:

"Besechyng her that is cause of this translacion out of

---

<sup>1</sup> The contents of this page, leaf 4 verso and leaf 252 recto, five lines, are printed in red ink. I do not remember to have found in any other of Caxton's later books red ink used.



frenshe in to this symple and rude englissh / that is to wete my right redoubtyd lady Margrete by the grace of god suster of my soverayn lord the kynge of englond and of ffirance &c Duchesse of burgoyne and of Brabant &c that she wole resseyue my Rude labour in thanke and in gree: . " <sup>1</sup>

On leaf 251 verso and 252 recto occurs a chapter in which Caxton recapitulates what he has said on leaf 2 as to the command of the Duchess of Burgundy, and the places where he worked at his translation; while omitting the exact dates, he adds, "contynued in gaunt." He goes on to say, there was really no need for him to translate Book III., as Lydgate had but lately done so; he did do it because—1° the Duchess commanded him; 2° Lydgate had used another source; 3° he had just then leisure, staying at Cologne; 4°, tastes are different, some like verse, some prefer prose. He winds up by requesting his redoubted lady to graciously accept his work.

Book III. begins on leaf 252 recto with a sort of analysis of its contents, occupying sixteen lines, and terminates on leaf 350 verso. The recto and verso of leaf 351 are taken up by an epilogue, wherein Caxton states what follows: He has made the translation "as nyghe as god has gyuen *him* connyng." Through writing so much his pen is worn, his hand unsteady, and his eyes dim by too much looking upon the white paper: He is no longer what he used to be, age is creeping upon him, his body is getting feeble. He has promised various gentlemen and friends to send them "The Recuyell" as quick as possible, therefore he

---

<sup>1</sup> This passage, as we have seen, occurs in various French MSS. at the end of Book II., but not in the printed editions. Caxton has simply translated the French text and substituted "lady Margaret" for "duke Philip."

has learnt at his "grete charge and dispense to ordeyne this said book in prynte." It is not written with pen and ink like other books, but all the copies, such as the one the reader sees before him, are begun and finished at the same time. He has presented the book to his redoubted lady, who has largely rewarded him for his labours. He points out that his book varies from those of other writers on the same subject, as they have derived their information from different sources. Dares, who writes in favour of the Trojans, disagrees with Dictys and Homerus, who, as Greeks, take up the cause of their countrymen. It is not wonderful that the proper names "accorde not," for names in these days have "dyuerce equyvocations, after the contrees that they dwelle in." On one point, however, all writers agree, and that is as regards the last and general destruction of Troy. Caxton winds up with quoting St. Paul: "all that is wreton is wreton to our doctryne."

On leaf 352 recto occur fourteen lines in Latin verse, beginning, "Pergama flere volo, etc.;"<sup>1</sup> the verso of this leaf is blank.

As to typographical execution, Caxton's volume, being a first attempt, is naturally far from perfect. There occur

---

<sup>1</sup> These Latin verses, with some slight variations, occur as "Versus Magistri Hildeberti," in MS. Cleopatra, A. viii. ff. 56-58; without an author's name in MSS. Royal 13 A. iv., ff. 22-23; Vespasian, B. xiv. f. 18, and Harley, 3202, ff. 114-115. Polycarp Leyser, "Historia Poetarum Medii Aevi," Halle, 1721, wrongly ascribes them to Hildebert, Bishop of Le Mans, 1097, and Archbishop of Tours, 1125-1134. The poem is identical, as far as 153 lines are concerned, with the "Ilias" in two books of Simon Chèvre d'Or. Compare H. Dunger, "Die Sage vom Trojanischen Kriege," Leipzig, 1869, 8vo, pp. 22-3, and "Histoire littéraire de France," xii. p. 487, etc.

more than 360 misprints in it,<sup>1</sup> by far the greater number of which are due to confusion of *n* and *u*, and *in* and *m*. In twelve cases a word or several words are repeated in passing from one page to the following one—viz., pp. 130-1, 136-7, 142-3, 148-9, 160-1, 164-5, 176-7, 188-9, 222-3, 236-7, 536-7, 636-7; in one case part of a sentence is omitted (pp. 667-8),<sup>2</sup> and in another a word is not completed (pp. 668-9).

The type, No 1 (*grosse bâtarde*), with which the volume is printed contains a great many double and several treble letters, viz.:

be; bo; ca; cc; ce; ch; co; c̄t; de; do; fa; fe; ff; fi; fo; fu; ffa; ffe; ffi; ffo; ffu; ha; he; ho; ht; la; le; li; ll; lo; lu; mi; nn; or; pp; qu; ra; re; ro; sa; sc; se; sh; si; sl; so; sp; ss; st; su; sca; sce; sch; sco; ssa; sse; ssi; sso; ssu; ta; te; th; to; tt; tu; ve; vo.

A great number of contractions are peculiar to this type, such, indeed, as one finds in the MSS. of the period, viz.:

ā; ē; ī; c<sup>o</sup>; ñ; ō; p; p̄; p̄; p<sup>o</sup>; q3; rā; rē; rō; fp; fū; p̄; tū; t<sup>o</sup>; ū; <sup>o</sup>; v̄; p̄<sup>o</sup>; p̄<sup>t</sup>; p<sup>u</sup>.

The marks of interpunctuation used are /, :, and .; but often several points or even several colons and points are used at the end of paragraphs. The division of words at the end of a line is not practised according to syllables, or

<sup>1</sup> A complete list of these misprints see in the chapter on "The Present Edition."

<sup>2</sup> I have supplied this deficiency from the French edition in small type at the bottom of p. 667.



root and termination, but according to space, and in very few places the conjunctive hyphen is used. A very striking feature of the type is the letter "F," which, no matter where it occurs, is always preceded by a point; thus, ".F." There occur two signs for "and," viz., & and ⁊.

The only perfect copy in existence of "The Recuyell," the one from which I have had the advantage of preparing the present edition, was owned at one time, as an autograph at the beginning of the volume states, by Sir Th. Fairfax.<sup>1</sup> In our own day it belonged to the library of the Earl of Jersey, Osterley Park, and became, in 1885, at the dispersal of this splendid library, the property of Lord Amherst of Hackney. In this copy the initials are filled in with red ink. The scribe who was intrusted with this task has also marked on every page the first letters of words which seemed to him important, but by so doing he cannot be said to have embellished the volume.

Immediately following the text, and preceding the "List of Names and Places" and the "Glossary," I have printed eight pages, reproduced in photographic facsimile from the present copy. Lord Amherst has selected for this purpose the pages containing Caxton's Prologue, his epilogue, and the paragraph he added at the end of Book II.—in the present edition pp. 3, 4, 5, 6, 502, 503, 701, 702. The first of these pages, entirely in red in the original, has also been printed in red ink. For the rest of the pages, the idea of bringing out the initials and the marks added by the illuminator in red, had to be abandoned, as it would

---

<sup>1</sup> "Sir Th. Fairfax the elder knyght oweth this booke."

have entailed great expense without any prospect of turning out satisfactory.

A second copy, *made perfect* with a few leaves from another copy, is in the Bibliotheca Regia, British Museum (C. 11. c. 1). It is very much to be regretted that some barbaric person has disfigured the volume by filling in the initials in a very coarse and clumsy manner with black ink.

The third copy, until 1892 one of the treasures of Lord Spencer's Library, Althorp Park, is now in the John Rylands Library, Manchester. Its first leaf is supplied in facsimile.

Besides these three copies, there are several others, more or less perfect, in existence in the libraries of the Duke of Devonshire; the Marquis of Bath; Earl Pembroke; the Earl of Ashburnham; Sion College, London; Public Library and Trinity College, Cambridge; Bodleian Library, Oxford; Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris; Sir Thomas Philipps, and B. Botfield,<sup>1</sup> Esq.

We possess, as it were, a sister-edition to Caxton's "The Recuyell," which, according to all appearance, was printed by Colard Mansion (at Bruges), who undoubtedly had some share in the production of the first English printed book. Some bibliographers even assert that it was also printed by Caxton, but this statement cannot be based on any facts, except that the two books are printed with the same type and treat the same subject. I am of opinion that "Le Recueil des histoires de Troye" was printed

---

<sup>1</sup> This library was dispersed, after the death of Sir Beriah in 1863.



after "The Recuyell," and that, as Mr. Blades conjectures, C. Mansion, encouraged by Caxton's example, after the latter's return to England (early in 1477), undertook the printing of it, and most probably either from the MS. from which Caxton translated, or at any rate from a MS. closely related to Caxton's original, for Caxton evidently possessed such a MS.

Whether Mansion printed "Le Recueil" or not we cannot decide, for neither date, place, nor printer's name is mentioned in the volume, perhaps in order to facilitate its circulation in France without hurting the national vanity. The work, however, seems never to have had anything like a success in France.

"Le Recueil" begins with a blank leaf, and is arranged in quaternions like "The Recuyell." Book I. consists of twelve quaternions or 120 leaves; Book II. contains eight quaternions and one ternion or 86 leaves; Book III. has eight quaternions or 80 leaves: the whole volume, therefore, 286, of which two are blanks. Graphically expressed the collation of the volume would be this:

Book I.	A-M <sub>12</sub>	= 120 leaves (1-120), first and last leaves blank.
Book II.	A-h <sub>16</sub> ; i <sub>2</sub>	= 86 " (121-206).
Book III.	Aa-Hh <sub>16</sub>	= 80 " (207-286).

On leaf 2 we read:

"Cy commence le volume Intitule le recueil des histoires de troyes Compose par venerable homme raoul le feure prestre chappelain de mon tres redoubte seigneur Monseigneur le Duc Phelippe de bourgoigne En lan de grace . mil . .ccc. lxxiii. : ."

Immediately after these five lines Lefevre's Prologue begins with a seven-line initial.

"Quant je regarde et cognois les oppinions des hommes nourris en aucunes singulieres histoires de," etc.

On the verso of leaf 2, exactly in the same way as in "The Recuyell," after a sort of chapter-heading, begins the text with a five-line initial: "Tous les filz de noe espars par les climatz, etc." The first book ends on leaf 119 verso with the words ". Fin . i . liure." The last words of the second book are: "Comme cy apres sensuit:"; and at the end of the third book is printed: ". . . Explicit . . ." <sup>1</sup> In its typographical execution "Le Recueil" is greatly superior to Caxton's volume: the lines are, with very few exceptions, of even lengths; the number of misprints is very much smaller. In common with Caxton's volume "Le Recueil" has neither signatures, pagination, nor catch words, and the initials are not printed, but only spaces left for them.

There are not so many copies of "Le Recueil" known to exist as of the English translation. A very fine and complete copy is in the British Museum (C. 21 d.), besides a copy which only contains the second book. A second complete copy is in the possession of Her Majesty the

---

<sup>1</sup> The early French editions of "Le Recueil" worth noting are: 1. Lyon, 1486, printed by Michel Tobie & Jacques Herenberch; an exceedingly rare edition (No. 1228 of the Crawford-Sale Catalogue). Compare also Brunet's note as to the statement of the "abbé Mercier de Saint-Leger," who declares that there was a copy of this edition in 1786 at the house of the "duchesse d'Anville." 2. Lyon, 10 octobre, 1490, printed by the same (*see* *Ædes Althorp*. II., p. 246). 3. Lyon, 16 avril, 1494, printed by Jacques Maillet. 4. Paris, ca. 1498 (?), printed by or for Anthoine Verard. 5. Lyon, 2 decembre, 1529, printed by Anthoine du Ry. 6. Lyon, 17 septembre, 1510, printed by Jacques Saccon. 7. Paris, 1532, printed by Denis Janot.

Queen at Windsor Castle;<sup>1</sup> a third at the library of Lord Ashburnham; a fourth at the John Rylands Library, Manchester; and a fifth at the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.

---

<sup>1</sup> This volume, which is made perfect with a few leaves presented by the Duke of Roxburghe, is a present from Jacob Bryant, and was among the few books retained by George IV. when the Royal Library was made over to the nation, in 1823. It was at one time the property of Joseph Ames, the bibliographer, who, for the sake of comparing the types, inserted between ff 8 and 9 a leaf from the English edition.

WYNKYN DE WORDE'S, ROBERT COPLAND'S  
AND THE LATER EDITIONS OF  
"THE RECUYELL."

WYNKYN DE WORDE, Caxton's helpmate and successor, printed "The Recuyell" in the year 1503 for the second time. His edition is even more rare than the original. There is only one quite perfect copy known to exist; it belonged at one time to a library in Holland, but has lately passed into the hands of Mr. B. Quaritch, who also possesses a second copy, made perfect by the addition of a few leaves.<sup>1</sup> Three more or less complete copies are in the British Museum;<sup>2</sup> the Library of King's College, and the Pepysian Collection,<sup>3</sup> Magdalen College, Cambridge.

Wynkyn de Worde's edition presents a very different

---


<sup>1</sup> Through the kindness of Mr. B. Quaritch, I have been enabled to examine these copies.

<sup>2</sup> The copy in the British Museum wants the first leaf and the four last leaves; leaves 2, 3, 4 are slightly mutilated.


<sup>3</sup> The copy in the Pepysian Collection has in the colophon the year .mcccc. and .ij.; but this date is not genuine, and added in ink. Compare W. C. Hazlitt, "Bibliograph. Collect. and Notes," 2nd series, 1474-1800, London, 1882, pp. 338, and 3rd Series, London, 1889, p. 151.



aspect from the editio princeps. It is printed in double columns (42 lines forming a full column) and is illustrated with seventy-one woodcuts of rather coarse execution, some of which are, however, repeated no less than eight times.<sup>1</sup> The volume contains four leaves of preliminary matter, marked aa, to aa, and the rest is arranged from A to Z, and from Aa to Kk in sixes. The title on aa, below a woodcut, runs thus:

 HE recuyles or gaderi  
ge to gyder of y<sup>e</sup> hyfto-  
ryes of Troye how it  
was destroyed & brent  
etwyes by y<sup>e</sup> puyffaunt  
Hercules & y<sup>e</sup> thyrd &  
generall by y<sup>e</sup> grekes.

In the original the initial T is  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide and  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches high. On the verso of this leaf, column 1 begins thus:

 Here foloweth the table of the recu-  
les of the hyftoryes of Troye deuyded

<sup>1</sup> Reckoning the cut and the ornamental initial T on the title-page, the volume in reality only contains 31 different cuts. I here quote the leaves on which they occur, including in brackets, such as are repeated: 1. (A<sub>1</sub>v; Y<sub>1</sub>r); 2. (A<sub>1</sub>v; P<sub>1</sub>v; S<sub>1</sub>r); 3. (B<sub>1</sub>r; C<sub>1</sub>r; E<sub>1</sub>v; G<sub>1</sub>r; K<sub>1</sub>r; Q<sub>1</sub>r); 4. (C<sub>1</sub>v; C<sub>1</sub>r); 5. (D<sub>1</sub>r; E<sub>1</sub>r; F<sub>1</sub>r; G<sub>1</sub>v; G<sub>1</sub>r; R<sub>1</sub>r; B<sub>1</sub>v); 6. (E<sub>1</sub>v; F<sub>1</sub>v); 7. (H<sub>1</sub>r; H<sub>1</sub>v; J<sub>1</sub>r; L<sub>1</sub>r); 8. (J<sub>1</sub>v; O<sub>1</sub>r; E<sub>1</sub>r); 9. (P<sub>1</sub>v; Q<sub>1</sub>r; X<sub>1</sub>v); 10. (Aa<sub>1</sub>; T<sub>1</sub>v); 11. (N<sub>1</sub>r; L<sub>1</sub>v); 12. (H<sub>1</sub>v; H<sub>1</sub>v); 13. (P<sub>1</sub>v; Q<sub>1</sub>r; Y<sub>1</sub>r; X<sub>1</sub>r; Dd<sub>1</sub>v; Ee<sub>1</sub>r; Ff<sub>1</sub>v; Gg<sub>1</sub>v); 14. (L<sub>1</sub>r; Y<sub>1</sub>r; P<sub>1</sub>v; Q<sub>1</sub>r; Dd<sub>1</sub>v; Ee<sub>1</sub>r; Ff<sub>1</sub>v; Gg<sub>1</sub>v); 15. A<sub>1</sub>r; 16. B<sub>1</sub>v; 17. B<sub>1</sub>r; 18. H<sub>1</sub>v; 19. T<sub>1</sub>v; 20. P<sub>1</sub>v; 21. L<sub>1</sub>v; 22. M<sub>1</sub>r; 23. N<sub>1</sub>v; 24. Aa<sub>1</sub>v; 25. Z<sub>1</sub>v; 26. Z<sub>1</sub>r; 27. Aa<sub>1</sub>v; 28. X<sub>1</sub>r; 29. Dd<sub>1</sub>v; 30. The cut on the title-page; 31. The ornamental initial T.

in to thre partyes wherof y<sup>e</sup> fyrste par  
tye speketh of Saturne and Jupyter  
his sone and of the begynnyng of tro  
ye and of the feates of Perseus .

The seconde speketh of Hercules how  
he destroyed Troye two tymes .

The thyrde speketh of the laste gene-  
rall destruccyon by the Grekes .

For the rauysshynge of quene Helayne  
wyf of the kynge Menelaus / and of  
the noble Hector of his brethern .

¶ Here begyneth the tables of y<sup>e</sup> fyrste  
boke the whiche conteyneth xliij cha-  
pytres .

The table of contents, which consists of the various  
chapter-headings already noticed in the editio princeps  
(they are repeated in their proper places throughout the  
text), occupies aa<sub>1</sub> verso and the whole of leaves aa<sub>2</sub>, aa<sub>3</sub>,  
and aa<sub>4</sub>.

The first column of leaf A<sub>1</sub> recto begins:

¶ Here foloweth the recuyell or hyf-  
rye of Troye departed in to thre par-  
tes . The fyrste speketh of Saturne &  
Jupyter & of y<sup>e</sup> begynnyng of Troye  
& the feates of Perseus . The seconde  
speketh of y<sup>e</sup> labours of Hercules how  
he two tymes destroyed Troye . And  
the thyrde speketh of the last generall  
destruccyon by the Grekes for rauyf-

thyng of dame Helayne wyf to Menelaus / & the feates and prowesses of Hectour & of his brethern .

It is followed by the prologue of "that worshypfull man Raoull le feure whiche was auctour of this present booke in the Frenshe tongue."

In the place of Caxton's prologue is printed on leaf A, recto, beginning with a six-line initial in wood, the following paragraph by W. de Worde:

**H**Ere begynneth the volume entytled and named y<sup>e</sup> recuyell of the hyftoryes of Troye / composed & drawen out of dyuerse bookes of Laten in to Frensshe by the ryght venerable persone & worshypfull man Raoull le Feure preeft & chapellayne vnto y<sup>e</sup> ryght noble glorious & myghty prynce in his tyme Phylippe duke of Bourgoyne of Brabande &c . In the yere of the Incarnacyon of our lord god a thousande . CCCC . . lxiiij. And translated & drawen out of Frenshe in to Englysshe by Wyllyam Caxton mercer of the Cyte of London at the request of many & dyuers gentylmen . Whiche sayd translacyon & werke was begonne in Bruges in the couthe of Flaundres the fyrste daye of Marche the yere of the Incarnacyon



of our sayd lorde god a . M . CCCC .  
 lxviij . And ended & fynysshed in the  
 holy cyte of Coleyne the . xix . daye of  
 Septembre the yere of our sayd lorde  
 god a . M . CCCC . lxxi . &c

There are no catchwords nor headlines in the book, and besides those signatures mentioned above, the leaves and pages are not marked.

Caxton's epilogues to the second and third books are not reproduced; there is no break made between the second and first books. Book I. occupies leaves A<sub>1</sub> recto to P<sub>1</sub> recto, column 2, where the second book begins; it ends on leaf Aa<sub>4</sub> verso, column 2; the third book occupies leaves Aa<sub>5</sub> recto, column 1, to Kk<sub>6</sub> verso.

The colophon on Kk<sub>6</sub> verso runs thus:

“¶ Thus endeth the boke of the recu-  
 les or syege of Troye Enprynted in  
 London in Flete flete at the fygne of  
 the sonne by Wynkyn de Worde The  
 yere of our lorde god . M . CCCCC :  
 and . iij . ”

Below this follows Wynkyn de Worde's large device.

In the year 1553 "The Recueyl" was printed for the third time<sup>1</sup> by William Copland. Although Copland's

---

<sup>1</sup> The statement of some bibliographers that Richard Pynson printed "The Recuyell" is erroneous. What R. Pynson did print in 1513 is John Lydgate's "The hystorye, Sege, and dystruccyon of Troye," being a metrical translation, with additions from the Latin prose of Guido delle Colonne. This is, moreover, the work referred to by W. Caxton in his epilogue to Book III. of "The Recuyell."



edition resembles in some points Wynkyn de Worde's, it has many features of its own. It is also printed in double columns (44 lines going to a full column), but there are headlines<sup>1</sup> in the volume, and these as well as the headings of chapters are printed in Roman type, the text in Black Letter. The leaves are, in addition to the signatures, marked at the right-hand top corners of the rectos, and each of the three books has a separate pagination.

The first two leaves of the volume are without signatures; the first leaf contains on its recto, above a large woodcut of very coarse execution, the following title, line for line:

### ¶ The recuile of the Histories

of Troie . First trāslated out of latin in to Frēche by Raoul  
le seure in the yere from Thincarnacion of our Sauour  
Christ . . MCCCCLxiii . and translated out of Frenche  
in to Engliſhe by Wyllyam Caxton Mercer of London, begon in  
the fyrst day of Marche in the yere of our Lord god. MCCC.

C Lxviii . and fyniſhed in the . xix . of Septembre in the yere  
mencyoned by the ſayd Caxton in the ende of the ſeconde  
booke . where in he declared the myghty prowesses of  
Hercules, the valyant actes of Hector and the re-  
nomed dedes of many other notable perſones  
of famous memory, worthy to bee rede  
and diligently to be marked of all  
men, and ſpecially of men of  
nobilytie and high  
degree .

¶ Novv Imprynted . Anno domini . M.CCCCliiii . by VVyllyam Coplād  
dvyellyng in Fleteſtrete at the Signe of the Roſe Gar-  
lande nyghe vnto Fletebrydge .

---

<sup>1</sup> The headline is divided into two portions, the first on the verso of the leaves runs thus: "The fyrst (fecond), (thirde) Booke," and on the rectos "destruccion of Troye."

On the second leaf, with the heading, "The Prologue," begins with a six-line wood initial the prologue of W. Caxton already noticed in the editio princeps. It is followed on the verso by Lefevre's prologue:

¶ Here foloweth the prologue of that worshipful man Raoul le feure whiche was autour of this present booke in the Frenche tongue . "

These two leaves are not printed in columns.

The third leaf is marked B<sub>1</sub> and on it begins the text of "The Recueyll." The volume is arranged in sixes from B—O<sub>2</sub>. On O<sub>1</sub> verso and O<sub>2</sub> is printed: "The Table of the first booke of the recuyle of the hystories of Troye," and at the end we read: "Thus endeth the table of the first booke."

The second Book is again arranged in sixes from Aa to Hh, and Ii is in eights, the last two leaves being blanks, and Ii<sub>8</sub> is missing altogether. On Aa<sub>1</sub> the second book has, above a large woodcut, the following title:

¶ Here begynneth the second  
Booke of the Recueill of the histories of Troye, that  
speaketh of the prowesses of the stronge Hercu-  
les, of his merueilous faytes, wonderfull  
werkes and of his  
death .

The text begins on Aa, recto with a five-line initial.

On Ii<sub>8</sub> verso occurs the same paragraph by W. Caxton as in the same place in the editio princeps. Ii<sub>8</sub> is occupied by "The Table *for* the second booke." At the end of

this table, as well as at the end of the third book, is printed the following colophon :

¶ Imprynted at London in Flete-  
strete at the fygne of the Rose Gar-  
land by wyllyam Cop-  
land .

The third book is arranged in sixes A, B, c, d to i. On A recto it has, above a woodcut, line for line the following title :

¶ In these two Bookes prece-  
dente : we haue by the helpe of god trefyd of the two fyrste  
destruccions of Troy, with noble faytes and dedes of the  
stronge and puissant Hercules, that made and dyd so ma-  
nye meruayles that the engyne humayne of al men ought  
to meruayle . And also how he slewe the Kyng Laomedö  
bete downe and put hys Citie of Troye to Ruynes . Now in the thyrd  
and laste booke God to fore : we shall saye how the sayde Cytie  
was by Priamus sonne of the sayde Kynge Laomedon reedified  
and repayed more stronge and more puyssante than euer it  
was before . And afterwarde how for the Rauysshement  
of Dame Helayne wyfe of Kynge Menelaus of Grece  
the sayde Cytie was totally destroyed, Pria-  
mus, Hector and all his sonnes slayne  
wyth nobles wythout nombre.

As it shall appere in the  
proces of the Cha-  
pytres



— : —



The text ends on i, verso ; on i, recto is Caxton's epilogue and following upon this, in smaller type (black letter), occur the Latin verses "Pergama flere volo," &c. The volume concludes with "The Table of the third Booke," and the above mentioned colophon.

The next edition I have seen<sup>1</sup> bears the date 1607, and is printed by Thomas Creede. As this edition<sup>2</sup> is the fountain-head of all the later editions in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, I have thought it necessary to give a detailed description of it. The title-page runs as follows:

THE || ANCIENT HISTO- || RIE OF THE DESTRVC- ||  
tion of Troy . || CONTEINING THE FOVNDERS AND ||  
foundation of the faid Citie, with the causes and maner  
of || *the first and second spoiles and sackings thereof*, by  
Hercules || his followers : and the third and laft vtter  
defolati- || *on and ruine, effected by Menelaus and* || all  
the notable worthies || *of Greece.* || *HERE ALSO*  
*ARE MENTIONED THE RI-* || *sing and flourish-*  
*ing of sundry Kings with their Realmes : as* || *also the*  
*decay and overthrow of diuers others.* || Besides many  
admirable and most rare exploits of Chiuallrie || and  
martiall prowesse, effected by valourous Knights : || with  
incredible euent, compassed, for, and || through the  
loue of Ladies. || *Translated out of French into English,*  
*by W. Caxton.* || Newly corrected, and the English  
much amended. || *By William Fiston.* || ☞ LONDON,  
|| Printed by Thomas Creede. || 1607.

The book is printed in black letter, but headings of chapters, headlines, and proper names are in Roman type (where the latter occur in headings of chapters they are set up in italics). The volume is arranged as follows—

<sup>1</sup> According to Mr. Hazlitt there existed an edition by the same printer bearing the date 1596. Compare p. cx.

<sup>2</sup> I assume that the edition of 1596 (if it existed) was different from that of 1607 only as regards the title-page.



Preliminary matter A<sub>1</sub>-, A<sub>1</sub> blank, A<sub>1</sub> title-page, A<sub>2</sub> and A<sub>3</sub> are occupied by a sort of preface in lieu of Caxton's, which I give partly here as a curiosity :

"The Printer to the curteous Reader, health and happinesse.

Whereas it is, and euer hath beene a custome that among all maner studies, the reading of Annales, and Histories, most delighteth men, of all ages, but especially young men ; whose affections are quickly incensed, and their hearts set on fire with an emulation of whatsoever notable and valourous enterprises they shall heare or reade of : but most principally young Gentlemen & Noblemen, are by the viewing of memorable deeds & martial prowesse, so inflamed with an approbatiō of good & famous exployts ; and with a detestation of ignominious or cowardly persons and deedes, that the reading & hearing thereof, doe as it were kindle in their minds an ardent burning desire of imitating, if not matching, or ouergoing the most glorious attempts, of the greatest & most excellent . In regard whereof, the memorable sayings,

And whereas before time, the translator William Caxton, being (as it seemeth) no English man, had left very many words meere French, and sundry sentences so improperly Englished, that it was hard to vnderstand, we haue caused them to bee made plainer English : and if leisure had serued, we would haue had the same in better refined phrases and certaine names that be amisse, conferred with Authours, and made right . But if wee finde your fauourable accepting hereof to bee such, as wee may shortly haue a *fourth* impreffion we wil haue all amended.

Fare ye well."

This preface, with the number altered in the last line but

one, occurs also in the two next editions. Book I. ends on P<sub>8</sub> recto, and has a table of contents in Roman type. Book II. begins with a new lengthy title-page on Q<sub>8</sub> recto. At the end of Book II. on Hh<sub>2</sub> is printed the paragraph by Caxton which occurs in the editio princeps, but slightly modified. Evidently William Fiston, who corrected and amended (!) the English, and supposes that Caxton as it seems, was no Englishman, forgot that he had omitted Caxton's Prologue in the beginning. Book III., again beginning with a new title-page in the same style as the two first ones, ends on Tt<sub>6</sub> verso with Caxton's epilogue. The lines "Pergama, &c.," and a table of contents in Roman type, occupy Tt<sub>7</sub> and Tt<sub>8</sub>. After signature V<sub>8</sub> occurs a mistake in the pagination, page 312 being followed by 321, although the text is not interrupted. I mention this blunder in order to show upon what principle these editions were prepared, the same mistake occurs in the same place in the next edition.

The following edition was published in 1617, although evidently newly set up in type; the text is a servile reprint from that of the preceding edition, with all its faults. In the title-page, which is exactly worded like that of the edition of 1607, the name "William Fiston" is omitted, and "The Fifth Edition" occurs above the imprint:

" Printed by Barnard Alfop  
1617."

In the printer's epistle to the reader in the last line but one we read:

" as wee may shortlie haue a fifth Impression."

In the year 1636 appeared another edition. It has a similar title-page to the former two editions, but it is called "The Sixth Edition," and the imprint runs thus:

"London, Printed by B. Alsop and T. Favvcet dwelling in Grubstreet, neere the lower Pumpe 1636."

The volume is arranged thus. Four leaves preliminary matter, A–Nn, in eights. In the printer's epistle to the reader, the "seuenth Impression" is promised should the book be favourably accepted.

In 1663 appeared "The Seventh Edition, corrected and much amended." The text is the same as in the previous editions, but the books have separate pagination. The title-page, although somewhat differently arranged, contains the same information as the former editions. The imprint runs thus:

"*London*, Printed by *R. I.* for *S. S.* to bee sold by *F. Coles* in the Old-Bayley, and *C. Tyus* on *London-Bridge* . 1663."

In this edition and in all the following ones the passage referring to Caxton, in the printer's epistle to the reader, is altogether omitted; and the last sentence thus modified: "What faults escaped in the former Impression are in this Corrected and amended."

"The Eighth Edition, Corrected and much amended," appeared in 1670. It is a verbatim reprint of the preceding edition. The imprint is this:

"London, Printed for T. Paffenger, at the 3 Bibles on *London-Bridge* . 1670."

"The Ninth Edition," "Corrected and much amended," was published in 1676.<sup>1</sup> Although the copy in the British Museum is so badly trimmed that the lower portion of the title is cut off, one can see from the stationer's list of books appended to the Printer's Address to the Courteous Reader, that it was also printed for "Thomas Passenger."

"The Tenth Edition, Corrected and much amended," came out in 1680.

"The Eleventh Edition" bears the date 1684. Both this and the edition of 1680 are printed in London, for

*"T. Passinger, at the Three Bibles on London Bridge."*

"The Twelfth Edition" appeared in 1702, and "Thirteenth Edition" in 1708. Both have the imprint:

*"London, Printed for Eben. Tracey, at the Three Bibles on London-Bridge."*

A so-called "The Eighteenth Edition," corrected and amended, appeared in 1738 at Dublin. On the title-page occurs the following imprint:

"DUBLIN: Printed by and for Thomas Browne in High-street, where Country Merchants and others may be furnish'd with most sorts of School-Books and Histories by wholesale or Retail at reasonable Rates, 1738."

In our own days (1892) Mr. William Morris has produced, at his private (Kelmscott) press, an edition of "The Recuyell," which, as regards getting up and

---

<sup>1</sup> In the General Catalogue of the British Museum this edition is dated "1660?" See also Hazlitt's "Handbook."



artistic execution, is all that can be desired; but from my point of view, that of the critic and philologist, it is absolutely without<sup>1</sup> any value. I have often wondered how it is that Mr. Morris, who is so rich in resources and designs, cannot find the means for the production of a beautiful book which at the same time meets all the requirements of modern scholarship. If Mr. Morris was determined to make the Trojan War the subject of one of his beautiful books, why did he not select Lydgate's Troy-Book, so infinitely superior to "The Recuyell," which from a purely literary point of view, has no value whatever?

The title of this edition is that which Caxton gave to his volume, *i.e.* :

"The Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye."

At the end, above a device of the Kelmscott Press, we read :

"Here ends this new edition of William Caxton's Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye, done after the first edition; corrected for the press by H. Halliday Sparling, and printed by me, William Morris, at the Kelmscott Press, Upper Mall, Hammersmith, in the County of Middlesex, & finished on the fourteenth day of October, 1892.  
Sold by Bernard Quaritch, 15, Piccadilly."

---

<sup>1</sup> Granted even that by chance Mr. Morris' text was as correct as human industry could make it, we ought to know this fact on some authority; therefore somebody who is capable of the task ought to minutely collate the text with Caxton's and give a list of his discoveries.

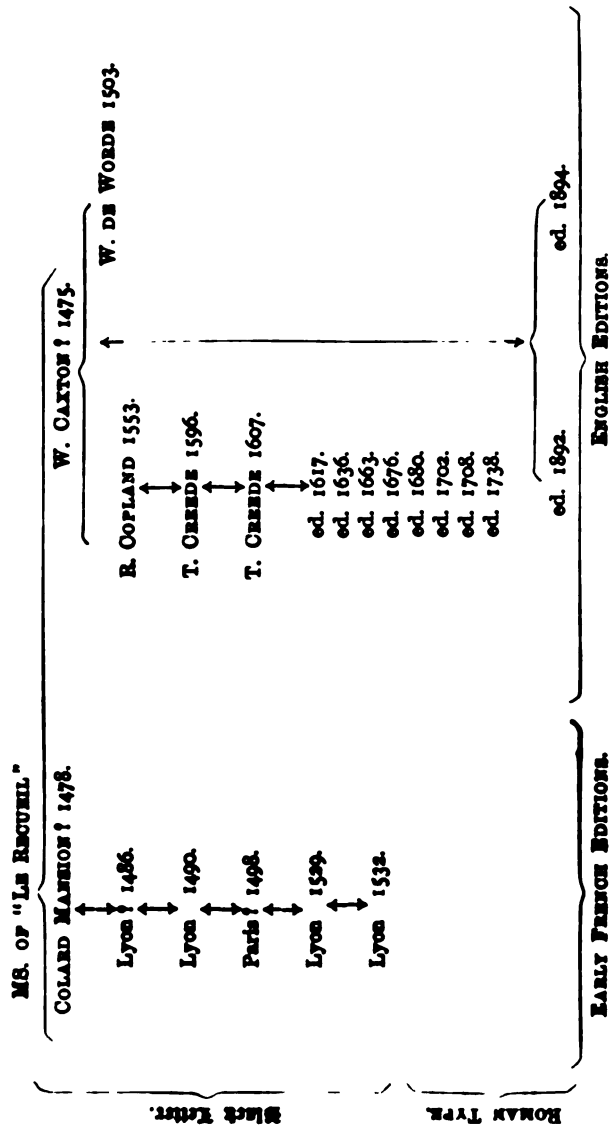
THE RELATIONSHIP OF THE VARIOUS  
ENGLISH EDITIONS OF "THE RECUYELL"  
TO ONE ANOTHER.

ALL efforts to trace the MS. of his "Recuyell" which Caxton presented to the Duchess Margaret of Burgundy, or of any other MS. copy of his translation of Lefevre's work, have hitherto proved fruitless; but it is not at all impossible that some day the first named, at least, of these MSS. may be found somewhere in Europe; perhaps even these very lines may attract the attention of some illustrious person who has the MS. in his possession.

In the preceding chapter I have mentioned the following sixteen English editions:

1.	W. Caxton	.	.	Editio princeps	.	.	Bruges ?	1476
2.	W. de Worde	.	.	2nd edition	.	.	London	1503
3.	R. Copland	.	.	3rd edition	.	.	"	1553
*4.	Th. Creede	.	.	?	.	.	"	1596
5.	" " "	.	.	?	.	.	"	1607
6.	B. Alsop	.	.	called "fifth"	edition	.	"	1617
7.	B. Alsop & T. Fawcet	.	.	" "sixth"	"	"	"	1636
*8.	R.I. for S.S.	.	.	" "seventh"	"	"	"	1663
9.	for T. Passenger	.	.	" "eighth"	"	"	"	1670
10.	" " "	.	.	" "ninth"	"	"	"	1676
11.	" " "	.	.	" "tenth"	"	"	"	1680
*12.	for T. Passenger	.	.	called "eleventh"	edition	.	London	1684
13.	for E. Tracy	.	.	" "twelfth"	"	"	"	1702
14.	" " "	.	.	" "thirteenth"	"	"	"	1708
15.	by and for Th. Brown	.	.	" "eighteenth"	"	.	Dublin	1738
16.	W. Morris	.	.	" " "	"	.	London	1892

TABLE SHOWING THE RELATIONSHIP OF THE VARIOUS PRINTED EDITIONS  
OF "THE RECUEILL" TO ONE ANOTHER.



In the table on the foregoing page I have arranged all these editions, together with the few early French ones mentioned above, p. xcii, note 1, in order to show the reader at a glance in which relation they stand to one another.

Copies of all these editions, except the three marked with asterisks, are at the British Museum. No. 8 I have seen through the courtesy of Mr. Alfred Huth.

The existence of Nos. 4 and 12 is known until now on the authority of Mr. Hazlitt,<sup>1</sup> who, very likely, has derived his knowledge from no better source than some sale-catalogue.

On the title-page of the edition of 1607 we read: "Newly corrected and the English much amended. By William Fiston;" the prologue of the printer to the courteous reader, however, winds up in these terms: "But if wee finde your fauourable accepting hereof to bee such, as wee may shortly haue a *fourth* impression, we wil haue all amended."

On the title-page of the edition of 1617 is printed: "The fifth Edition;" and in an exactly similar passage of the printer's prologue also "a *fifth* Impression," which may be explained as a mistake for "a sixth," the compositor having forgotten to change fifth into sixth.<sup>2</sup>

On the title-page of the edition of 1596, according to

---

<sup>1</sup> W. Carew Hazlitt, "Handbook to the Popular, Poetical, and Dramatic Literature of Great Britain, from the Invention of Printing to the Restoration," London, 1867, 8vo.

<sup>2</sup> This is an illustration of the way in which printers or stationers in those days dealt with books. The public is assured that the edition is a great improvement on the preceding one, but the only change that has taken place with it, is an alteration of the number on the title-page.



Mr. Hazlitt, occur the same terms as on that above noticed of 1607; but, unfortunately, we do not know what is said at the end of the printer's prologue. The "fourth" in the passage of the edition of 1607 cannot mean that this edition is the third from the beginning—*i.e.*, from the *editio princeps*—for this would be wrong, as it would be the fourth; it must, therefore, refer to editions printed by Th. Creede. We know from the Registers of the Stationers' Company that Thomas Creede was printing in London in the year 1593, perhaps earlier; it is very possible, therefore, that he printed another edition of "The Recuyell," either previous to 1596 or between 1596 and 1607; if that were so, the edition of 1607 would be correctly styled "the third." As the edition of 1617 is called "the fifth" he may have printed a fourth between 1607 and 1616. All the other editions are, then, correctly described as the sixth, seventh, etc. It is understood that these conjectures must remain such until by chance copies of an edition before 1600 and another between 1607 and 1616 are found. As this work was so often reproduced there was no copyright in it, and therefore we cannot get any information on these points from the Registers of the Company of Stationers.

It is not difficult to guess how the Irish printer and stationer, Thomas Brown, at Dublin in 1738, came to call his edition the "eighteenth," when the edition of London 1708 is called the thirteenth.

Both Wynkyn de Worde and Robert Copland reprinted the *editio princeps*; their texts only deviate from it in orthography and insignificant details.

The edition of Thomas Creede, 1607, and therefore doubtless any previous one by the same printer, is a

cxii RELATIONSHIP OF VARIOUS EDITIONS.

reprint of Robert Copland's. In spite of the statement on the title-page: "Newly corrected and the English much amended," I must call it a poor and careless piece of work, and the same must be said of all the following editions, which are mechanical reproductions from one another. On the folding-leaf facing this page I have, for the sake of illustration, placed a passage selected by chance from the MS. Royal 17 . E . ii, side by side with the corresponding passages in the first French edition, Caxton's, Wynkyn de Worde's, Robert Copland's, and Thomas Creede's editions.

Mr. Morris had Caxton's text transcribed from the copy in the British Museum for his edition ; but, however carefully his editor may have done his work, owing to the principle according to which Mr. Morris reproduces the old texts it cannot be said to be a faithful reproduction of the editio princeps.

## THE

LIAM CMAS CREEDE. (1607.)

f. 247 v. d Fol. Gg, verso.

knewe then, that hée was hurt and wounded  
d to the th beganne to fight against him, he be-  
hym . He-awing off his shirt from his body with  
-om his bad of his blood, but all might not auaile .  
ught not a tare his backe, his thighes, his body vn-  
his thyes & guttes, his armes, his shoulders vnto  
armes his his dolour and paine grew and inlar-  
re grewe more . Thus as he returned, in the force  
-orned by this paine, hée beheld Lycas and ano-  
-elde lycas had brought with him, that were all a-  
hym . ture . Then he went to them, and said  
an he we curfed and vnhappy man : what thing  
xyd and . come hither vnder the false friendship  
= to come g mee into the chaunce of this misfor-  
brynge nest thou that thou hast done ? Thou  
ou . that ith a shirt intoxicate with mortall ve-  
a sherte introduced thee to doe this ? Thou must  
duced the desert . And saying these wordes, Her-  
serte . Ate head poore Lycas, that wist not what  
: heed pot him against a rocke so fiercely, that  
rewe hym all to brake his bones, and so slew him .  
& all to l

1



## THE PRESENT EDITION.

**T**HE present edition of "The Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye" follows the original impression of Caxton faithfully (save that Roman type has been substituted for black letter) word for word, line for line, page for page, and, with some exceptions, registered below, letter for letter. As far as modern Roman type permits, all peculiarities of Caxton's type are imitated, such as, *e.g.*, the *F* with a point in front of it, the long *f* in the beginning and in the middle of words, the marks of interpunctuation, etc.

In order to preserve as much as possible the aspect of the original page, headlines and sidenotes are avoided. For the convenience of reference the pages and folios with their rectos and versos are marked throughout the book, the former at the outer, the latter at the inner corners at the bottom of the pages, and the lines are marked by figures, 5, 10, 15, etc., down the outer margins of the pages. The blank leaf, which in Caxton's volume is the first leaf of the first quinternion or gathering of ten leaves, is also to be found in the present edition; but I have printed the title of the book on its recto, and, while counting it in the pagination, I have not counted it in the numbering of the folios, in order to avoid the coincidence

of the modern marks for the binders with the beginnings of Caxton's gatherings—so that, *e.g.*, leaf 1 recto is page 3, and leaf 1 verso, page 4.

Caxton has no fixed rules for dividing words at the end of a line, but arranges in every special case as space permits, very often omitting the conjunctive hyphen. As in some cases misunderstandings can easily arise from this deficiency, I have always put the conjunctive hyphen where it is to be expected.

The abbreviations, which are numerous, have not been expanded.

The lines in Caxton's volume, as I have already stated, are not always of the same length. At the suggestion of my printers, I have not imitated this peculiarity, as it would have spoiled the appearance of the page.

The great number of misprints which occur in Caxton's text are corrected, wherever they could be explained as mechanical errors of the compositors; but every case where I have improved upon the original text in any way is registered.

Here follow, first, all the words in which *u* and *n*, and *vice versa*, have been confounded:

5. 15 *falius*; 12. 22 *betweue*; *aud*; 13. 19 *engendrid*; 23 *tenhaufe*; 14. 3 *thretemyng*; 21. 28 *leue*; 26. 9 *enhauufe*; 29. 16 *uot*; 36. 9 *benyugnyte*; 40. 6 *vuto*; 45. 5 *and*; 16 *and*; 46. 21 *uow*; 22 *and*; 53. 1 *anenture*; 54. 2 *Aud*; 58. 24 *Aud*; 59. 24 *kuewe*; 65. 30 *faturue*; 70. 4 *auncycut*; 72. 15 *agayust*; 23 *and*; 73. 19 *fomes*; 77. 2 *vuto*; 81. 16 *and*; 86. 5 *retorned*; 89. 22 *faturue*; 90. 14 *canfe*; 25 *meue*; 92. 19 *and*; 94. 12 *retorned*; 96. 31 *owen*; 97. 20 *and*; 103. 5 *and*; 104. 18 *noble*; 108. 24 *kyuge*; 112. 3

*now*; 117. 23 *vuto*; 119. 27 *and*; 140. 21 *ue*; 148. 21 *bnt*; 27 *gnyfarme*; 150. 6 *disconfited*; 28 *achanffid*; 169. 24 *Affoue*; 171. 7 *ontragyously*; 173. 6 *kuewe*; 179. 26 *fouuerainly*; 199. 31 *penous*; 212. 4 *chienes*; 229. 22 *subjugned*; 246. 8 *plante*; 250. 18 *rabatnes*; 259. 1 *rabatnes*; 276. 28 *onght*; 280. 2 *rebonte*; 297. 19 *cristens*; 22 *idem*; 24 *idem*; *bnt*; 303. 25 *auswer*; 305. 3 *now*; 309. 30 *hane*; 311. 14 *concludyng*; 315. 12 *and*; 317. 5 *enteudid*; 7 *and*; 321. 19 *uot*; 27 *Auone*; 323. 5-6 *vnderstode*; 321. 23 *retorne*; 334. 24 *hane*; 341. 4 *And*; 20 *and*; 23 *afwonne*; 347. 27 *hane*; 351. 7 *and*; 353. 29 *passyng*; 358. 5 *wente*; 359. 2 *and*; 362. 2 *noise*; 364. 14 *fonght*; 366. 15 *reuerence*; 367. 12 *And*; 24 *condicion*; 371. 14 *bnt*; 373. 19 *gyne*; 377. 3 *thnrgh*; 26 *now*; 378. 21 *doyng*; 381. 2 *admys*; 384. 8 *subdned*; 389. 2 *lerue*; 392. 24 *bnt*; 25 *and*; 393. 16, 22 *lerue*; 396. 18 *gonerne*; 28 *meruayllonfly*; 399. 15 *and*; 401. 12 *and*; 402. 13 *hane*; 405. 3 *And*; 418. 5 *ayenft*; 419. 8 *lyous*; 434. 9 *Bnt*; 447. 23 *thon*; 451. 13 *gynen*; 18 *astouyed*; 27 *kyuge*; 466. 21 *kyug*; 469. 10 *fechyue*; 472. 15 *uot*; 476. 29 *ayenft*; 477. 19 *entretiene*; 484. 1 *salned*; 486. 1 *uobleffe*; 493. 16 *penfyf*; 498. 1 *and*; 499. 7 *eude*; 506. 20 *ayenft*; 509. 2 *precyons*; 511. 10 *and*; 514. 25 *meruayllonfly*; 29 *uot*; 520. 28 *And*; 521. 25 *gynen*; 523. 29 *thynke*; 524. 20 *And*; 525. 26 *denfrobe*; 30 *idem*; 542. 4 *Iniurions*; 562. 15 *Tentram*; 563. 4 *thentram*, 10, 20, 24; 564. 9, 15; 565. 10 *idem*; 577. 14 *eufrene*; 598. 28 *ayenft*; 610. 27 *moreuyng*; 622. 1 *kyune*; *cofyus*; 624; 11 *Pryant*; 626. 23 *and* 31 *trouchon*; 630. 28 *hane*; 637. 1 *rebonte*; 654. 16 *And*; 663. 16 *entree*; 668. 24 *doughter*; 675. 21 *demenyd*; 678. 6 *kyuge*; *uot*; 680. 26 *purposid*; 682. 17 *Bnt*.

Next I have enumerated the cases where *m* has been put for *in*. I must add, however, that I may easily have overlooked many cases belonging to this group, as it is not always possible to distinguish whether *m* or *in* (without the dot on the *i*) has been used.

3. 1 *mtituled*; 3 *m*; 6, 10, 15, 19 *idem*; 4. 8 *therm*; 11 *m*; 11, 15, 22, 26, 29, 31 *idem*; 4. 4. *comuracion*; 149. 26 *foueramly*; 231. 19 *Plumus*; 313. 4 *ycome*; 343. 11 *orphelms*; 438. 1 *Calidome*; 6, 8; 464. 11; 465. 8; 475. 16; 490. 5 *idem*; 464. 29 *calidomens*; 466. 10, 18; 468. 10 *idem*; 482. 30 *deyamra*; 483. 13; 484. 20, 23; 485. 8; 486. 27; 488. 29; 489. 4, 7, 8, 16; 493. 7; 494. 3, 10; 495. 20, 23; 498. 11 *idem*; 18 *Calcedome*; 513. 9 *wherm*; 548. 28 *mamfestation*; 551. 14 *Appolm*; 554. 4 *effigeme*; 555. 30 *withm*; 647. 23 *philemens*; 648. 2 *phylomems*; 7, 20, *idem*; 663. 20 *therm*; 665. 18 *wherm*; 666. 15 *thmge*; 667. 18 *m*; 670. 29 *therm*; 671. 5 *mtō*; *therm*; 683. 18 *therm*; 27 *m*; 688. 30 *m*; 693. 5 *therm*; 731. 4 *m*.

In the third group I have mentioned all words in which letters are omitted:

4. 21 *wrke*; 30. 20 *an* (and); 36. 26 *mefchunce* (*mefchaunce*); 50. 5 *answrd*; 66. 30 *Creon* (*Ceon*); 88. 29 *Ow* (*How*); 97. 8 *werfore*; 102. 3 *Archs*; 103. 22 *wenyg*; 104. 17 *fhod* (*fhold*); 119. 2 *ligtly*; 143. 1 *apper-teynyg*; 153. 5 *dyfpayed* (*dyfpayred*); 194. 15 *me* (*for mē or men*); 207. 12 *an* (and); 225. 21 *neygbours*; 270. 28 *trwly*; 282. 7. *tought*; 283. 12 *tought*; 303. 4 *fcence* (*fcience*); 330. 30 *wystande*; 342. 12 *Megra*; 354. 27 *clynkng*; 366. 23 *egyciens*; 378. 29 *vitorye*;



387. 24 fecrtly; 403. 27 entencon; 407. 11 knyghes;  
 411. 23 neur; 416. 23 anfwed; 426. 1 vanyffhd;  
 430. 1 fygte; 461. 21 calidonies; 467. 11 knighly;  
 496. 31 Wat; 502. 19 worfhifull; 513. 14 meshyef;  
 517. 24 me (mē or men); 547. 1 taught; 610. 24;  
 618. 5; 620. 11; 620. 13; 652. 16; 664. 15; 668.  
 16 *idem*; 521. 13 compayne; 538. 29 *idem*; 542. 18  
 powde (prowde); 549. 22 is (his); 592. 14 tourgh;  
 615. 7 fwrde; 641. 9 toughte; 644. 19 thought; 655.  
 19 werfore; 673. 3 Werof; 688. 2 wiche; 695. 28  
 wld; 696. 4 wat; 702. 5 dwlle; 11 Terfore.

The fourth group contains all cases where letters have been misplaced:

45. 11 eryepins (epiryens); 95. 18 Tthriachadyens  
 (The Archadyens); 158. 15, 20 wyht; 153. 22 wyht-  
 ftondyng; 205. 7 basolution (abfolution); 246. 31  
 humanyn; 283. 1 thoughte; 337. 1 Creberus; 346. 17  
 fo (of); 356. 6 thta; 370. 25 calcedoyne; 392. 28  
 ftrengh; 395. 25 wyht; 420. 19 spryrite; 424. 14  
 afore baffhed (fore abaffhed); 425. 10 wlcan, 31 *idem*;  
 450. 30 myghtly; 455. 11 spryryte; 479. 7 ftrengh;  
 490. 1 won (now); 519. 18 Cretes; 558. 29 Vliyes;  
 594. 15 ftrengh; 600. 9 ftrengh; 603. 23, 25 *idem*;  
 655. 31 wihche; 659. 9 en (ne).

In the fifth group all words are enumerated in which wrong letters occur:

11. 23 y at (pat); 16. 8 their of (there of); 23. 10  
 fouerani (fouerain); 25. 24 foylle; 39. 2 fowrt; 43. 10  
 lyggty; 44. 31; shulle; 52. 14 as (and); 56. 30 other  
 (othes); 61. 4 affaile; 5 affemble; 82. 23 whan (what);  
 94. 13 be (by); 97. 28 there (their); 118. 30 fo; 125. 23



whishe (which); 128. 30 *determinet*; 134. 11 *ther* (they); 146. 20 *me* (mē); 158. 15 *aprouued*; 161. 18 *lefte*; 162. 21 *exydyent*; 162. 26 *Alyon* (Ylyon); 181. 11 *fo-* (fo); 184. 26 *fefte* (feste); 189. 26 *fente*; 194. 9 *that* (than); 224. 4 *geant* (grant); 242. 13 *case* (ease); 251. 27 *howes* (bowes); 255. 16 *favour*; 268. 1 *fortune* (fortune); 268. 12 *Repe* (kepe); 302. 14 *sle* (fle); 16 *slayn* (flayn); 334. 5 *oon* (oon); 337. 16 *drawynd*; 347. 22 *aa*; 357. 7 *sublyle*; 366. 19 *affer* (after); 367. 7 *kyngtes*; 377. 15 *defrayed* (desrayed); 392. 1 *fo*; 404. 7 *furnyflhe* (fynyflhe); 404. 15 *habillemes*; 418. 27 *with* (wist); 435. 14 *nyght*; 438. 2 *wyf* (lyf); 439. 28 *Calidoine*; 451. 31 *ally* (alle); 454. 15 *edificacion*; 467. 22 *caledonyes*; 480. 10 *raught* (caught); 486. 9 *toppe* (coppe); 502. 15 *a-* (a); 512. 10 *fyting*; 529. 4 *discouere* (destourner)<sup>1</sup>; 539. 12 *Kele* (? *hele*: fr. *cele*); 544. 30 *Borons*; 588. 26 *restourneft* (destourneft)<sup>1</sup>; 598. 23 *ware*; 620. 28 *spartled* (sparkled); 628. 11 *fo* (to); 631. 1 *kept* (kepe); 647. 19 *wad* (was); 648. 24 *showre* (stoure); 660. 10 *fpoken*; 663. 24 *hanour*; 668. 31 *therfore*; 669. 15 *oppesid*; 669. 15 *oppesid*; 687. 26 *gat*; 688. 24 *naufica*; 688. 25 *folempnyte*; 693. 16 *idem*; 694. 27 *laomedan*; 695. 5 *chat* (that).

In the sixth group words are mentioned in which superfluous letters occur:

10. 18 *welche*; 26. 24 *Sfhe*; 31. 20 *and*; 119. 11 *ande*; 149. 15 *alleweyd*; 203. 6 *mountaygyne*; 333. 11 *ande*; 386. 24 *Thee*; 410. 25 *their*; 431. 30

<sup>1</sup> The French text is in the first case: "Menelaus fist vng peu de stournersa nef du droit chemin." In the second "mais menesteus len destourna."

*T*he; 442. 21 *whaat*; 472. 19 *moorr*; 487. 27 *folow-  
etth*; 491. 21 *Sspeke*; 519. 18 *strength*; 609. 13  
*fougght*; 605. 14 *faders*; 618. 27 *thys*; 617. 24 *leeff-  
ful*; 621. 1 *ande*; 671. 5 *WHhylis*; 683. 14 *heer*.

In the seventh group such cases are enumerated where wrong letters have been placed by the illuminator in the spaces left vacant:

12. 18 *Than*; 49. 11 *Than*; 83. 5 *Asculapius*;  
97. 3 *A*; 378. 29 . *F reversed*; 549. 15 *Apon*; 604. 24  
*Aa*; 605. 14 *Aa*; 686. 5 *Henelaus*.

In the following five cases a word or several words have evidently been omitted:

164. 18 "*deliuer her*" *omitted after "to"*; 634. 1  
"*be*" *omitted before "accorded"*; 650. 1 "*him*" *omitted  
after "leyde"*; 673. 5 "*the*" *omitted before "three"*;  
683. 12 "*he*" *omitted before "dyde."*

On page 11, line 1, the "I" is effaced, and the centre of lines 25 to 28 on page 701 is damaged.

The cases where words are repeated at the end and beginning of pages, and where a passage is entirely omitted, I have already mentioned above, on p. lxxxviii.

On page 684, lines 11 and 12, the sequence of words is either faulty, or Caxton has deviated from his original; the passage runs: "Whan Horrestes the sone of kynge Agamenon that was." The French text is this: "Quant herestes qui fu filz du roy Agamenon." Perhaps Caxton meant to express that Agamenon was dead, as in the passage on page 694. 1: "Andrometha the wyf that was of hector," where the French text reads: "Andromatha la femme de feu hector."

## THE SOURCES OF "LE RECUEIL DES HISTOIRES DE TROYE."

### I. THE SOURCES OF BOOKS I. AND II.

THE term "recueil" and the passage in Lefevre's prologue—"Car des histoires dont vueil recueil faire Tout le monde parle par liures translatez du latin en francois moins beaucoup que le nen traitteray / Et aucuns en y a qui sahurtent seulement aleurs particuliers liures Pourquoy le craing escripre plus que leurs liures ne font mencion / Mais quant le considere et poise le tres cremeu command de Icelui etc non pour corriger les liures la solempnellement translatez Aincois pour augmenter le me rendray obeissant Et au moins mal que le pourray feray etc."—indicate how Lefevre set to work. He derived his information from some Latin books, or some French ones translated from Latin, and added to the accounts these books gave what he thought fit and proper. Had he lived at a time when people were more careful in their statements than in the 16th century, we might, from the references occurring here and there in the text, be able to ascertain the books of which he really did make use.



The following are the authors or works mentioned in "Le Recueil" in alphabetical order:

1. Aristotle:

"Car pour lors les femmes estoient Illec toutes communes Et quant il aduenoit que les femmes auoient enfans Ilz les donnoient aux hommes selon leurs phisonomies et ainsi le racompte *aristote* en ses *politiques*." 365.

2. St. Augustin:

"La saige et subtile vierge minerue comme *Saint Augustin* racompte se manifesta en ce temps au pres dun lac nomme triton pour la grandeur de son engin Car elle trouua la maniere de tistre et de faire armes. Et a ce propos *ouide* racompte quelle se combaty contre vng geant nomme pallas et le tua aupres du dit fleuve de triton." 38.

"*Saint augustin* ou *liure de la cite de dieu* racompte que encoires en ce port est le pierre dont Andromeda fut desloyee et que ceux de Joppen la gardent pour enseigne en memoire de la victoire que perseus eut du monstre." 217.

3. Boccaccio:

"Et de ce filz ne fait *bocace* autre mencion." 20.

"Mais *bocace* le [*i.e.*, Jupiter] croit estre filz legitime de corinthus." 33.

"Et de ce fait mencion *bocace* ou quatrieme liure de la *genealogie des dieux*." 39.

"Jupiter dont *bocace* fait mencion ou premier liure de la *genealogie des dieux*." 50.

"*Bocace* qui raconte ceste histoire ou quart liure de la *genealogie des dieux* ne dist point par quel moyen tytan sceut ceste chose." 60.

"*Bocace* en la *genealogie des dieux* ne touche autrement la



cause pourquoy celle vierge estoit exposee au monstre Si men passe atant Et qui demanderoit le nom delle *bocace* respont quelle auoit nom Andromeda." 215<sub>26, 30</sub>.

"Et anisi le raconte *bocace* en son liure de la *genealogie des dieux*." 246<sub>10</sub>.

"En ce temps comme *Bocace* racompte en sa *genealogie des dieux* ou tiers chappitre du sixieme liure laomedon roy de troyes etc." 271<sub>3</sub>.

"Et ainsi racompte *bocace* en sa *genealogie des dieux* aprouuant *varro* qui ainsi le descript en son *liure de greultura*." 284<sub>8</sub>.

"Ce philistenes comme *bocace* racompte en la *genealogie des dieux* estoit filx de phenix roy de phenice." 396<sub>19</sub>.

#### 4. Croniques despaigne :

"Toutesuoyes les *croniques despaigne* racomptent que herculez ne tua point sa femme et quil la mist en vne religion etc." 346<sub>16</sub>.

"Ce palus estoit long de trois lieues en rondeur comme racomptent les *croniques despaigne*." 390<sub>=</sub>.

"Ou temps que herculez flourissoit en vertu et que son nom estoit porte de royaume en royaume par glorieuse renommee comme racomptent les *croniques despaigne*." 394<sub>30</sub>.

"Toutesuoyes cacus par bien fuir se sauua dessus celle montaigne et cinquante de ses hommes aussi, ainsi comme les *croniques despaigne* le racomptent." 421<sub>30</sub>.

#### 5. Leoncius :

"De celle mutacion *Leoncius* racompte que Lichaon en fuiant Comme dit est, etc." 47<sub>17</sub>.

#### 6. Ovide. See above, St. Augustin.

#### 7. Plautus :

"Aucuns disoient les siriens venoient au port et ainsi le racompte *plaute* en sa premiere comedye." 246<sub>1</sub>.

## 8. Plinius :

"Pendant ce temps les siriens venoient au port Journellement pour veoir le monstre. *Plinius* raconte que de ce monstre fut aporte a romme vng oz de xl pies de long." 221,.

## 9. Seneca :

"A ceste cause les poetes faindrent que ceste ydre auoit sept testes comme il appert en la premiere tragedie de *senecque*." 392,.

## 10. Varro. See above, Boccaccio, 284,.

I have compared the first two books of "Le Recueil" with the works mentioned, but, for want of space, I can here only briefly state the results of my investigation.

The principal source whence Lefevre derived his information is undoubtedly Joannes Boccaccio's "Genealogia deorum gentilium." While making use of the facts and events related in this work, he has retold them in his own way, and added a great deal of detail to them. The gods and goddesses of the heathen of Boccaccio, however, are in Lefevre's estimation neither divinities nor genii, neither demons nor other supernatural beings, but men of flesh and blood, kings, knights, their wives and their people : in short, they are stript of all the characteristics so familiar to us from the Greek and Roman Classics. How strange it seems to hear Hercules spoken of as a knight of the sixteenth century, who, much in the same way as a knight of Arthur's Round Table, mounts his horse, enters the lists in order to fight in a tournament, while the ladies are looking on from the "skaffoldes," or to hear how Perseus confers the order of knighthood on Danus, or Creon knights Hercules, or Hercules makes Jason knight !

But what is stranger still is that, according to Lefevre's notions, in the days of Jupiter existed cloisters and "religions:" Calisto takes the veil, Jupiter disguises himself as a nun in order to be admitted to the cloister and see her. In another place Hercules is said to have sent his wife into a "religyon," instead of killing her.

As a specimen of Lefevre's principal source, I have printed here a paragraph from the first chapter of the thirteenth book of Boccaccio's "Genealogia deorum," enumerating the labours of Hercules:

"Cuius labores præcipuos fere omnes . xii . tantum fuisse confirmant cum . xxxi . esto non omnes equos comperiam. Quidemprimo dum adhuc esset infantulus & in cunis cum fratre iaceret: a Junone odiis insecutus dormientibus parentibus ad eum deuorandum serpentes duo missi sunt. Quibus uisis terrefactus Iphycleus ex cunis decedit: & eiulato suo parentes excitauit qui surgentes Herculem inuenere cepisse manibus serpentes & eos occidisse: de quibus in tragoedia Herculis furentis sic ait Seneca poeta. Infantis ætas monstra superauit prius. Quo nosce posset gemina cristati caput Angues ferebant ora: quos contra obuius Reptauit infans igneos serpentem oculos. Remisso pectore ac placido intuens Arctos serenis uultibus nodos tulit. Et tumida tenera guttura elidens manu etc. Secundo apud lernam paludem cum hydra immani monstro certamen habuit: cui cum essent capita .vii. & uno exciso septem illi renascerentur illico: exquisita uitalium origine illam consumpsit. de qua sic Seneca tragoedus ubi supra. Quid sequa lernæ monstra numerosum malum: Non igne demum uicit & docuit mori etc. Tertio cum nemeus leo esset toti regioni terribilis susceptus a Molorco pastore: qui loco proximus erat ubi leo aduersus eum animosus accessit: & captum atque enectum excorauit: & ob uirtutis insigne loco pallii corio eius postea usus est: unde Ouidius. Iis elisa iacet moles



nemea lacertis. Quarto aduersus theumesium leonem nulla ex parte minus horribilem nemeo: audaci processit pectore prostratumque iugulauit: cuius facti in thebaide meminit. Statius dicens. Illius speciem quem per theumesia tempe. Amphitrio niades fractum inuenilibus armis. Ante cleonei uestitur proelia monstri etc. Quinto autem aprum menalium cuncta uastantem cepit: ex quo Seneca ubi supra. Solitumque densis hispidum erimanthi iugis Arcadia quater nemea menalium suam etc: & ut dicit Lactantius . hunc aprum uiuum detulit Eurysteo. Sexto Cernam eneas habentem pedes: et aurea cornua menali memoris hospitam quam nemo poterat cursu contingere ipse cursu superauit atque cepit: de qua sic Seneca ubi supra. Menali pernix fera. Multo decoro preferens auro caput. Depressa cursu est. Septimo arcu Stymphalides occidit aues arpiyas scilicet de quibus sic idem Seneca. Solitasque pennis condere obductis diem petiit ab ipsis nubibus Stymphalidas etc. Octauo taurum quem uictor theseus a creta detulerat ob insolentiam acticam regionem uastabat deprehendit: de quo tauro supra ubi de pasyphe: cuius mentionem ubi supra Seneca faciens dicit. Taurumque centum non leuem populis metum etc. Nono Acheloum superauit, cuius facti fabula ubi supra de Acheloo: de quo Ouidius. Vos ne manus ualidi presistis cornua tauri etc. Decimo Diomedem regen Tracię cui mos erat hospites suos occidere & iumentis suis in cibum apponere ipse superauit & occidit: & eisdem iumentis manducandum apposuit: unde idem Seneca. Quid stabula memorem diri Bystonii regis etc. Vndecimo cum Busiris rex Neptunni & Lybię filius: oras omnes nilo adiacentes prædator ingens infestaret: & forenses hospites suis mactaret diis: accedens Hercules eo superato illam regionem pacatam reddidit: unde Ouidius. Ergo ego fœdantem peregrino templa cruore. Busiris domui etc. Duodecimo Lybiam petrit & Antheum terre filium lucta superauit apud Summicum Afracę ciuitatem: ut dicit Lactantius. de quo Ouidius idem dicit. Sequoque alimenta parentis Antheo eripui . etc . huius fabulam



scripsisse memini ubi de Antheo ipso. Tertiodecimo columnas in occidente posuit: de quibus Pomponius mela in cosmographia ait, etc."

Although a priest, Lefevre does not seem to have been anxious to pass in silence over passages which were certainly contrary to the morals even of his time. He tells us how it was customary in the days of Jupiter that blood-relations intermarried. He narrates that the Amazons paid, once or twice a year, a visit to a large island, in order to have the company of the men; and in several places, such as *e.g.*, when he speaks of Danes, he indulges in the most realistic descriptions. On the whole he conscientiously renders what he finds in his sources, however extraordinary it may be, or even when it is little complimentary to the class of which he is a member, as we shall see in one instance in the third book.

Sometimes Lefevre makes curious blunders in setting forth the relationship of his heroes and heroines to one another. While Boccaccio, in accordance with the classical writers, states that Pluto is the husband of Proserpine, and allows Orpheus to lead back his wife Eurydice from the lower regions, Lefevre makes Pluto, a king of Helle, a city in Thessaly, ravish Proserpine, the wife of Orpheus!

Many proper-names are so corrupted in Lefevre's text, that it is impossible to identify their bearers in the classics. I incline to think that for this defect the scribes of the MSS. which Lefevre had at his disposal were more to blame than he was.

The passages where Lefevre speaks of St. Augustin, Leontius, Ovid, Plinius, Plautus and Varro, are not the

result of his own study and research, as one would suppose; but these writers are quoted in the corresponding passages in the "Genealogia deorum." The following examples will illustrate this statement:

Liber ii. caput iii.: "Haec autem lanificium & texturam: & alia multa artificiosa comperisset celebris dea habita est: & quoniam omnia eius inuenta exui ingenii atque sapientiae procedere uidebantur: locus fabulae adinuentus est: ut ex cerebro iouis genita uideretur. De hac enim dicit Augustinus in libro de ciuitate dei q. ogigio in actica regnante: eam in uirginali habitu apparuisse apud lacum tritonis ut dictum est: & cum multorum operum esset inuentrix: tanto proliuius dea credita est, etc."

Liber xiii. caput i.: "Hercules (ut scribit in amphitrione Plautus) filius fuit Iouis & Alcumenae: quae (ut quidam uolunt) hac lege nupsit amphitrioni ut mortem fratris sui thelebois occisi ulcisceretur, etc."

*Ibidem*: "Quibus visis terrefactus Iphycleus ex cunis decedit: & eiulatu suo, parentes excitauit qui surgentes Herculem inuenere copisse manibus serpentes & eos occidisse: de quibus in tragoedia Herculis furentis sic ait Seneca poeta."

Liber xii. caput xxv.: "Plinius uero inter scriptores celeberrimus homo scribit. Beluae cui dicebatur expositum fuisse andromedam ossa Romae apportata ex oppido iudeae Ioppe ostendit inter aliqua miracula in aedilitate M. Scaurus longitudine pedum xl. altitudine costarum Indicos elephantes excedente spinae grossitudine sexquipedali & cetera."

Liber iv. caput lxvi.: "Dicebat insuper idem Leontius: alios affirmare Lycaonem in uerum lupum fuisse conuersum."

Liber iv. caput xxx.: "& sic insulae hesperiae quae talium ouium erant pascua uiridarium fuere hesperidum: oues autem aurea mala. Nam oues a graecis male seu mala dicuntur teste Varrone in libro de agricultura."

Lefevre relates that Hercules<sup>1</sup> destroyed Troy twice during the reign of King Laomedon, the first time after having rescued Exione from the monster of the sea, when Laomedon refuses to give him the horses which he has promised him as a reward for his labours ; the second time when Laomedon declines to allow the Argonauts, to whom Hercules and Jason belong, to provision their ship at Troy.

Boccaccio in his "Genealogia" in the sixth book relates that Hercules, to punish Laomedon for his breach of faith, resolves to destroy his city, and "cum amplioribus copiis veniens Ilium expugnauit: & Laomedontem interfecit et omnia ejus uertit praedam." He says about Hesione (Exione), "capta est & Thelamoni quoniam primus muros conscendisset ciuitatis in partem praedae concessa est."

Guido delle Colonne relates, in the seventh chapter of his "Historia Trojana," how Hercules, in order to chastise Laomedon for having uncourteously treated the Argonauts, summons the Greeks to join him in an expedition against the Troians, and to destroy their city. He carries out his plan, and, relating the death of Laomedon, Guido says: "Deinde aduersus Laomedontem regem quem indubitanter ipse persentit impetu se dirigit furioso. Quem aggressum violenter interceptit, interceptum interficit & ab eius corpore capite truncato in medio suorum rabie violento proiecit." About Hesione, Guido says further on: "Quam Hercules in victoriae praemium tradidit Thelamoni pro eo

---

<sup>1</sup> An analysis of the adventures of Hercules as related by Lefevre is published in "Mélanges tirés d'une grande Bibliothèque," Part v. Paris, 1780, 8vo.



quidem rex thelamon in urbem ipsam primus victor intrabat."

As in the accounts of both Boccaccio and Guido, Laomedon is killed and Exione given to Thelamon for having been the first to enter Troy, there can be no doubt that both speak of one and the same destruction of Troy. Considering the passages, it is clear that Lefevre cannot have misunderstood the two accounts, and we have no alternative but to conclude that he purposely made Hercules destroy Laomedon's city twice, in order that each of his three books should deal with one destruction of Troy.

We can further deduce from this fact that, although he does not say so, Lefevre has made use of Guido's "Historia" for the chapters<sup>1</sup> relating to his so-called second destruction of Troy. He omits all detail about Jason's expedition to Colchis, because he had previously narrated them in his "liure de Jason."

For the portion of the life of Hercules after this second destruction of Troy, Lefevre must have made use, besides the "Genealogia deorum," of a work which deals very minutely with the early history of Spain, and to which he several times refers by the term "croniques despaigne." To determine which work served him as a source for this section, I have examined a great many "Cronica" of Spain, written in Spanish, Latin, and French—in fact so many that the titles of them would fill half a dozen pages in type. In some I have found references to the exploits of Hercules in Spain, as, *e.g.*, in the works "De Rebus

---

<sup>1</sup> In the present edition of "The Recuyell," the first destruction of Troy is related on pp. 276-285, the second on pp. 348-351.



Hispaniae Roderici, Archiepiscopi Toletani"; Joannis Gerundensis Episcopi, "Paralipomenon Hispaniae," libri decem; Joannis Marianae, "De rebus Hispaniae, libri xx."; Joannis Vasaei Brugensis, "Rerum Hispanicarum Chronicon," etc.; but not one of these works deals so exhaustively with Hercules as Lefevre's source must have done. The hope that I should be able to discover the Spanish chronicle with the help of the Catalogue of the books forming, in 1467, the library at Bruges was unfounded. The books in this Catalogue are so absurdly described that one can only identify a work if one knows how the first line of its second, and the last line of its last, leaf begins; so, *e.g.*, Lefevre's "liure de Jason," now in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, which I shall mention later on, is described thus:

"1270. Ung liure couert de cuir jaune, escript au dessus: Histoire de Iason extraicte de plusieurs liures; et est mise en prose, a longue luigne, historie de plusieurs riches histoires; quemenchant le second feuillet apres la table, 'Coment Iason fut fait cheualier' et le dernier 'des biens qu'elle lui auoit fais.'"

Most probably the title of the work of which Lefevre speaks as "croniques d'espaigne" was very different, perhaps one in quite general terms, such as, *e.g.*, "Miroir ystorial," "Fleurs des histoires," "Mer des histoires," "Histoire universelle," or "Cronique universelle." There are a good many of such works enumerated in the Catalogue, but, unfortunately, it is impossible to examine them, as the Library has been dispersed and a great many of them are no longer there.

## II. THE SOURCE OF BOOK III.

IN the third book of "Le Recueil" Lefevre mentions no less than twelve times the name of Dares Phrygius,<sup>1</sup> to whom, as we have seen, the "Historia de excidio Troiae" is attributed; once he refers to Ovide's "Metamorphoses" (Book xii.), three times to Virgil's "Æneis," and once to the "Historia Ecclesiastica," by which he means the Holy Scriptures. In spite of these references, a comparison of the third book with the "Historia destructionis Troiae," by Guido delle Colonne, shows, beyond doubt, that he exclusively made use of this work. As we have no reason to suppose that Lefevre purposely omitted the name of Guido, we must assume, strange as it may seem, that he did not know the author of the text he had before him. His ignorance induced Caxton to make the erroneous statement concerning the source of Lydgate's "Troy-Book." It is remarkable that Lefevre should have unintentionally done the same wrong to Guido which the latter purposely did to Benoit de Sainte-More.

The third book, representing, as it does, one of the last versions—and by no means the least popular—of the mediæval Troy-legend, is, as such, of greater importance

<sup>1</sup> The references to Dares Phrygius occur in the present edition on pp. 505<sub>m</sub>; 541<sub>i</sub>; 542<sub>m</sub>; 544<sub>m</sub>; 554<sub>m</sub>; 588<sub>m</sub>; 589<sub>i</sub>; 618<sub>m</sub>; 633<sub>i</sub>; 699<sub>m</sub> 12<sup>r</sup> 12<sup>v</sup>. Dictys is mentioned on p. 699<sub>12</sub>; Ovide, 544<sub>m</sub>; Virgile, 506<sub>12<sup>v</sup></sub> 590<sub>m</sub> 683<sub>m</sub>; and the "Historia Ecclesiastica" on p. 549<sub>12<sup>v</sup></sub>. W. Caxton has added references to Chaucer's "Troilus and Cresseida," pp. 601<sub>m</sub> 604<sub>i</sub>; Lydgate's "Troy-Book," p. 502<sub>m</sub>; Dictys, 701<sub>m</sub> 702<sub>m</sub>; Dares, 701<sub>m</sub> 702<sub>i</sub>; Homerus, 701<sub>m</sub> 702<sub>v</sub>.

than the two first books. I have, therefore, dealt more fully with its source, and made a separate list of names and places for it.

After carefully examining the MSS. and early printed editions of Guido's "Historia" still extant and accessible to me, I have decided to take the earliest printed edition (? Louvain, 1470)<sup>1</sup> as a basis, first, because it was printed in the Netherlands, where Lefevre spent his days; and, secondly, because any one of the early printed editions is of easier access to students than the MSS.

If we exclude Guido's prologue, epilogue, three appendices in verse: "Epitaphium Hectoris, Epitaphium Achillis, Deploratio Troie," and a table of contents, the "Historia" in this edition (and in the other early editions I have seen) is divided into sixty-four chapters. Of these the first six<sup>2</sup> ones are used by Lefevre for his "liure de Iason," the seventh has been the source of his account of the second destruction of Troy in Book II. (pp. 345-351

<sup>1</sup>This edition, printed in Gothic type, consists of 170 leaves arranged from a to x in eights, y and z in sixes. The volume has neither pagination, headlines, nor catchwords. Spaces for initials from 2 to 4 lines in height are left; a<sub>1</sub> is a blank; on a<sub>2</sub> recto begins Guido's prologue; on a<sub>2</sub> recto "Incipit liber primus." The text ends on fol. z<sub>2</sub> recto "& regem optomeum." The above-named appendices, Guido's epilogue, and the table of contents occupy ff. z<sub>2</sub> verso to z<sub>3</sub> verso; z<sub>4</sub> is a blank.

<sup>2</sup>The first seven chapters have these headings: 1. Incipit liber primus de Peleo rege thesalie inducente Iasonem vt se conferat ad aureum vellus habendum; 2. De grecis applicantibus in pertinenciis Troie & de Laomedonta rege licentiantes Iasonem & Herculem de locis illis; 3. De Medea qualiter amore Iasonis capta fuit; 4. De Medea instruente Iasonem de aurei velleris certamine & de medelis ad pugnam faciendam cum bobus et dracone operandis; 5. Hec sunt que medea dedit Iasoni; 6. Qualiter Iason accessit ad aureum vellus; 7. De destructione prima Troie per Iasonem & Herculem.



of the present edition). To conclude from the headings of chapters, the third book of "Le Recueil" is divided into thirty-two chapters, which fill, *mutata lingua*, in the present edition the following pages, and correspond to the chapters in Guido's "Historia" printed with them :

Chapter I. pp. 505-515<sub>17</sub> :—8. De fundatione magne Troie per regem priamum iterum restaurate. 9. De Priamo degente in obsidione cuiusdam castri et nominibus filiorum suorum. 10. Descriptio fundationis ciuitatis Troie. 11. Descriptio nobilis Ilion.

Chapter II. pp. 515<sub>18</sub>-527<sub>16</sub> :—12. De proposito regis Priami volentis suam iniuriam vindicare. 10. De consilio deliberato vt Paris in Greciam destinetur. 14. Responsio Hectoris primogeniti Priami. 15. Consilium Paridis secundi filii. 16. Responsio tercii filii. 17. Responsio quarti filii Priami qui Elenus dicebatur. 18. [Responsio Troili quinti filii].

Chapter III. pp. 527<sub>17</sub>-538<sub>6</sub> :—19. De numero nauium quas Troiani duxerunt in Grecorum depopulationem.

Chapter IV. pp. 538<sub>7</sub>-544<sub>29</sub> :—20. De Grecis inchoantibus inire consilia ad quos de raptu Helene fama peruenit quid sint inde facturi. 21. De forma & statura Grecorum hominum. 22. De forma & statura troianorum.

Chapter V. pp. 544<sub>30</sub>-546<sub>24</sub> :—23. De numero nauium quas Greci duxerunt in troiane vrbs depopulationem.

Chapter VI. pp. 546<sub>25</sub>-552<sub>9</sub> :—24. De Grecis mittentibus apud Delphon pro obtinendo responso de eo quod facturi erant. 25. De imagine aurea Apolinis. 26. De initio idolatrie.

Chapter VII. pp. 552<sub>10</sub>-556<sub>8</sub> :—27. De motu Grecorum versus Troiam & sacrificio oblato diis.

Chapter VIII. pp. 556<sub>9</sub>-562<sub>11</sub> :—28. De Grecis



mittentibus ad Priamum pro restitutione Helene & dam-  
norum factorum per Paridem in insula Citharee. 29. Quod  
rex Priamus respondit nunciis Grecorum ad se missis.

Chapter ix. pp. 562<sub>12</sub>-568<sub>10</sub>:—30. De Grecis mittentibus  
Achillem et Telaphum pro obtinenda maxima victualium  
copia continue in exercitu Grecorum. 31. De Telepho  
duce nouiter in regem electo.

Chapter x. pp. 568<sub>11</sub>-575<sub>13</sub>:—32. De Grecis recedentibus  
ab insula Thenedon & transferentibus se in obsidionem  
urbis Troie. 33. De dispositione nauium grecorum prece-  
dentium & subsequentium in obsidione Troie.

Chapter xi. pp. 575<sub>16</sub>-590<sub>22</sub>:—34. De secundo bello iam  
obsidione firmata. 35. De primo congressu Troianorum  
cum Grecis. 36. Quomodo Polidamas irruit Mereum  
nepotem Helene & interfecit eum.

Chapter xii. pp. 590<sub>23</sub>-593:—37. De tertio bello Gre-  
corum & Troianorum obsidione firmata.

Chapter xiii. pp. 594-597<sub>10</sub>:—38. De quarto bello Gre-  
corum & Troianorum.

Chapter xiv. pp. 597<sub>11</sub>-601<sub>3</sub>:—39. De quinto bello.

Chapter xv. pp. 601<sub>4</sub>-606<sub>9</sub>:—40. De sexto bello.

Chapter xvi. pp. 606<sub>10</sub>-609<sub>19</sub>:—41. De septimo bello.

Chapter xvii. pp. 609<sub>20</sub>-614<sub>4</sub>:—42. De octauo bello.

Chapter xviii. pp. 614<sub>5</sub>-618<sub>7</sub>:—43. De sepulchro Hec-  
toris & de Palamide insuper actore exercitus Grecorum  
assumpto. 44. Electio noui ducis scilicet Palamidis.

Chapter xix. pp. 618<sub>8</sub>-622<sub>8</sub>:—45. De nono bello. 46.  
Qualiter Achilles intrando ciuitatem Troiam captus est  
amore nimio Polixene ipsam inspiciendo.

Chapter xx. pp. 622<sub>9</sub>-625:—47. De Achille intercepto  
adhuc amore Polixene & bellare nolente.

Chapter xxi. pp. 626-632<sub>29</sub>:—48. De decimo bello et

de morte Deiphebi regis Sarpedonis & de morte Palamidis.  
49. De mirabili potentia Troili.

Chapter xxii. pp. 632<sub>30</sub>-640<sub>35</sub>:—50. De undecimo bello.

Chapter xxiii. pp. 640<sub>36</sub>-644<sub>37</sub>:—51. De morte Achillis Paridis et Aiakis.

Chapter xxiv. pp. 644<sub>38</sub>-650<sub>42</sub>:—52. De morte Panthasile Amazonum regine.

Chapter xxv. pp. 650<sub>43</sub>-660<sub>51</sub>:—53. De tractatu seu proditiōe Troie.

Chapter xxvi. pp. 660<sub>52</sub>-670:—54. De captiōe et destructione Troie et morte regis Priami & eius vxoris & eius filie Polixene. 55. De direptione Troie.

Chapter xxvii. pp. 671-677<sub>19</sub>:—56. De exilio Enee & relegatione Anthenoris a Troia et morte Thelamonii Aiakis.

Chapter xxviii. pp. 677<sub>20</sub>-679:—57. De naufragio nauium Grecorum.

Chapter xxix. pp. 680-684<sub>6</sub>:—58. De nece Agamemonia. 59. Sequitur de exilio Demofontis et Attame.

Chapter xxx. pp. 684<sub>7</sub>-688<sub>27</sub>:—60. De Horeste vindicante mortem patris in morte matris et recuperatione regni sui.

Chapter xxxi. pp. 688<sub>28</sub>-695<sub>9</sub>:—61. De mirabili euentu Pirri. 62. De morte Pirri.

Chapter xxxii. pp. 695<sub>10</sub>-700:—63. De somnio Vlixis & morte per filium interempti. 64. De morte Vlixis.

A mere comparison of this table of contents with the third book of "Le Recueil" clearly shows that both Guido and Lefevre narrate the same incidents, and in exactly the same sequence. Can such a complete agreement of the narrative of two works be otherwise explained than by assuming that, either both descend from a common source,

or the one is the source of the other? Now, none of the versions of the Troy-legend composed before Lefevre's days—not even Benoit's "Roman de Troie" and the "Historia de excidio Troiae" attributed to Dares which, as we have seen, are the sources of Guido's work—possesses so many features in common with the third book of "Le Recueil" as Guido's "Historia," and Guido cannot possibly have known "Le Recueil," therefore the Latin authority which Lefevre repeatedly mentions as the work of Dares can be no other than Guido's "Historia." We have now to determine whether Lefevre's account of the destruction of Troy by the Greeks has any claim to originality, or whether it is but a French translation from the Latin original.

For this purpose I have carefully compared the two texts from beginning to end. There are a good many points in which they differ from one another; but, instead of giving a list of the omissions and variations, most of which are insignificant, I shall print several characteristic passages selected from Guido's work side by side with their renderings in "Le Recueil," as I hope by so doing to give the reader a much better idea of the relationship of the two texts to each other, and at the same time acquaint him with the extraordinary work, which, in spite of its barbaric Latin and its extremely small literary value, was held for centuries in the highest esteem as the one trustworthy authority of the siege and destruction of Troy, and has exercised so great and lasting an influence on the literatures of the Western nations of Europe from the time of its appearance to the beginning of the seventeenth century.

The first of the passages I have selected from Guido's

"Historia" deals with the foundation and description of Troy in the time of Priant.

## G. CHAPTERS X. and XI.

L.<sup>1</sup> pp. 507<sub>11</sub>-509<sub>9</sub>.

Sed demum lacrimarum imbribus fluvialibus excolatis amaro corde recepta quiete post depositos gemitus et lamenta longo examinato consilio placuit troiam eversam iterum instaurare Quam in ea magnitudine et fortitudine fabricare decrevit quod nullos hostiles posset timere insultus et in suorum offensionem hostium virtute posset erigi œculosa. Hinc est quod quesitis vndique fabris et peritis in edificandis artibus et marmoreis celaturis lapidariis et doctissimis architectis omnis generis marmora nativis diversis modo insignita coloribus mirabiliter coegit instruere & sic amotis ruderibus & a ruinosis loco purgatis in quo constitit prima troia mirabilis longitudinis & latitudinis sub dei neptuni civitatem erexit quam eodem nomine troiam videlicet censuit appellari. Fuit autem huius secunde troie ambitus longitudinis trium dierum & latitudinis œqualis Nec ante foundationem eius aut post eam nunquam legitur condita civitas tante magnitudinis tante pulchritudinis aut similis speciei. Fuerunt & enim fundamenta eius in terre gremio constituta multum profunda facta fixura & latitudine speciosa. A terre igitur superficie vaeque ad summum eius superedificata sunt menia in mirabili compositione murorum circumquaque cubitorum altitudine ducentorum. Quorum superficies erat marmoreis incrustata lapidibus in variorum diversitate colorum ut intuentius aspectibus blandirentur In murorum itaque ipsorum circumgiratione

Il commenca a faire le plus greigneur dueil du monde et le mena longuement et puis Il eut conseil de faire refaire la cite. Si la commenca tant grande et tant forte quelle ne devoit Iamais doubter ses ennemis et la fist clorre de haults murs et de grosses tours de marbre / Si tres grande estoit quelle avoit trois Iournees de chaine et ne treuve le point que len fust oncques en plus belle cite au monde ne si forte ne si grande ne tant gentement compasee.

<sup>1</sup> The numbers refer to the pages in the present edition where the quoted passages occur *mutata lingua*.



corone non multum vna turris distabat ab alia que supra muros eosdem excrescenti altitudine imminebat Introitus autem & exitus ciuitatis ipsius in sex ianuis institutus quorum vna *dardanides* secunda *trimbrea* tertia *heleas* quarta *chetas* quinta *troiana* & sexta *antonorides* vocabantur. Quelibet enim portarum ipsarum bellicosis fuerat turribus firmata per latera & in celaturis marmorearum imaginum circumquaque decorata. quarum quelibet amicis intrare volentibus placidos permittebat ingressus & superbe resistentie quibuslibet inimicis duos & fortes minabatur accessus Erant etiam ipsi muri exteriori parte per ambitus circumquaque obscuris hiatibus profundo vallo firmati cuius valli distanciam inter se & muros eosdem longa planicies extendebat. Infra vero ciuitatem eandem exstructa fuerunt infinita palacia et in ea infinite domus ciuium formosis edificiis fabricate que ciuitatem eandem ornabant in multarum latitudine platearum Pro certo enim asserunt nullam domum nullum hospitium in ciuitate troie fuisse constructum cuius illud quod minori depressione extiterat supra terram saltem erectum in sexaginta cubitorum altitudine non fuisset. Totum etiam marmoreis firmatum lapidibus in mirificis imaginum ferarum et hominum celaturis Erant & eius platee longo et recto distense diametro in quarum medio discoopertus aer vegetabilis aurore dulces & varios refundebat afflatus. in ipsarum vero lateribus platearum innumerabiles columnae marmoreis arcubus circumuolutis erecte & super ipsorum edificiis eleuate super quibus sic liber & cotidianus gradientibus patebat incessus / vt nec a ventorum rabie nec ab imbrum rore celesti vexarentur gradientes Per plateas enim ipsas mechanicarum artium locate fuerant proprie stationes in quibus earum operarii per certa loca distincti cotidianis

En celle cite auoit six portes principales dont lune auoit nom *dardane* / la seconde *trimbria* / la tierce *elias* / la quarte *chetas* / la quinte *troyenne* / la sixte *aminorides* / Ces portes estoient moult belles grandes et de forte defence et auoit en la cite riches palais sans nombre les plus beaulz qui oncques furent et les plus belles maisons et riches et mieulx compassees et si auoit grandes places en plusieurs lieux belles et plaisans pour les citoiens esbatre / En celle cite furent gens de tous mestiers et marchans qui aloyent et venoyent en toutes les parties du monde.

operibus & venalibus artificis insudabant. Hic enim architecti manebant hic pictores hic statuarii hic marmorarii hic lexicarii manebant hic canicularii hic quadrigarii hic mularii hic deauratores albini qui statuas & imagines in auro pingebant hic argentarii hic decrearii hic calices conficiebant ex vitro hic erarii hic fusores qui campanas ex metallo fundunt hic dignarii qui sigilla formabant hic sartores qui camisas suebant & bracas hic fusarii qui ferro incude fusos extenuant muliebres hic proticarii hic libratores hic figuli hic aurifices hic specularii hic pelliparii hic fullones hic carpentarii hic tingnarii qui vehicula sciz rotis volubilibus sociabant hic dealbatores armorum hic balthearii seu penthalarge qui opus deaurati eris in frenis apponunt hic classicularii hic fabricenses hic gineciarii qui textores appellantur hic geometre que iugera rusticarum terrarum numero diuidebant hic bachi qui pannos lineos & laneos in multo colore tingebant hic pistores hic tabernarii hic oetarii hic arillatores quos mercatores vulgariter appellamus hic argiropate & distractores argenti hic & alii plures qui venales artes mechanicas exercebant. Per medium autem ciuitatis ipsius quidam fluuius *zentus* nomine decurrebat qui diuidendo ciuitatem ipsam in geminas partes equales perhenni cursu habitantibus in ciuitate ipsa multa comoda conferebat Nam constructis iuxta ripam ipsius in numerabilibus molendinis molendina ipsa ad vitam habitantium frumenta concussa in farine puluerem cotidianis vasis conuertebant Hic etiam fluuius per meatus artificiose compositos & subterraneas cathartas per latentes ductus equarum necessaria fecunditate decurrens ciuitatem ipsam ordinatis in cursionibus mundabat per quarum lacrum congregate immundicie purgabantur Ad huius itaque fluminis instar ordinatus extitit tiber

Ou milieu de la cite couroit vne grande riuere nommee *zentus* portant nauires et faisant grant prouffit et soulas aux habitans. /.

rome qui per mediam romam erumpens per troianum eneam ad similitudinem troie factam urbem rome geminas distinxit in partes In hanc igitur urbem troie totius adiacentis regni gentes per vrbes alias & loca dispersas colligi priamns et inhabitari decreuit Quarum multitudine facta est nimium populosa multis decorata nobilibus & vndique tota plena ex multorum incolatu vario plebeiorum. Huius autem ciuitatis diuersorum ludorum diuersa genera diuersis in ea adinuentionibus statuerunt. Ibi primo adinuenta fuerunt schacorum solacia curiosa ibi ludi subito irascibiles alearum hic repentina dampna & lucra momentanea taxillorum. Ibi tragedie et comedie dicuntur primitus institute quamvis quidam asserant in insula sicilie inuentam fuisse primitus comedia. Ibi inuenti dicuntur ludi circenses ceronenses & maiuna qui primo videlicet veris tempore arboribus in multa fronde virentibus in prima pubescentibus iuuentute fieri primo mensis maii consueuerant. Ibi multorum alio ludorum genera ad inuenta fuerunt qui consueuerunt hominum demulcere animos & humanis aspectibus solacia delectationis ingerere ad exhilarandas tuentium voluptates Sed et rex priamus pro sue habitationis hospitio et proprie receptaculo mansionis in eminentiori loco vrbs ipsius cuiusdam native rupis excelse magnum & famosum habitaculum ordinauit.

Ilion firmari constituit quod magnum eius palacium appellatur & magne firmitatis hac in rupe natiua violenter abscisa firmatum extitit inclitum ilion ab imo vsque sursum sperica forma conclusum cuius altitudo summitatis quingentorum passuum attingebat preter cacumina turrium in circuitu suo non multa distantia vicinarum que in multo eandem altitudinem excedebat quarum turrium summitates pro altitudine nimia nubium veste

Quant celle cite fut ainsi faicte le roy pryant y fist venir demourer tous les gens demourans en Icelui pays enuiron / Si en vint tant que oncques celle cite ne fut mieulx aournee de nobles hommes cytoyens La furent trouuez plusieurs Jeux comme le Ieu des eschez le Ieu de tables et detz et autres plusieurs . / .

En la plus apparent place de la cite en vne roche fist faire le roy Pryant son riche palaix quil appella ylion qui fut vng des riches palais et fors qui oncques fut au monde et auoit de



continuis infusionibus tegebantur et ex quarum summitate tam ardua vniuersa totius provincie adiacentia loca & remoti etiam situs commode poterant intueri. Huius ilionis murorum superficies qui se intuentium presentebat aspectibus non ex lactes calcis nitida dealbatura nitebat cum tota esset lapidibus incrustata marmoreis in multorum varietate distincta colorum & in diuersarum imaginum celaturis que intuentium aspectibus alludebant Sic & eius fenestras non insigniuerat opus forte marmoreum cum maior pars earum extracta fuisset ex quadris fulgentium cristallorum Sic fenestrarum ipsarum columnæ sic capitella & bases ipsarum ex interiori parte predicti pallacii. Inter alia edificia concamerata mirifice rex priamus quandam salam instituit prolixæ longitudinis sed latitudinis consonantis cuius extrinseca superficies erat tabulis vestita marmoreis et ex lignis cedrinis & ebani eius tabulata testudo cuius paulmentum musaici operis diuersificata materia diuersos distinxerat in colores In huiusmodi sale capite regium erat solium institutum vbi mensa regia longa proceritate distensa locata extiterat tota composita eboris & ebani subtilibus ex iuncturis Sic & ab utroque latere mensarum ordo distensus commodas dabat discumbentibus sessiones In alio vero capite sale ipsius mirabilis operis gemmis auroque contexti erat quoddam edificatum altare in nomine summi iouis ad quod per viginti gradus musaici operis institutione choruscos accendentibus infatigabilis dabatur ascensus In huius altaris summitate radiabat opposita imago quedam aurea dei iouis in longitudine quindecim cubitorum tota ex auro electo composita in maximi estimatione valoris quam variarum gemmarum venustabat impressio et eius nobilitabant auri substantiam hinc inde appositi in diuersis operibus vniones. Huius dei iouis imago erat priami

haulteur cinq cens pas sans la haulteur des tours dont il y auoit grant plente et estoient tant haultes qu'il sembloit quelles auenissent au ciel si les veoit on de moult loings et en ce riche palais fist le roy Pryant faire la plus riche salle du monde / dedens laquelle estoit vng riche trosne et la table ou Il mengoit et tenoit son estat entre ses barons et tout ce qu'il y conuenoit estoit dor d'argent de pierres precieuses et diuolre . / . En celle salle a vng bout auoit vn autel dor et de pierres precieuses qui estoit consacre ou nom de Iupiter leur dieu auquel autel len montoit a vingt degrez / dessus l'autel estoit limage de Iupiter de quinze pies de hault tout acourne de pierres precieuses / Car en icellui dieu Iupiter estoit toute l'esperance du roy pryant qui estoit filz du roy



regis summa et inconcussa fiducia dum putaret  
per hanc longa felicitate vigere regni sui solium  
& potentiam sceptri sui per infinitam perpetui-  
tatem temporis perdurare.

Laomedon de troyes  
de tenir son regne  
longement et en  
prosperite .

As a second specimen I have chosen the catalogue of the Greeks who came to the port of Athens and joined in the expedition against Troy.

## G. CHAPTER XIX.

Tempus erat quod iam bruma suis exuta  
pruinis et gelu suo tempore soluta glacies iam  
liquarat cum iam niuibz liquefactis varii fluii  
per vallium concaua varios iam tumescerent in  
decursus & pigra hiems ignei mendica calor  
intima terga daret ob vicinum primiveris  
aduentum sole sub extremo signi piscium  
decurente dum extremi dies & ultimi februarii  
mensis instarent et mensis ille martius  
succederet iam vicinus cum vniversus grecorum  
exercitus in multa classe fecundus in *athenarum*  
ciuitatis portum totus insimul conuenisset.  
Sciant igitur presentis historie lectores ab ista  
mundi institutione nunquam tot nauigia  
insimul confluisse tanto plena milite nec  
tantorum cumulo pugnatorum que vt de-  
scriptibili sermone patefacta legantur. Scien-  
dum est *agamemnonem* regem & *danaorum*  
ductorem exercitus ex ciuitate sua s. *mechenarum*

L. 545-546<sub>24</sub>.

Quant vint en la  
fin de feurier que  
lyuer fut passe les  
roys et les princes  
de toutes les pro-  
uinces de grece se  
assemblerent au port  
*dathenes* pour aller  
a troyes / Si nest  
point en memoire  
domme que depuis  
le commencement  
du monde tant de  
nauires et cheualiers  
fussent assemblez  
que a celle fois / Car  
premierement *aga-  
menon* qui estoit  
chief et prince de  
tout lost des gregois  
de son royaume de  
*michenes* y amena  
cent nefz plaines de  
cheualiers armez /  
Le roy *menelaus* son  
frere de son ro-  
yaume de *sparte*  
amena . lx . nefz .  
*Archelaus* & *pro-*

centum naues militibus onustas pugnantibus aduerisse. *Menelaum* autem virum *helene* & ipsius *agamemnonis* fratrem ex regno suo quod dictum est *sparie* sexaginta naues plenas militibus adduxisse. De regno vero *boecie* *erichleus* & *prothenor* ipsius regni domini naues quinquaginta duxere. *Astolaphus* vero dux & comes *helimus* de provincia *cilamenie* naues duxere triginta. Rex vero *epistrophus* rex *tedius* de regno *forcidis* naues quinquaginta adduxerunt in multa militum comitua. *Thelamonius* autem *cias* de regno suo de sua ciuitate nobili *salamina* . l . naues adduxit. In cuius comitua fuerunt multi duces & comites & sunt hi . Dux *teutor* dux *amphiatus* comes *derion* & comes *theseus* / Senex autem dux *nestor* cum . l . nauibus ex *pilon* aduenit. Rex vero *thoas* de regno suo *tolis* . l . naues adduxit. Rex autem *domimas* de regno suo naues detulit . l . De regno autem suo quod *demonium* dicebatur *thelamonius* *oileus* . lvi . naues adduxit. *Polibetes* vero & *amphimachus* de provincia *calcedonie* domini naues adduxere triginta. Rex autem *idameneus* & rex *merios* de *creta* naues octuaginta duxerunt. De regno autem *tracie* ille facundissimus rex *elices* . l . naues

*thenor* du royaume de *boecie* cinquante nefz / Le duc *astolaphus* et le conte *helimus* du pays *dyconie* . xxx . nefz / . Le roy *epi-cropus* et le roy *thedi-us* du regne de *fortes* . xxx . nefz . Le roy *thelamon* de *salmine* cinquante nefz Et en sa compaignie furent le duc *teutor* / le duc *amphimachus* / le conte *dacion* et le conte *theus* et plusieurs autres nobles hommes . Lanchien duc *nestor* de sa province de *pillon* cinquante nefz Le roy *thoas* de *tholis* cinquante nefz . Le roy *dozonnois* cinquante nefz Le roy *thelamon* *chileus* trente six nefz

*Polibetes* & *amphimachus* de sa province de *calcidone* trente deux nefz Le roy *Ydameneus* et le roy *mircorum* de *crets* quatre vingts et deux nefz Le roy *elices* de *traces* cinquante et deux nefz Le duc *metus* de sa

adduxit. Dux vero *melius* de ciuitate sua dicta *pigris* detulit naues decem. *Prothotachus* autem & *prothesilaus* duces provincie que *philorcha* comiter dicebatur duxerunt naues numero .1. De regno vero *tricionico* rex *machaon* & rex *polidus* fratres filii quondam regis *coliphis* naues adduxerunt . xxii. De nobili vero ciuitate sua qui dicebatur *phites* . 1. naues adduxit. Rex autem *telepalus* de insula regni sui que dicta est *rodon* . xx. naues adduxit. *Euphilus* vero rex de regno suo quod dicitur *ortomenie* . 1. naues adduxit. Dux *antipus* & dux *amphimachus* domini cuiusdam *rusticane* prouincie que dicta est *helida* naues . xi. adduxere. Rex vero *polipotes* de regno suo quod dicebatur *rita* & dux *lofius* sobrinus eius adducti fecerunt nauigia . lx. Strennuus vero *diomedes* & in eius comitiua *telemus* & *curialus* de terra sua *argis* naues detulit octuaginta. Rex uero *poliphebus* de regno suo quod nondum multa fama pollebat detulit naues septem rex *firneus* de regno suo quod tenebat a grecis vndecim naues adduxit. Rex autem *protholius* de regno suo quod dictum est *demensei* naues detulit quinquaginta. & totidem Rex *capenor* de sua prouincia *capadie*. *Treorius* vero rex de regno suo quod *reisa* dicetabatur

cite de *pigris* douze nefz *Prothocathus* et *protheselaus* les ducz de *phirarre* amenerent avecques eulx cinquante nefz *Collesis* en amena du regne de *cresonne* vingtquatre nefz qui amenerent le roy *machaon* et le roy *pollidris* son filz *Achilles* de sa noble cite de *phaces* en amena cinquante & deux nefz Le roy *thelephalus* de *rodes* en amena vingt deux nefz. *Eraphilus* dorthomene cinquante nefz. Le duo *anthiopus* et le duc *amphimachus* de *rusticaire* treize nefz Le roy *polibethes* de *richee* et le duc *lopius* son serourge soixante & deux nefz. Le roy *dyomedes* darges quatrevingtz et deux nefz & eut en sa compaignie *thelemus* et *curialus* Le roy *poliphebus* neuf nauires Le roy *sineus* treize nefz Le roy *carpenor* de *carpadie* cinquante & deux nefz Le roy *cheecorius* debreisse vingt &

. xxli . naues secum adduxit. Et sic facta summa de predictis regibus et ducibus fuerunt numero . lxi . naues vero illorum grecorum mille ducente uiginti due *palamides* filium regis *neuli* qui uenit cum suis nauibus ut infra proxime referetur aduenit homerus uero dixit in temporibus suis naues mille centum octuaginta sex sed forte pre tedio numerum integrum non descripsit.

quatre nefz . Tous ceulx furent en somme que rois que ducs soixante neuf Et assamblèrent au port dathenes douze cens et vingtquatre nefz sans y comprendre le duc *palamides* le filz du roy *neulus* qui vint le derrenier a tout son estat comme il sera dit cy apres .

The next chapter selected contains a list of the various kings who came to help King Priant against the Greeks.

## G. CHAPTER XXXI.

## L. 566,-568.

Verum quum in hoc loco frigus dares dicendi materiam fuit digressus antequam de grecorum processibus successus sequentibus aliquid enarret seriatim & nominatim decreuit describere in hoc loco qui reges & quot qui duces & principes in defensionem troiane urbis aduenerunt sicut supra de regibus ducibus & aliis uenientibus in grecorum exercitum descripsimus. Dignum est enim ut et nos in hac parte de eis faciamus (& si non omnium) saltem de maioribus mentionem. Sciendum est ergo quod de regnis eorum licet dares frigus nihil (mihi) inde dixerit uenerunt tres reges cum plus quam tribus milibus militum

En ce lieu yci de nomme lacteur quels roys et princes vindrent a layde du roy priant a troyes des plus notables . Premièrement vindrent en leur ayde le roy *pandorus* le roy *galior* et le roy *andraetus* atout trois mil cheualiers armes / de la prouince *tholoson* vindrent quatre roys a tout cinq mil cheualiers armes / le roy *carras* le roy *amasius* le roy *nestor* qui estoit moult fort et le roy



armatorum rex videlicet *pandarus* rex *thabor* /  
 & *andastrus*. Item de quadam prouincia que  
 dicitur *colofon* quam quidam dixerunt esse  
 insulam multe speciositatis & plenitudine  
 vrbium circumfultam venerunt quatuor reges in  
 comitiua quinque milium militum quorum vnus  
 vocabatur rex *carras* / alius rex *imasius* / tercius  
 rex *nestor fortis* / & quartus rex *amphimacus*.  
 Item de regno *licie* cum tribus milibus militum  
 venit rex *gleucon* cum eius fortissimo filio  
*sarpedone* / qui regi *priamo* fuerat vinculo  
 consanguinitatis astrictus. Item de regno  
*licaonie* venit rex *euphenius* cum ille militibus  
 expertis in bello. Item de regno quod dicitur  
 de *larisso* venerunt duo reges cum militibus  
 mille quingentis . s . *nuporgrandis* / et rex  
*eupedus* Item de regno quod dicitur *tabaria*  
 venit rex *remus* cum tribus milibus & in eius  
 comitiua venerunt comites septem & duces  
 quatuor qui regi *remo* fideles erant de iure  
 vasalli . hi autem omnes portabant arma coloris  
 iacinctini sine flauo absque aliquo intersigno vt  
 inter bellorum acies rex *remus* & sui de facili  
 possent agnosci licet essent alii qui eadem  
 arma gestassent. Item de regno quod *tracia*  
 dicitur illa *tracia* videlicet que in orientali  
 plaga sita est venit rex *pilex* & *alcamus* dux

*amphimacus* . / , du  
 royaume de *licie* vint  
 le roy *gleancon* a tout  
 trois mil cheualiers  
 & son filz *sarpedon*  
 qui estoit vng des  
 fors cheualiers du  
 monde et parent du  
 roy *priant* / du regne  
 de *licaonie* vint le  
 roy *eusemus* atout  
 mil cheualiers moult  
 experts aux armes /  
 du regne de *larisse*  
 vindrent deux roys  
 atout quinze cens  
 cheualiers le roy  
*nustor* qui estoit  
 moult grant et le roy  
*capidus* / du regne  
 de *thabarie* vint le  
 roy *remus* atout  
 trois mil cheualiers  
 et en sa compaignie  
 vindrent quatre dux  
 et sept contes qui  
 estoient feaulx au  
 roy *priant* & estoient  
 leurs escuz de cou-  
 leur dazur sans autre  
 enseigne & par ce  
 estoient ilz congneuz  
 en la bataille / de  
*trahie* vint le roy  
*pilex* et le duc *atha-  
 mus* atout onze cens  
 cheualiers .

Du regne de *pau-  
 onie* vint le roy *pesse-  
 messus* et le duc

secum mille & centum milites adducentes  
 Item de regno *pannonie* uenit rex *precemessus* &  
 quidam sobrinus eius dux *stuei* cum mille  
 militibus tam quoniam huius regni prouincia  
 tota consistit in montibus obscuris nemoribus  
 & siluis vmbrosis. Rare enim sunt in ea ville &  
 nulle planicies & ideo dicitur in ea multos  
 satiros faunosque bicornes q̄ plurimum abundare.  
 Et ideo etiam in ea multa miraculosa visa  
 fuisse. nam et in terra illa sunt diuersa genera  
 volucrum & ferarum & ideo eius militia  
 pre ceteris esse experta in uirtutibus lancearum  
 arcuum & etiam sagittarum. Item de prouincia  
*boetie* uenerunt tres duces cum militibus mille  
 ducentis. dux uidelicet *anfinius* / dux *fortinius* /  
 & dux *sanius*. Item de regno *broetino* quod esse  
 valde suppositum orientali plage plenum omni  
 genere aromatum uenerunt duo reges fratres  
 cum mille militibus. rex uidelicet *boetes* / & rex  
 uidelicet *epistrius*. Item de regno *paffagonie*  
 quod est nimis propinquum versus orientem  
 quasi regnum inaddibile. propter multam  
 remotionem ipsius uenit ille ditissimus auro &  
 gemmis que in flumine tigris & eufratis crebris  
 inueniuntur. In cuius ripis regnum ipsum  
 paffagonium situm est. Rex s. *philimenis* cum  
 duobus milibus militum habentium scuta

*stuei* son serourge  
 atout mil cheualiers  
 tres expertiz a Jous-  
 ter et a traire larc  
 Cest vng moult sau-  
 uaige pays de for-  
 estes et de mon-  
 taignes et ou il y a  
 bien pou de gens et  
 assez de bestes sau-  
 uages et doyseaulx.

De la prouince de  
*boecie* vindrent trois  
 ducs atout douze  
 cens cheualiers. le  
 duc *anserunus*. le  
 duc *fortunus* et le  
 duc *auinius* / Du  
 regne *burtin* ou crois-  
 sent les bonnes es-  
 pices vindrent deux  
 roys freres atout mil  
 cheualiers le roy  
*boetes* et le roy *epi-  
 strius*. Du regne *pa-  
 phagore* qui est a  
 solleil leuant plain  
 de toutes richesses  
 vint le tres riche roy  
*philimenis* atout trois  
 mil cheualiers.  
 Leurs escus estoient  
 de cuir de poissons  
 tous couuers dor et  
 de pieres precieuses  
 et estoit icell roy  
 grant comme vng  
 geant.

Du regne *dethiope*  
 vint le roy *peres*

quorum materia non erat ligno constructa sed tantum ex coriis decoctis multo tamen auro fulgentia et diuersis gemmis ornata. Hic rex *philimenis* erat statura valde gracilis non minor statura gigantis. Item de regno *ethiopie* venit *perses* et in eius comitiua strennuus rex *mennon* cum militibus & comitibus sibi subiectis & cum tribus milibus militum & in eorum comitiua venit *sigamon* frater regis *mennonis* supradicti. Item de regno *thereo* venit rex *theseus* & filius eius *archilogus* cum mille militibus cum ipse rex *theseus* esset *priamo* stricta consanguinitate coniunctus. Item de insula que dicitur *agresta* nenerunt duo reges cum militibus mille . cc . quorum nomina hic expressa non sunt. Item de regno *lissinie* quod est ultra regnum *amazonum* venit quidam rex senex multum sed multa discretione conspicuus nomine *epistropus* septem liberalibus artibus eruditus. Hic duxit secum mille milites et quendam *sagittarium* visu mirabilem cuius vna medietas ab vmbilico superius erat homo & ab vmbilico deorsus erat equus . & illa medietas que erat humana tota erat corio cooperta piloso sicut corium equi oculos tamen habebat flammeos velut igne rubentes doctus in arcu timorosi tamen erat

et avec lui le roy de *chiction* qui Estoit moult hardy et preu atout trois mil cheualiers et auoient en leur compaignie maint due et maint conte et si estoit avec eulx *simagon* le filz du roy *thiecion* .

Du regne de *cheres* vint le roy *theleus* et *archilogus* son filz qui estoit affin du roy *priant* et amenèrent mil cheualiers . De lile *dargreste* vindrent deux roys dont leurs noms ne sont point icy tout douze cens cheualiers / Du regne *daliane* qui est oultre le regne *damasonie* vint vng ancien roy moult saige nomme *epistropus* et amena mil cheualiers et vne merueilleuse beste que on appelle *sagitaire* qui est cheual depuis la boutine au dessouls et dessus comme homme / Celle beste estoit velue comme vng cheual . et auoit les yeulx rouges comme charbon et bien tiroit de larc / Ceste beste



aspectus qui aduersos grecos pugnans multos timores incussit & damna q̄ plurima dedit eis dum multos ex grecis letiferis vulneribus peremisset. Fuerunt autem milites qui his regibus aduenerunt preter milites ipsius regis priami & minoris indie numero triginta duo milia. Numquam enim ab ipsius mundi constitutione legitur tot milites tot iuuenes bellicosos coactos in vnum vbi totius mundi militum flos tam ex parte troianorum quam ex parte grecorum conuenit in vnum Attendant ergo lectores presentis historie quam leui causa quam debili ratione tot fortium tot maiorum processit interitus. Sane abhominanda sunt scandala quantumcumque debili sint ratione subnixa.

donna aux gregois de grans paours & moult en occit / Ainsi furent en nombre tous les cheualiers qui furent en lost du roy priant . xxxij . mil / sans ceulx du royaume de troyes et de ynde la mineur / . Et nest point trouue en escript que depuis la creation du monde tant de nobles cheualiers fussent assamblez en vng lieu et si meut la querelle a petite occasion O comme les roys et princes se doiuent donner garde desmouuoir guerre tant quilz le puissent amender par autre voye :

The fourth passage deals with Troilus and Brisayda.

## G. CHAPTER XL.

L. 603<sup>m</sup>-605<sup>1r</sup>

Troilus vero postquam agnouit de sui patris procedere voluntate de briseida relaxanda & restituenda grecis quam multo amoris ardore iuueniliter diligebat nimio calore ductus amoris in desideratua virtute ignee voluntatis multo dolore deprimitur & torquetur funditurque qua si totus lacrimis anxiosis suspiriis & lamentis . nec est qua ex caris eius eum valeat consolari.

Quant troylus sceut que brisayda seroit remenee a son pere Il en fut moult dolant et elle pareillement Se en menoit le plus grant dueil du monde de laisser son amy / si ne fut onques veu



Briseida vero que troillum non minoris amoris ardore diligere videbatur non minus in voces querulas prodiit suos dolores cum tota sit fluuiialibus lacrimis malefacta, sic quod continuis aquosis imbris ab oculorum suorum fonte stillantibus vestes suas & faciem aspersit ita quod vestes eius tanto erant lachrimarum perfuse liquore / vt si prementis alicuius manibus stringerentur aquarum multitudinem effunderent in strictura. Vnguibus etiam suis sua tenerissima ora dilacerabat & aureo scrines suas a lege ligaminis absolutos a lactea sui capitis cute diuellit et dum rigidis vnguibus suas maxillas exarat rubeo cruore percinctas lacerata lilia laceratis rosis immisceri similitudinarie videbantur. Que dum queritur de sua separatione a dilecto suo troilo sepius moritur inter brachia eam volentium sustinere / dicensse malle mortem appetere quam vita potiri . ex quo eam ab eo separari necesse est / a cuius vita sue vite solacia dependebant. Noctis igitur superueniente caligine troilus se contulit ad brisedam eam flebilibus monet in lacrimis vt a tanto se debeat temperare dolore. Et dum sic eam consolari troilus anhelat briseida inter brachia troili labitur sepius se minua. Quam inter dulcia basia lacrimis irrorata flebilibus ad vires sui sensus ea nocte reducere est conatus. Sed diei hora quasi superueniente vicina troilus & briseida in multis anxietatibus & doloribus discessit &

demener si grant dueil a deux amans de leur departement & finalement briseyda fu emmenee deuers les gregois qui la receurent honnourablement.

ea relictâ ad sui palatii regina properauit. Sed  
o trolle<sup>1</sup> que te tam iuuenilis errare coegit  
credulitas vt briseide lacrimis crederes decep-  
tiuâ & eius blanditiis. Sane omnibus mulieribus

<sup>1</sup> In the printed edition described on pp. xxxvi.-xxxviii. this passage is rendered thus :

"Et par icelluy fait furent et ont este dis mains mauz de femme pour ce que trop appertement elle descourrit leur nature muant et non veritable iusques a present. Et pour ce parle l'acteur a troillus vng petit et dist . ha troillus quelle cruaulte de ieunesse te maine a telle erreur destre ainsi deceu d'une femme comme tu es et as este que briseida pour ses larmes gemissans et pleurs quelle faisoit croioies & en ses parolles nuisantes & decepuables te foyes / ne sces tu mie certainment que es natures de toutes femmes nest aulcune ferme constance. Car se vne femme pleure de lung des yeulx elle rit de l'autre au cuer et par derriere et desquelles variances et propos muable nature les maine a elles mocquer de tous hommes. Quant par vng aultre auant sont requises damour pour leur volonte inestimable et muante variera et changera son cuer et prendra le derrenier cuer et laissera celluy qui lamera de volonte et tiendra au premier venu. Et all aduient que aulcun requerant ne luy appere si fera elle ses agais puis a huys puis a fenestres puis en rues ou places et lancera aux passans regars alimentans et attraians les musars affin de decepuoir ceulx qui plus les ameront et des nouueaulx amis ou au mains auoir / et pour ce te dis ie de certain que nulle apparence de vraye foy adiouster ne doit on en elles et qui plus se lye et met son cuer il est fol & sans scauoir car leurs promesses et leurs parolles ne sont que fallaces et demonstrance comme faire a croire ce qui nest mie. Que veulx tu dire de la constance des femmes ie dy que selles ament huy demain hairont car telle est laxesse d'elles et bien le peut apparoir par celle que tu amoles mieulx que toy meismes et tel signe damour te monstroient et dernièrement au congie prendre te toy car ses cheueulx elle arrachoit ses mains elle plaingnoit gemissoit ses vestemens destrenchoit sa face decouppoit qui grant effusion de sang lettoit / et le lendemain sans plus attendre et au plus tost quelle eut perdue la veue de toy elle donna samour a ton propre ennemy mortel et oubliâ toute lamour de toy et les services que fais luy auoies / et par ce peulx scauoir que telz sont les autres."

est insitum a natura / ut in eis non sit aliqua  
 firma constantia quarum si vnus oculus lacri-  
 matur ridet earum alius oculus ex transuerso /  
 quarum mutabilitas & varietas eas ad illudendos  
 viros semper inducit . & cum magis amoris viris  
 ostendunt / statim sollicitate per alium amorem  
 sui demonstrantes variant & commutant repente  
 instabilem. Et si forte nullus sollicitator earum  
 appareat ipsum ipse dum incedunt vel dum  
 vagantur sepius in fenestris vel dum resident in  
 plateis furtiuis aspectibus clandestine sibi  
 querunt. Nulla spes est reuera tam fallax  
 quam ea que residet in mulieribus & procedit  
 ab eis. Vnde fatuus ille iuuenis merito censi  
 potest (& multo fortius estate prouectus) qui in  
 mulierum blanditiis fidem gerit. & earum demon-  
 strationibus sic fallacibus se committit. Bri-  
 seida igitur de mandato regis priami in magno  
 apparatu se accingit ad iter / quam troilus &  
 multi alii nobiles de troianis per magnum vie  
 spacium commearunt. Sed grecis aduenientibus  
 ad recipiendum eandem / troilus & troiani  
 redeunt & greci eam in suo recipiunt comitatu  
 Inter quos dum esset diomedes & illam diomedes  
 inspexisset in flammam statim veneri ardoris  
 exarsit & eam vehementi desiderio concupiuit.  
 Qui cum collateralis associando briseidam cum  
 ea insimul equitaret sui ardoris flammam conti-  
 nere non valens briseide reuelat sui estuantis  
 cordis amorem . quam in multis affectuosis

Entreulz estoit dyo-  
 medes qui tost fut  
 enflambe de lamour  
 de briseyda quant il  
 la veit tant belle / et  
 en cheuauchant den-  
 coste elle lui reuela  
 tout son coraige et  
 lui fist moult de



sermonibus & blanditiis necnon promissionibus reuera magnificis allicere satis humiliter est conatus. Sed briseida in ipsis primis motibus (ut mulierum est moris) suum praestare recusavit assensum . nec tamen passa est quin post multa diomedis verba ipsum nolens a spe sua deicere verbis humilibus dixit ei. Amoris tui oblationem ad presens nec repudio nec admitto cum cor meum non sit ita dispositum / quod tibi aliter respondere. Ad cuius verba diomedes satis factus est hilaris / cum ex eis presenserit de spe gerenda in eam se non esse priuatum in totum. Quare associavit eam usque ad locum quo briseida recipere in sui patris tentoria se debebat & ea perueniente ibidem ipse eam ab equo descendens promptus adiuit & vna de cirothecis quam briseida gerebat in manu ab ea nullo percipiente furtive subtraxit Sed cum ipsa sola presenserit placidum furtum dissimulavit amanti. Tunc antistes calcas in filie occursum aduenit & eam in vultu & animo satis hilari in tentorium suum recepit. Et diomedes licet amore briseide nimium fluctuaret tamen amor & spes eum in multo labore sui cordis impugnant. Briseida vero sola existens cum antistite patre suo ipsum duris verbis aggreditur in multitudine lacrimarum dicens ei. Quomodo pater carissime infatuatus extitit sensus tuus qui tanta vigere

promesses mais lui quelle donnast son amour. Et lors quelle congneut le coraige de dyomedes elle se excusa disant quelle le reffusoit a celle heure et que son cuer nestoit point dispose de lors y respondre autrement De celle response ot dyomedes grant Ioye pour ce quil ne fut point reffuse du tout / et accompaigna briseyda Iusques a la tente son pere . et le mist habilement Ius de son cheual et lui print vng de ses gans quelle tenoit entre ses mains et elle la souffry doucement. Calcas la receut a grant Ioye . et quant Ils furent a leur priue ladicte briseyda dist a son pere en plourant telles ou semblables parolles. Ha ha : mon pere comment a este ton sens si failli qui souloyes estre si saige et le plus honnoure & ame qui fust en la cite de troyes et gouuernoyes tout



sapientia consuevit vt tu qui tantum inter troianos magnificatus extiteras & elatus cum fuisses factus eorum tamquam dominus & solus eorum in omnibus gubernator qui tantis inter eos diuitiis habundabas tantarum possessionum multiplicatione suffultus & eorum nunc factus est perditor & tuam negasti patriam cuius esse defensor in omnibus debiisti & nunc elegisti melius tibi placere abiurando patriam in paupertate & exilio vinere & specialiter inter capitales tue patrie inimicos que ad delendum tuos & tuam patriam sic hostiliter accesserunt. O quanta inter homines pudoris labe confunderis qui tam gloriose a tuis consueueras honorari Nunquam tanta dedecoris a te detergeretur infamia quanta es visco turpitudinis ignominia denigratus. An putas et si inter viuos vituperatus existis qui etiam post mortem tuam apud inferos ob tante perditionis culpam non lugeas penas dignas? Melius ergo tibi esset & etiam nobis in aliquem locum solitudinis & deserti vel in memoribus deuiis vel in aliqua insula longe ab incolis ducere vitam nostram quam inter homines tanta labe nigrescere diffamatum An putas quod greci reputent te fidelem qui es tue patrie publicus infidelis Sane deceperunt te appollinis falsa responsa a quo te dicis suscepisse mandatum vt

en Icelle en y auoyes tant de richesses et possessions & as este traytre / toy qui deusses auoir garde tes richesses et deffendu ton pais Iusques a la mort /. Mais tu aymes mieulx viure en pourete et en peril entre les ennemis mortelz de ton pais /. O comme ce te doit tourner a grant vilonnie . Certes tu nauras Iamais tant de bien comme tu as acquis de vilonnie et si nen seras point seulement blasme en ta compaignie ou en ta vie / ains le seras aussi en ton absence et apres ta mort et dampne en enfer . Et me semble quil vouldroit mieulx demourer en sus de gens en aucune Isle de mer que de demourer Ici en tel deshonneur et vilonnie . Cuidex tu que les gregois te tiengnent pour leal qui es publicque desleal enuers tes gens Certes ce ne fut pas le dieu appolo

tuos paternos lares desereres & tuos in tanta acerbitate penates & vt sic tuis specialiter hostibus adhereres Sane non fuit ille deus apollo sed potius puto fuit comitina infernalium furiarum a quibus responsa talia suscepisti. Ad hec briseida multis deuicta singultibus lacrimarum suo flebili colloquio finem facit Cui calcas sub quadam verborum breuitate respondit Dixit enim ei Ha dulcis filia an tutum esse reputas an securum iussa deorum spernere, etc.

qui tabusa ainsi / ains fut vne compaignie de deables / et comme icelle parloit ainsi a son pere elle plouroit forment du desplaisir quelle en auoit .

Ha a ma fille ce dist calcas . Cuides tu que ce soit sceure chose de despiter la responce des dieux etc .

As an instance of the description of a battle I have selected the following paragraph :

## G. CHAPTER XLII.

## L. 612-614.

Bellum autem interim letale committitur. *Diomedes & troilus* bello conueniunt ambo in equorum eorum cursibus se grauiter impetunt in duris ictibus lancearum. Et indubitanter tunc alter alterum peremisset / nisi quod menelaus cum sua acie peruenit ad illos qui certamen amborum inuicem separauit. *Menelaus* autem in regem *miserum frigie* irruit & animose ipsum ab equo deiecit Greci regem *miserem* capiunt . & captum asportare nituntur , nisi tunc velociter occurrisset *polidamas* qui in suis viribus & sue potentie acie regem *frigie* ne duceretur captiuus viriliter impediuit. Greci vero videntes quod eum captiuum ducere non

Entre ces choses la bataille estoit mortelle des gregois et des troyens *dyomedes* et *troilus* a vng lez combatirent ensemble et greuerent lun lautre forment / . Et sans faulte Ilz se fussent entre occis se *menelaus* ny fut surueni qui les separa . La abati *menelaus* le roy *miseres de frigie* & leust prins quant *Eneas* y suruint qui les destourba / si le vouldrent occire /

poterant proposuerunt incidere sibi caput Sed tunc superuenit ille fortissimus *troilus* qui multis tunc per eum interfectis grecis ipsum ab eorum manibus liberauit. Tunc *thelemonius aiaz* cum tribus milibus pugnatorum bellum intrauit & in *polidamam* irruit ipsum prostrauit ab equo. Sed *troilus* festinus occurrit / qui *polidamam* in equum suum fecit ascendere multo labore depressum. Tunc *paris* bellum intrauit et ex parte grecorum *achilles* qui cum suis sic potenter irruit in troianos quod greci in virtute *achillis* troianos vertunt in fugam / & terga sunt dare troiani coacti & in ciuitatem se recipere festinabant. Interim dum *margariton* vnus ex filiis regio priami intercipere conatur *achillem*. *achilles* dum ille sibi viriliter restitisset interfecit eundem. Tunc clamor fuit maximus de morte *margariton* crudeliter interfecti & *thelamonius aiaz* troianos potenter insequitur. Sed *paris* viriliter eos defendit necnon & alii filii naturales *priami* / non tamen in tantum in viribus preualerunt quin troiani precipiti fuga ciuitatem intrantes eorum . corpus *margariton* ad ciuitatem mortuum detulerunt. Quem ut mortuum *hector* audiuit multo dolore torquetur / diligenter

mais ledit *troylus* le deliura & occist moult de gregois : Lors vint le roy *thelamon* atout trois mille combatans & coucha sa lance en son venir sus *polidamas* et labati / mais *troylus* le secouru et le fist remonter sus son cheual Aprez vint *paris* et *achilles* de l'autre part qui se fery pargrant radeur entre les troiens et par si grant force a layde des siens qu'il les mist a la fuitte et les fist reculer. Iusques en leur cite. En celle chasse occist *achilles* *margareton* lun des filz bastars du roy pryant. Quant *hector* sceut que *achilles* auoit occiz *margareton* lun de ses freres bastars Il en eut grant douleur / si lura qu'il levengeroit sil pouoit et fist tantost lachier son beaulme et sen alla a la bataille que son pere nen sceut riens Et en son venir occist deux nobles



querit quis eum interfecerit / quem achillem  
 fuisse relatum esse ei. Tunc hector quasi  
 furibundus in ira ligata casside rege patre  
 inscio bellum ingreditur & statim in furore suo  
 duos magnos duces interfecit / *eripolum* s . &  
 ducem *hastitum*. Grecos deinde viriliter impetit  
 diruit vulnerat & occidit quem greci illico  
 cognouerunt in letalibus ictibus ensis sui . &  
 a facie eius aufugiunt . troiani autem grecos  
 inuadunt & potenter ipsos expugnant. Greci  
 uero *polidamam* capiunt & captum educere  
 conabantur a bello / sed *hector* ipsum liberat qui  
 ducentes eum in suis viribus interfecit . quod  
 dum inspexisset quidam grecorum maximus  
 admiratus nomine *leochides* in *hectorem* irruit  
 morti tradere putans eum. Sed hector totus  
 exardescens in iram in ipsum irruit / & furore  
 ire sue interfecit eundem. Achilles vero ut  
 vidit hectorem tot nobiles grecorum & infinitos  
 alios morti sic velociter tradidisse suo concepit  
 in animo / quod nisi velociter hector morti  
 tradatur nunquam greci aduersus troianos  
 poterunt preualere. Diligenter igitur scrutatus

ducs gregois cest  
 assauoir le duc  
*coriphus* et le duc  
*bastidus* et puis apres  
 sans riens espargnier  
 se feri en la grei-  
 gneur presse des  
 gregois et occist  
 quanques Il ataint  
 et sen fuloient les  
 gregois deuant lui  
 si qu'il ny auoit si  
 hardi qui osast ses  
 coupz attendre et  
 ainsi retournerent  
 les troiens a la  
 bataille et com-  
 mencerent a occire  
 gregois a tous costez  
 La prindrent les  
 gregois *polidamas* et  
 leussent emmene se  
 hector ne leust de-  
 liure qui occist  
 plusieurs gregois a le  
 rescourre. Lors vng  
 admiral de grece  
 nomme *leocides* as-  
 sailly hector / mais  
 hector loccist tan-  
 tost.

Quant achilles  
 veit que hector  
 occioit ainsi les  
 nobles de grece et  
 tant d'autres que ce  
 estoit merueilles a  
 regarder Il pensa  
 que se hector nestoit  
 occis que jamais les



in sue mentis archano qualiter in continenti  
illud perficere valeat & complere. Et dum  
meditaretur diligenter *achilles* in his & *politenes*  
dux qui ob *achillis* amorem in grecorum  
subsidium se contulerat sperans etiam quandam  
sororem achillis ducere in uxorem . qui a  
superiori india valde diues aduenerat dum inter  
turmas hectori obuiasset / hector in ipsum  
irruens interfecit eundem achille vidente.  
Achilles autem furibundus in hectorem irruit  
vindicare *politenis* necem intendens. Sed  
hector quoddam iaculum cuius ferrum erat in  
eius acumine valde secans vibrauit viriliter in  
achillem. Et dum ipsum percussisset in inguine  
grauē sibi vulnus infixit Achilles autem in bello  
vulnera egreditur . sed vulnere ipso ligato redit  
ad bellum eo proposito quod hectorem morti  
tradat etiam si eum exinde mori contingat.  
Hector vero interim in quendam grecorum re-  
gem irruerat ipsum ceperat & captum conabatur  
ipsum a turmis extrahere scuto suo sibi post  
terga reiecto . vt abilius ipsum regem a turmis  
eripere potuisset. Quare pectus suum disco  
opertum iam gerebat scuti sui s. defensione

grecois nauroient  
victoire / si lui  
cours sus lui et vng  
noble duc de grece  
nomme *policeus* &  
estoit venus pour  
lamour dachilles  
lequel lui auoit  
promis donner sa  
suer en mariaige /  
mais hector occist  
celui duc voyant  
achilles. Lors  
*achilles* cuidant ven-  
gier la mort de  
celluy duc nomme  
*policeus* assailly  
hector par tresgrant  
yre / Mais hector lui  
Jetta vng dart bien  
ferre dont Il lui fist  
grant playe / et alors  
achilles sen yssi de  
lost qui se fist bien  
bender sa playe /  
Et print vne forte  
lance a propos pour  
occire hector sil le  
pouoit rencontrer :  
Entre ces choses  
hector auoit prins  
vng moult noble  
baron de grece moult  
cointement arme et  
pour le mener hors  
de la presse plus  
aise auoit mis son  
escu a son dos et  
auoit son pis descou-  
uert / & ainsi qu'il

priatum. Quod achilles dum presentit hectorem ante pectus scuti sui subsidium non habere accepta quadam lancea ualde forti non aduertente hectore velociter in hectorem irruit ipsum letaliter vulneravit in pectore . sic quod eum mortuum deiecit a quo. Rex uero *odemon* statim ut uidit hectorem mortuum achillem aggreditur ipsum ab equo deiecit & letaliter vulnerat sic quod sui mirmidones eum quasi mortuum ad sua castra deducunt in scuto. Troiani uero qui deuicti campum deserunt ciuitatem intrant in quam corpus hectoris mortuum grecis non resistentibus detulerunt.

estoit en ce point et ne prenoit garde de riens Achilles lui vint bouter celle lance dedens le corps et de ce coup hector chey mort a terre / . Quant le roy *odemon* vit hector mort Il assailli achilles qui lui vint bouter celle lance dedens le corps et le naura forment / & leporterent ses gens en sa tente sur son escu. Lors pour la mort de hector furent les troyens tous desconfis et se rentrent en la cite portans le corps de hector a grant douleur.

And lastly, in order to show how indiscriminately Lefevre reproduces his Source, I have chosen the following paragraph :

## G. CHAPTER LIV.

Thohas vero sacerdos quasi pro maiori parte noctis illius violenter restitit verbis anthenoria. Sed demum antequam anthenori subtraheretur de nocte libera recedendi facultas thohas illa queatus auri cupidine palladii subtractionem anthenori sponte concessit quod

L. 661<sub>m</sub>-662<sub>r</sub>.

Thoant le prestre resista longuement aux parolles de anthenor / mais en fin par la conuoitise de la grant somme d'or que anthenor lui bailla Il consenty qu'il presist le

anthenor statim absportauit a templo . & statim eadem nocte per nuncium suum illud transmisit ad grecos quod vlixi protinus fuit assignatum . Postea vero fama dictante publice dictum est q̄ vlixes sua sagacitate interceperat illud a troianis. Sed o dii ex quo thohas sacerdos elegit ciuitatem suam proditorie malle perire quam aurum perdere sibi datum . quis locus tutus esse poterit aut securus si sanctitas incorrumpeunda corrumpitur. Sane non est in sacerdotibus nouum istud in quibus ex antiquo auaricia omnium viciorum mater suas radices affixit & in gluuiosa cupiditas suas medullas. Nullum enim scelus potest esse tam graue quod ad committendum illud sacerdotes in fulgore auri subitam non recipiant cecitatem."

paladium et lempor-  
tast Si le prinst tan-  
tost anthenor et len-  
noya a vlixes en celle  
mesmes nuit / puis  
courut la voix que  
vlixes par sa sub-  
tilite prins le pala-  
dium a troyes. O  
quelle trayson de  
prestre qui ayma  
mieulx parconuoitise  
a trahir sa cite que  
a laissier lor qui lui  
fut donne. Certes  
cest vil pechiet en  
prestre que de con-  
uoitise mais peu en  
a este par cy denant  
& mains en est ores  
qui nayent este at-  
taint de ce pechiet  
Dont cest pechie  
comme Il soit ainsi  
que auaricesoit mere  
de tous vices Tandis  
que les troyens  
cueilloient leur etc.

These six examples, without any further comment, I think, will enable the reader not only to form a correct idea of the style of Guido's "Historia," but also to judge the value and workmanship of the third book of "Le Recueil."

As I have not the space at my disposal to carry out my original plan of dealing *in extenso* with the language of the first English printed book—to do justice to this

subject would require a volume alone—I prefer to abandon my plan altogether to writing an account which would necessarily be far from exhaustive. I cannot, however, omit to point out that, before the language of "The Recuyell" can be successfully dealt with, Caxton's translation will have to be carefully compared with Lefevre's text; the necessity of this course will be seen from the paragraphs printed from Book III. of "Le Recueil" in the present section, from many passages in the Glossary, and from the following examples, which I have selected by chance:

## LEFEVRE.

"es Iours que les siecles furent  
dorees / que les hommes pesans  
comme montaignes et rudes  
comme pierres et bestes esle-  
uerent leurs pesants courages et  
pollirent ou esclarcirent leurs  
gros concepuoira."

"Comment es tu tant presump-  
tueux de toy esleuer sur moy par  
conspirees machinacions."

"Et ny sauoit machiner ne con-  
spirer."

"Crete a cause de liale qui  
estoit ainsi nomme de son premier  
habiteur."

"Il ediffia choses dor riches  
aux yeulz loyeuses aux cuers et  
chaudes aux courages Car des  
lors elles eschaufferent dun feu  
pardurable. Les affections hu-

## CAXTON.

"in the dayes that the world  
was of gold And þ' the men in  
thoo dayes were stedfast & poys-  
yng as montaynes and Rude as  
stones and bestes enhaunsyng  
their grete corages foulyng and  
shewyng their grete consaytes."

9<sub>ar</sub>

"hou art thou so hardy and  
presumptuous tenhance thi selfe  
aboue me by conspyred imagina-  
tion." 13<sub>ar</sub>

"ner neuer had ymagyned ner  
conspyred hit." 13<sub>r</sub>

"Crete because the yle bare þ'  
said name and was the fyrst en-  
habiteur & dwellar." 16<sub>ar</sub>

"He odefyed ryche thynges of  
gold loyous vnto the eye syght /  
and hoot and courageous to the  
berte / for at that tyme the cou-  
rages by pardurable fyre chauffing



## LEFEVRE.

maines en maniere de chaleur  
contagieuse tant singulierement  
que tousiours depuis les hommes  
les ont conuoitees et conuoittent."

"Brief il estoit perturbe et per-  
chie de tant aigre expression de  
dueil."

"Et vesca print sa contenance  
toute nouuelle."

"pour quelle cause Il a este  
machine contre moy."

"Certes sire Iay moult grant  
Ioye que la nane de ces maron-  
niers est adressee en si bonne  
rencontre comme la vostre."

"pour Illec soy habiliter aux  
armes et au plaisir des dieux et  
de fortune recepara tous ceulx."

"armez de moult beaux habille-  
mens courroyez au dur . En  
toute celle assemblee Il ny auoit  
que cent cheualiers a cheual."

"et en occiant largement en  
reculant vers le port."

"A la departie faire leurs cuers  
furent mis en vng dur destroit si

## CAXTON.

the affections of man in maner of  
contagious heet so syngulerly that  
after alleway that they coueyted  
/ they desyred to accomplish."

17<sup>24-27</sup>

"he was in short tyme so gretli  
perturbed and so impressed wyth  
eygre impression of sorow." 23<sup>18-21</sup>

"and vesca beheld her counten-  
ance all newe." 29<sup>29</sup>

"& for what cause hit is yma-  
gined aienst me." 204<sup>20</sup>

"Certes sire I have moche grete  
Ioye of that I see that the shyppe  
and maronniers ben so well adressid  
and in so good recountre as youre  
is." 207<sup>15-18</sup>

"for to dispose hym in habille-  
mens conuenient vnto Armes at  
the playsir of the goddes and  
fortune / and for to resseyue  
alle them." 249<sup>22-25</sup>

"armed well with quyver boullie  
/ and ran in the moste hardest  
place of this assamblee / there  
were no more but an honderd  
knyghtes a hors back." 259<sup>4-6</sup>

"and sleyng them largely / re-  
cuyellid and wente vnto the  
porte." 322<sup>3-31</sup>

"At the departyng their hertes  
were put in a hard & greuous dis-

# DES HISTOIRES DE TROYE."

clxiii

LEFEVRE.

dar a goustier que proserpine chey  
en pamoison."

"tel cuide sa honte vengier qui  
lacroist."

"Iay de tous espandu le sang et  
ainsi feray le de toy se tu ne soes  
souldre vng sophime que le te  
feray."

"Mais quant fortune eut assez  
charye elle tourna sur le serpent  
si a certes que apres plusieurs cops  
hercules lui mist le trenchant de  
son espee tout dedens le heaulme  
et la teste et le porta mort par  
terre."

"O malheureux homme cy ne  
te peuent secourir tes couronnes /  
tes dyademes tes ceptres tes bruits  
et tes honneurs royaux / Et pour-  
quoy / Certes pour ce que tu es  
enuelly en tes pechiez et ne les  
amende ne corrige pour pugnicion  
ne pour paine que tu ayes enduree  
ne soufferte / Aincois en lieu de  
donner qui appartient a roys et a  
princes tu as este larron."

CAXTON.

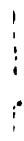
tresse / so harde anguysh that  
proserpine fill doun a swone."  
322, 11-12

"so weneth he to auenge his  
shame that so beleueth." 333<sub>11-12</sub>

"I have therfore destroyed their  
blood and so shall I do thyn yf  
thou canste not assoyle or so-  
phyme that I shall make to the."  
391<sub>11-12</sub>

"But whan fortune had ynowh  
cherlissid hem bothe / she torned  
ayenst the serpent so certainly /  
that after many strokes hercules  
smote his trenchyng sword wyth  
in the helme in to his heed and  
bare hym doun dede vnto the  
erthe." 393<sub>11-12</sub>

"O cursid man yf thy Crownes .  
thy diademes . thy septres . thy  
ruytes / thy ryall men myghte  
not socoure the / why than and  
wherfore arte thou wrappid in  
synnes. And amendest the not  
ne correcte the for the pugnycion  
that thou hast suffred / but yet in  
the stede and place that thou  
sholdest dispose the to that / that  
apperteyneth to a kynge & a  
prynce / thou haste ben a theef."  
447<sub>11-12</sub>



RECUYELI OF THE HISTORYES  
OF TROYE

[blank leaf]





**H**ere begynneth the volume intituled and named  
the recuyell of the historyes of Troye / composed  
and drawen out of dyuerce bookes of latyn in  
to frensshe by the ryght venerable persone and wor-  
shipfull man . Raoul le sseure . preest and chapelayn 5  
vnto the ryght noble glorious and myghty prynce in  
his tyme Phelip duc of Bourgoyne of Braband &c  
In the yere of the Incarnacion of our lord god a thou-  
sand foure honderd sixty and foure / And translated  
and drawen out of frenshe in to englishe by Willyam 10  
Caxton mercer of p<sup>r</sup> cyte of London / at the comaudemēt  
of the right hye myghty and vertuouse Prynce hys  
redoubtyd lady . Margarete by the grace of god . Du-  
chesse of Bourgoyne of Lotryk of Braband &c /  
Whiche sayd translacion and werke was begonne in 15  
Brugis in the Countee of .Flaundres the fyrst day of  
marche the yere of the Incarnacion of our said lord god  
a thousand foure honderd sixty and eyght / And ended  
and fynysht in the holy cyte of Colen the . xix . day of  
septembre the yere of our sayd lord god a thousand 20  
foure honderd sixty and enleuen &c .

And on that other side of this leef foloweth the prologe

**W**Han I remembre that euery man is bounden  
 by the comandement & counceyll of the wyse  
 man to eschewe flouthe and ydlenes why-  
 che is moder and nourysshur of vyces and  
 5 ought to put my self vnto vertuous ocupacion and be-  
 synesse / Than I hauynge no grete charge of ocupacion  
 folowyng the sayd counceyll / toke a frenche booke  
 and redde therin many strange and meruayllous histo-  
 ryes where in I had grete pleasyr and delyte / as well  
 10 for the nouelte of the same as for the fayr langage of  
 frenshe . whyche was in prose so well and compen-  
 diously sette and wreton / whiche me thought I vnder-  
 stood the sentence and substance of euery mater / And  
 for so moche as this booke was newe and late maad  
 15 and drawen in to frenshe / and neuer had seen hit in oure  
 englyssh tonge / I thought in my self hit shold be a good  
 besynes to translate hyt in to oure englyssh / to thende  
 that hyt myght be had as well in the royaume of Eng-  
 lond as in other landes / and also for to passe therwyth  
 20 the tyme . and thus concluded in my self to begynne this  
 sayd werke / And forthwith toke penne and ynke and  
 began boldly to renne forth as blynde bayard in thys  
 presente werke whyche is named the recuyell of the  
 troian historyes And afterward whan I remembryd  
 25 my self of my symplenes and vnperfightnes that I had  
 in bothe langages / that is to wete in frenshe & in englyssh  
 for in france was I neuer / and was born & lerned myn  
 englyssh in kente in the weeld where I doubte not is spo-  
 ken as brode and rude englyssh as in any place of eng-  
 30 lond & haue contynued by the space of .xxx. yere for the  
 most parte in the contres of Braband . flandres holand

and zeland and thus whan alle thyse thynges cam  
to fore me astyr that y had made and wretyn a fyve  
or six quayers . y fyll in dispayr of thys werke and  
purposid no more to haue contynuyd therin and tho  
quayers leyd a part and in two yere astyr laboured 5  
nomore in thys werke And was fully in wyll to  
haue leste hyt . tyll on a tyme hit fortunied that the ry-  
ght hyghe excellent and right vertuous prynces my  
ryght redoughted lady mylady Margarete by the  
grace of god suster vnto þ<sup>e</sup> kynge of england and of 10  
frāce . my souerayn lord Duchesse of Bourgoine of  
lotryk . of brabant . of lymburgh . and of luxenburgh  
Countes of flādres of artoys & of bourgoine Pala-  
tynee of heynawd of holand of zelād and of namur  
Marquesse of þ<sup>e</sup> holy empire . lady of ffryse of salius 15  
and of mechllyn sente for me to speke wyth her good  
grace of dyuerce maters among þ<sup>e</sup> whyche y lete her  
hyenes haue knowleche of þ<sup>e</sup> forsayd begynnyng of  
thys werke whiche anone comanded me to shewe  
the sayd . v . or . vi . quayers to her sayd grace and wh- 20  
an she had seen hem . anone she fonde a defaute in myn  
englissh whiche sche . comāded me to amende ād mo-  
re ouer comanded me straytli to contynue and make  
an ende of the resydue than not translated . whos dre-  
defull comādement y durste in no wyse disobey becau- 25  
se y am a seruāt vnto her sayde grace and resseiuē of  
her yerly ffee and other many goode and grete benefe-  
tes . and also hope many moo to resseyue of her hye-  
nes but forthwyth wente and labouryde in the sayde  
translacion astyr my symple and pour connyng also 30  
nigh as y can folouyng myn auctour mekeli beseching



the bounteous hyenes of my said lady that of her benyuolence liste to accepte & take in gree this symple & rude werke here folowyng . and yf ther be ony thyng wreton or sayd to her playfir . y shall thynke my labour well employed and where as ther is defawte . <sup>5</sup> *p<sup>e</sup>* she arette hyt to *p<sup>e</sup>* symplenes of my connyng whiche is ful small in this behalue and requyre & praye alle them that shall rede this sayd werke to correcte hyt & to hold me excusid of the rude & symple translacion  
<sup>10</sup> And thus y ende my prologe . . .

Here foloweth *p<sup>e</sup>* plogue of that worshipful man Raoul le feure whiche was Auctor of this present book in the ffrensh tonge .

<sup>15</sup> **W**Han y behold & knowe the oppynyons of the men nourisshyd in ony synguler hystories of Troye and see and beholde also that of them to make a recuyel or gadryng to geder . y indigne haue resseyued the comandement of the ryght noble and right vertuous prynce . Philippe by the grace of *p<sup>e</sup>* maker of alle graces . Duc of borgoyne of lothryk of <sup>20</sup> Braband and of Lymbourgh . Erle of fflaunders of Artoys and of Bourgoyne . Palatyne of hey-nawd of Holland of zeland and of namur . Marquys of *p<sup>e</sup>* holy Empyre Lord of fryse of salyns and <sup>25</sup> of mechllyn . Certes y fynd ynowh for to thenke on for of *p<sup>e</sup>* hystories wherof y wyl make *p<sup>e</sup>* recuyel . Alle *p<sup>e</sup>* world speket of them by bookes trāslated out of latin in to ffresh a grete dele lasse than y ne shalle trete And some ther be *p<sup>t</sup>* replye a gayn their pticuler bookes <sup>30</sup> wherfore y fere me to wryte more than her bookes

make mencion . But whan y confydere poyfe & weye  
 the dredfull comandement of the forsayde redoubtyd  
 prynce whyche is cause of thys werke not for to cor-  
 recte the bookys late solempnly tranſlated . but onely  
 for to augmente y yelde me obeiffaūt . ād for theſchu- 5  
 yng of the laſſe euyl that y may . y ſhall make thre  
 bookes . whiche put in one . ſhall take for name the  
 Recuyell of the troiā hiſtoryes . In the fyrſt booke  
 y ſhall trete of Saturne and Iupiter . and of the  
 begynnyng and comyng vp of Troye . and of þ<sup>e</sup> ſfee- 10  
 tes of perſeus . In the ſeconde booke I ſhall trete of  
 þ<sup>e</sup> labours of hercules . reherſyng by two tymes how  
 he deſtroyed Troye and in the thyrde booke I ſhall  
 trete of the laſte and generall deſtruccion of troye by  
 the grekes . by cauſe of the rauyſſhyng of dame hela- 15  
 yne wyfe of menelaus . and y ſhall put to the ſfeetes  
 and grete prowefſſes of worthy hector and of hys  
 brederē . wyche ben worthi and digne of grete memo-  
 ry and alſo y ſhall trete of the merueilo<sup>9</sup> auentures  
 and paryls of the See þ<sup>t</sup> cam vnto the grekes in their 20  
 retornyng . And of the deth of the noble kyng agame-  
 non that was duc of the Ooſte And of the grete for-  
 tunes of kyng vlixes and of his meruail<sup>9</sup> deth Soo  
 y requyre and ſuppley hym that is cauſe of this werk  
 And alle them that ſhall rede hyt for teſchewe ydle- 25  
 nes . that ſo rudely haue put my penne vnto the hiſto-  
 ries afore named . that hit pleſe them not onely haue  
 regarde vnto my pour conſayte . but alſo to þ<sup>e</sup> obſcure  
 and derke abiſme or ſualowe where y haue gadryd  
 them to gyder . by obeyſſaūce And vnder alle ryght 30  
 humble correccions . .

1 The begynnyng of this book sheweth the Genela-  
gye of Saturne and of the paccion and promys  
that he maad to his broder Tytan . and how he toke  
4 warre mortel agayn Iubyter his owen sone . .

**W**Hat tyme alle the Children of Noe  
 were sprad bi the Climates . regnes  
 and strange habitacions of þ<sup>e</sup> world  
 By the general dyuyfyon of tonges  
 maad at the fondacion of the tour of 5  
 babilon in tho dayes that the world  
 was of gold And þ<sup>t</sup> the men in thoo  
 dayes were stedfast & poyfing as montaynes and  
 Rude as stones ad bestes . enhaunfing their grete cora-  
 ges foulyng and shewyng their grete cōfaytes And 10  
 that þ<sup>e</sup> Enemye of man Induced maliciously to prac-  
 tique townes Cytees and Castels to make ceptres  
 and diademes and to forge and make the curfid sect  
 of goddis Among þ<sup>e</sup> possessours of þ<sup>e</sup> yle of crete ther  
 was a riche man enhaunfed full of .couetife happy of 15  
 auentureufe enterprife & right riche of the grace of ffor-  
 tune some men callid thys mān Celion & some men  
 vranus he was laweful sone of Ether sone of demor-  
 gorgon the old dweller of the Caues of archade and  
 first begynner of þ<sup>e</sup> fals paynems goddes This vrā<sup>2</sup> 20  
 had to hys wyf hys owne fuster called vesca He li-  
 uyd gloriously wyth her & had possession of þ<sup>e</sup> most  
 parte of þ<sup>e</sup> yle of crete & habonded prospfly in world-  
 ly goodes en encrefing his naturel appetites ffirst in  
 encrefing and ampliacion of worldli lordship and 25  
 feignorye ad secondlye in lignage & was merueillo<sup>2</sup>  
 riche he had two sonnes that is to wete Tytan & Sa-  
 torn and two daughters that oon was called Cibelle  
 and that othir Ceres of whom schall be maad menci-  
 on here after & he had many othir sonnes & daughters 30  
 of whom y make no mencion for as moche as they



be out of my pourpos what shall y reherce more of the  
glorye of this vranus he had alle thyng as he wold  
and was fortunat and nothyng went agaynst hym  
his goodes multyplied his chyldren grewe and encre-  
5 sid but Tytan the eldest sone was ffoul . euyl fauou-  
rid . and counterfet And saturdaye was merueylleusly  
fayr and amyable for whiche cause vesca the moder  
louyd moche better saturdaye than tytan And that by  
nature ffor naturelly the moders loue better her fayr  
10 chyldern than her fowle wherfore saturdaye was nori-  
fhyd most in the lappe of his moder And tytan was  
put out and in maner bannysshid And whan saturdaye  
was grete what for his beaute and for his cunnyng  
and scyens and other vertues he gate the hooll loue  
15 of all the peple . .

In thys tyme hyt was so that whatsomeuer man  
practyqued or fond ony thynges prouffitable for  
the comyn welehe was recomanded solempnly and  
called and named a god after theyr folyssh and  
20 derke custome Saturdaye was named a god ffor  
in hys yowth by hys cunnyng he was the fyrst  
ffyndar to gyue instruccion of eeryng and labou-  
ryng the erthe and of sowyng and repyng the cor-  
nes And thys inuencion was applyed to saturdaye  
25 wyth dyuyn reuerence . wyth loue vpon loue not  
onely anenst vesca and vranus and hys kynnes-  
men but aboue mesure ayenst all the peple of crete  
and of the marches and contrees lyng by and  
ther abowte And thus hys name aroos and was  
30 renommed that from all places men and chyldren

nobles and vyllaynes cam to his scole for to lerne . I-  
n these dayes þ<sup>t</sup> Saturne began thus to floure & was  
xx . yere of age and his broder . xl . Vranus their fader  
by a sekenes that he had dyed and deptid out of this  
world leuyng his wyf Vesca endowed largely of 5  
posseffions . his deth was noyous and foroufull to  
Vesca his wife . whyche causid her to wepe out of  
mesur and his fones and doughtirs also they dide his  
obsequye reuerently in habondyng of grete and bittir  
sorow . the obsequye doon ther wepyng and sorow 10  
yet during vesca saw Tytan her eldest sone pre-  
tended to haue and enioye the succeffion of his ffader  
she on a day callid her der sone Saturne wyth Ty-  
tan and other of the Contre and there reherced & said  
vnto them that her yong sone Saturne shold succede 15  
and haue the herytages of her husbond Tytan heryng  
the wyll of hys moder redoublid hys sorow and cau-  
sid hym to wepe grete plente of teeris and knelyd to  
fore his moder humbly and sayd in thys wyse Moder  
y am ryght infortunate whan ye wyll that my right 20  
patrymonye be put from me And that naturelli me  
ought to haue by ryght shold be gyuen fro me and  
y at because þ<sup>t</sup> y am not so well formed of membres  
as my broder satorne ys whiche sorow is to me pas-  
syng noyous ye wil putte from me my ffortune and 25  
burthe whiche ye may not do by lawfull reson y am  
your first sone ye haue norysshid me wyth þ<sup>r</sup> substāce  
of your blood as your chyld born in your bely . ix . mo-  
nethes Also y am he that first dwellid and enhabited  
your femynyn chambres None to fore me toke there 30  
ony seafyng whan y toke that tho ye gaf me your due

loue and fortyd to me the succession of your heryta-  
ges Than whens cometh thys that ye now subuerte  
and destroye that nature hath ones ioyned and gy-  
uen me . euery moder is bounden to hold the conser-  
5 uacion of the ryght of her chyld Alas moder ye wil  
make me bastard fro my ryght Am y a bastard  
was not vranus my fader . am not y he that ye were  
so glad fore what tyme ye felte fyrst that y was  
conceyued in the lawful bede of my fader your huf-  
10 bond . am y not he that ye bare and gaf me souke  
of your brestes and oft tymes kyft me that is to saye  
in my tendre dayes what tyme my membres were  
softe and tendre . ha moder acquyte yow ayenst me  
as ye beholden and bounden by ryght and knowle-  
15 che ye þ' y am tytan and for as moche as y am lasse  
& not so well adressyd as my broder saturdaye for so  
moche ye ought þ<sup>e</sup> more desire my pmocion & furthering

20 **W**han dame vesca herd her sone tytan speke so  
sadly and perfoūdely she had pyte on hym  
yet the pyte was not of so hye vertu that  
myght surmount the grete loue that was roted by-  
twene her and saturdaye . and than she sayd to tytan  
her sone Tytan my sone y forsake not þ' thou tokeft  
thy substance bytwene my sides . & by me wer brou-  
25 ght in to thys world and knowe veryly that y lo-  
ue the entierly and that y desire thy wele but hyt is  
so clere and euydent in euery mannes sight that for the  
deffault . lothlynes . and abhomynacion of thy membres  
thou art not a man sufficyent for to deffende thy fa-  
30 dres herytages with grete labour & payne ffor yf hit



happend that ony man wold make warre thou were not able to resiste hym what woldest thou that I shold do thy broder hath the loue of all the peple for his beaute & hys vertueuse manieres And euery man holdeth hym in reuerence and the in derision & skorne. be 5  
 thou contente thou shall lakke no thyng And yf thou lakke . speke to me and y shall remedye hit but speke neuer no more to me for the heritage ffor Saturne shall obteyne by the sauour of hys wysedom mekenes and benyngnyte & also be cause the comyn voys 10  
 luggeth hym and seeth þ<sup>t</sup> he shall ones by the man of whom hys lyf shall shyne glorioufli . .

**T**ytan was sore troublid of the wordes of hys moder and he began to chaunge colours and wex reed hauyng suspecion to saturne 15  
 that he had contriyed this mater agaynst hym wherupon he drewe hym apart to hym and sayd Saturne thenuye that thou hast to regne aboue me hath now engendryd in my hert thy mortal myschief wherof the hate shall endure vnto the mortal separation of thy lyf and of myn & of my children Thou knowest wel þ<sup>t</sup> y am the eldest sone of our fader vranus hou art thou so hardy and psumtuo<sup>9</sup> tenhanse thi selfe aboue me by conspyred ymaginacion y wyl 20  
 that thou knowe verily that lyke as thou hast conspired in my temporel damage semblably y shal conspire to thy eternal damage and hurt and name me from hens forth thy mortal enemye Whan saturne herd these brennyng and enflamed menasses of hys broder tytan he excusid hym selfe and answerd that he 25  
 neuer thought in his lyf to come to the succession of



ther fader ner neuer had ymagyned ner conspyred hit  
Than vesca ther moder Cybelle and ceres toke the wor-  
des fro saturne and said to Tytan that his thretenyng  
to saturne was for nought ffor he shold regne and  
5 be lord and maistre . Tytan full of ffelony and more  
angry than he was to fore sayd playnly þ<sup>t</sup> he shold  
not suffre hyt Saturne had a grete parte of the pe-  
ple that assysted hym and gaf hym fauour And ty-  
tan also had other on hys syde whiche began to mur-  
10 mure that oon partie agaynst that other Alle the com-  
panye was fore troubled and began to threste in and  
employed them to fece the noyse and to acorde tytan  
notwythstandyng yf hit was hard to doo for alwey  
he wold haue ronne vpon saturne yf he had not be-  
15 hold and letted Allewey in the ende the wyse men  
shewed tytan by grete refon that he was the more  
feble and that saturne was more in the fauour of the  
peple and that he wold modere hym self a lytill  
and sayd that he shold agree and graunte the regne  
20 to saturne by condycion That yf he maryed . he shold  
be bounden to putte to deth alle hys Children males  
that shold be begoten of hys seed yf he ony had ffor  
the wele of bothe partyes Vesca wyth her dough-  
ters and the Auncyent wyse peple accorded to Tytan  
25 thys condycion And laboured so to Saturne that  
they brought them to the temple of theyr god Mars  
that was in the Cyte of Oson wherof was lord  
a myghty man callyd Mellyseus and that a fore the  
ymage of god mars Saturne swore þ<sup>t</sup> yf hym hap-  
30 pid to marye And that he had ony chyltern males

he shold flee hem alle and thus was Tytan content  
that hys broder shold enioye þ<sup>e</sup> lond of Crete and þ<sup>e</sup>  
pees was maad betwene hem boothe . .

¶ How saturne was crowned first kyng of Crete &  
how he fond first diuerce science wher fore the peple  
held hym in grete honour as a god . 5

A .Fter the trayttee maad of the pees of Tytan  
and Saturne Tytan syhe in hym selfe þ<sup>t</sup> he  
myght not worshipfully abide and dwelle beyng  
vnder his yonger broder had leuer goo and ferche his  
auentures in other places than to be thral to his yonger  
brother . he toke his wif his children & frendes . and  
departid at alauenture in dyuerce places . wher he  
fond ffortune so good and happy . þ<sup>t</sup> by armes and  
strenght he made hym selfe kyng of many diuerse roy- 15  
almes . whiche he departid vnto his children And  
commyfed & ordeyned certayn espies to espye and  
wayte yf his broder Saturne married hym selfe &  
yf his wife broght forth men children and whether  
he put hem to deth . Duryng these sayd thingis . saturne 20  
ne dwellid wyth his moder and his susters Cibelle  
and Ceres . And began to regne wyth so grete magni-  
ficence that they of the contre seeyng their neyghbours  
by them dide do make and ordeygne kynges to regne  
on them . of fuche as were noble and vertuous . assem- 25  
blid to gider on a day and maad saturne kyng vpon  
them & vpon theyr lynes And crowned hym wyth  
grete glorie with a Crowne of lawrer with grete  
ioye . saturne anon toke & acceptid this rial honour  
and worship and toke the ceptre in his hand & bare 30  
the crowne on his heed & regned meurely indusyng

his peple to lyue honestly & to loue vertu and ordeyg-  
ned a naked swerd to be born afore hym in sygne of  
iustyce . he dyde iustyce on malfacteurs and enhaunfed  
them that were good . he dyde do bylde a cyte whiche  
5 he named Crete because the yle bare þ<sup>e</sup> said name and  
was the fyrst enhabiteur & dwellar . and whan he had  
founded the cyte he ordeyned his palais & dwellyng  
place in the myddel their of in example as þ<sup>e</sup> hert is in þ<sup>e</sup>  
myddes of the body to mynystre to the membres so he  
10 wold ensigne & mynystre his peple . & after this he cho-  
se an honderd & foure wyse men whiche he institued  
and ordeyned counceillours and gouernours of his  
royame & than they of Crete seeyng þ<sup>e</sup> right grete wyse-  
dom of their kyng . assemblid to gyder dyuerce tymes &  
15 named hym a god and yet more they founded vnto  
hym a temple . an awter & an ydole beryng in that oon  
hand a zickle in signyfiance that he destroyed the vices  
in suche wyse as the zickle cuttyth herbes & destroieth  
the wedes . And in that other hand he held a serpent þ<sup>i</sup>  
20 bote his tayll for as moche as saturdaye said that euery  
man shold byte the tayle of þ<sup>e</sup> serpent that is to saye  
that euery man shold fferre and flee þ<sup>e</sup> euyll ende . ffor  
the ende oftymes is venymous as þ<sup>e</sup> tayle of a serpent  
And that apperyth yet dayly by þ<sup>e</sup> ende of many euyll  
25 dysposed and enuyned men.

**B**Y the moyen of these thynges the renomee  
of kyng saturdaye grewe And the worlde  
was that tyme of gold . that is for to  
saye hyt was moche better and more  
30 haboudant in the dayes of mannes lyf and in



plente of frutes of the erthe than in ony other tyme after  
The poetes by thys colour compared the world at that  
tyme to gold whiche is moſte precyous of alle metals /  
how well dyuerce men ſaye that ſaturne was the fyrſt  
man that fonde the maner to melte metall and to affine 5  
gold and made hys veſſell & vtenſilles of his hows of  
dyuerce metall . And vnder thys colour they figured at  
that tyme the worldes to ben of gold / Than began the  
men by the doctryne of ſaturne to uſe and were gold to  
myne the roches / to perſiſhe the montaignes perillo<sup>9</sup> / to 10  
haunt the thorny deſertes / to fyght and adaunte the or-  
gyllous ſerpentes / the fiers dragons / the dedely griffons  
the monſtrowous beſtes / and to ſprede a brood theyr  
worldly engyns . By theſe excerciſes was than ſaturne  
the fourbeſſhour and begynner of the ſtyle / to lerne 15  
men to take all theſe beſtes / And fyrſte fonde the maner  
of ſhotyng and drawyng of the bowe / Of this gold  
maad ſaturne hys hows . his chambres and halles to  
ſhyne by meruayllous werkynges / He was ſtronger  
and hardy / and he had no feer ne doubt of no ſerpent 20  
of the montaigne ner of no monſtre of deſert ner of beſte  
dwellyng in caues . He knewe the vaynes of gold in  
the erthe and coude decerne them from vaynes of ſyluer  
He edefyed ryche thynges of gold ioyous vnto the eye  
fyght / and hoot and courageous to the herte / flor at 25  
that tyme the courages by pardurable fyre chauffing the  
affecciions of man in maner of a contagious heet ſo ſyn-  
gulerly that after alleway that they coueyted / they de-  
fyred to accompliſh . In this tyme of the golden world  
the creatures lyuyd and endured gretly and longe . 30  
And alle the world laboured in edyficacyon of ſcyence



and connyng of vertue / And that tyme were the men  
more vertuous in bodyly edyfyng than euer they were  
fyn / Amonge alle other Saturne was neuer ydle after  
that he had ones laboured the cornes In erynge and  
5 sawyng / He malte and fyned gold and metalles and  
enduced and taughte hys men to drawe the bowe and  
shote / He hym self fonde fyrste the bowe and the ma-  
nyer to goo and saylle by the see and to rowe with ly-  
tyll bootes by the ryuage and toke his owen playfir for  
10 to endoctrine and teche hys peple in alle these thynges  
and he had grete abundance of wordly goodes / refer-  
uyd onely he dorste not marye : and that he had sworne  
to putte to deth alle the men children that shold come of  
hys seed / wherof he was oftyme anoyed and hadd  
15 grete displayfir &c.

¶ How Saturne wente to Delphos and hadd an-  
swer how he shold haue a sone that shold chace hym  
oute of his royame / And how he maryed hym to hys  
suster Cybell &c.

20 **W**Han Saturne sawe hys palays floryfhe  
and shyne of gold and sawe his peple obeye  
hym / sawe hys goldsmythes and werkers  
breke the montaignes with her pikois and In-  
struments . sawe his maryners cutte the wawes of the  
25 see wyth theyr Oores . sawe hys dyscyples lerne and  
laboure the erthe . sawe hys Archers shote wyth her  
arowes and smote and toke the byrdes dwellyng in  
the hye trees and fleyng by the ayer / He myght embrace  
grete glorye and enhaunse in hye hys Trone and hys  
30 felicyte / but on that other syde whan he remembryd

the trayte made betwene hym and his broder Tytan  
he was lyke vnto the pecok that is proud of the fayr  
fethers diuersly fair colourd wiche he spreded roound  
as a whele and wyth all only loke of hys feet he le-  
feth all his ioye. Saturne in like wise by this traittye 5  
loft alle his ioye his glorye & hys plaifance. he was  
long tyme ledyng this lyf now ioyous now sorow-  
full growyng alwey and encrefying his Royāme  
and daily thought & poyfed in hym selfe yf he myght  
marye or not ffor no thyng in the world he wold 10  
falso hys oth. he was iust & trewe in dede & in word  
Neuertheles. nature meuyd hym & cyted hym to haue  
generacion and to come to compaignye of woman  
And this meuyng was at all tymes refrefhid and  
renewed by a contynuel fyght that he had dayly in 15  
a passyng fayr mayde. þ<sup>t</sup> is to wete his suster Cibelle  
whiche he saw continually in whom was no deffaul-  
te of alle þ<sup>e</sup> goodes of nature apperteyning to woman  
She was owt of mesure ryght humble in spekyng  
wyse in her werkes honeste in conuersacion & flow- 20  
ryng in alle vertuys. and for this cause Saturne  
behelde her oftymes. And so happend on a tyme as he  
beheld her affaires and werkes. he caste his eyen on  
her vertues that plesid hym so gretli. that in the end he  
was desirous of her loue wherof his moder vesca had 25  
grete ioye and pleasir. and she pceuyng of the desyr  
of Saturne. gaf hym courage & wyll to marye hym  
and so laboured and folicyted the mariage so effect-  
elli þ<sup>t</sup> wyth grete worthyp and triumphe Saturne  
spousid & wedded Cibelle his suster after their vsage 30  
and she was þ<sup>e</sup> first Quene of Crete. he liyng wyth

her payeng in this wyfe þ<sup>e</sup> dew dette of maryage that  
at thende of . ix . monthes Cybell had a sone whiche  
faturne dyde do put to deth acquytyng hym self of the  
oth that he had maad vnto hys broder tytan And  
5 of thys sone bochace maketh no mencyon . but they  
laye to gyder agayn and cybell conceyued than of the  
feed of faturne another sone with a doughter that by  
space of tyme apperyd grete in the moders bely . .

10 **I**N thys tyme whan the lawe of nature was in his  
vygour and strength the men maryed wyth her suf-  
ters . and in especyal the paynems yf they were not  
content and had souffisance of oon wyf they myght  
take moo wyth out reproche Whan faturne knewe  
that hys wyf was wyth chyld the second tyme . the  
15 deth of hys fyrst sone cam to fore hym and sayd in  
hym self that he wold that hys wyf had ben barayne  
Tho he began to be ful of dyuerce fantasies and of  
sorowfull thoghtes and desyred to knowe what  
shold befall of the fruyt of the wombe of Cybell  
20 He wente hym self forth in to the yle of delphos vn-  
to the Oracle of the god Appollo that gaf answer to  
the peple that they demaunded of thynges that shold  
after falle and happene And than whan he had don  
hys sacrefyce and maad his prayer The preste of the  
25 temple put hym in to a pcloos vnder þ<sup>e</sup> awter of þ<sup>e</sup> for-  
sayd ydole And there he herd a grete whirlyng wynd  
that troublid hym and all his wytte and vnderstan-  
dyng that he was in maner of a spafme or a swowne  
by whiche he fill to groūd And after þ<sup>t</sup> whan he aros



hym thought that the god appollo apperid vnto hym  
wyth a dredfull face & said thus to hym . Saturne  
what meueth þ<sup>e</sup> to will to knowe thyn euyll deſtyne  
Thou haſt engendrid a ſone that ſhal take from the þ<sup>e</sup>  
diademe of Crete and ſhall banyſſhe the out of thy  
royame And ſhall be with out pere about alle peple  
the moſt fortunat man that euer was borne in Grece  
Aſtir theſe wordes Saturne cam agayn to hym ſelfe  
and remembrid hym of this euyll prophecye that tou-  
ched the botom of hys herte and ſo fore anoyed and  
right penſyf he wente out of the oracle wyth a trou-  
blid herte and al bare of gladnes and al oppreſſyd  
and enuironed wyth wanhope cam to his folk and  
departid thens and went to ſhip and whan he was  
in his ſhip he henge down his heed whiche he held not  
vp tyl he cam to Crete . and whan he had hys heed ſo  
enclined he began to thynk and be penſif And after  
many right ſorowful ſyghes engendrid in þ<sup>e</sup> roote of  
malencolie ſaid in this wiſe . helas ſaturne pour kyng  
what auayleth me the dignyte to be the firſt kyng of  
Crete . wat prouffytten me the dyuine reuerences . ner  
what good do me my ſcience whan y ſele me in þ<sup>e</sup> put-  
tyng a back of fortune O fortune ſone torning fraile  
and varyable & ployng to euery wynd lyke a roſier  
at leſte areſte that the whele þ<sup>i</sup> torneth wyth oute end  
may ſpeke to me ſaturne the inuentor and ſfynder of  
the comyn wele And if þ<sup>u</sup> wilte not lene mi this clere &  
lawhyng viſage at the leſte lene me thy large ceres  
Thou haſt gyue me triumphe and glorie of Corowne  
and now thou ſuffreſt me to falle fro this grete wor-  
ſhypp the goddes wytnes hit And what is this thou



haft consentyd my prospyte and now conspyrest my  
mendycite. my fall and shamefull end . and enten-  
dest that y shall be named the vnhappy saturene yf  
all my lyf hath ben nouryshyd in happynes . & the end  
5 vnhappy and wofull y shall be callid & said vnhappy  
And alle my happy fortunes and ewres shall torne  
more to reproche and shame than to preysyng or to  
ony worshyp O ffortune in what thyng haue y offen-  
ded . haue y foughten agyn the . or haue y doon ony fo-  
10 lye agayn the magnyfycence of the goddes Haue y re-  
bellyd or offended the ayres . the worldes . the heuenes  
the planets . the sonne . the mone . the erthe . the sees  
what haue y don or trespass . telle me O my god whe-  
re art thou . hast thou enuye to me be cause that y haue  
15 ben in thoracle of the forsayd god appollo He hath  
shewyd vnto me the ruyne of my ceptre the ffrouf-  
syng and brekyng of my dyademe the troubling of  
the clernes of my regne . the enhaunsyng of my chylde  
And the puttyng me out of my royame that shall  
20 pcede of his insurreccion . alas what remede to this grete  
forow þ<sup>t</sup> y haue . y haue slayn oon of my soones where-  
fore y haue grete and bitter forow and haue concluded  
in my self that neuer here after wole so cruelly spyll  
the lyf of my chyl dren for to dye wyth hem After  
25 thys conclusyon y muste of verray force and fore aga-  
ynst my will retorne and contynue in my fyrst vn-  
naturell cruelte . ffor yf my sone that now is in the  
wombe of my wyf be suffryd to lyue he shall exyle  
me & put me out of my royame and doun of my trone  
30 whiche shal be to me ryght hard and peysant to bere  
and suffre pacyently And therefore hyt is better y

fle hym Alas and yf y fle hym than hit semeth me y  
shold resiste the wylle of the goddes whiche perauen-  
ture will reyse hym agayn And that shold be worfe  
for than y shold not only be callyd an homycide and  
mansleare but a vnnaturel murderer . not of a geant 5  
nor of a strange man of a nother land but of a right  
litil Child yffued of my propre vaynes bones and  
flessh . that after the prenosticacion of the goddes is p̄-  
electe and chossen to be the grettest lord of grece and  
souerain of all the kynges in his tyme. 10

S Aturne thus selyng hym in grete sorow & trow-  
ble and alwey wors & wors as a fore is sayd  
began to chaunge his colowr & wex pale ful of malen-  
coli & of fantasies & cowde not appese his vnfortune  
his mošte preuy men & they that were most famylier 15  
wyth hym durst not approche vnto hym seyng his so-  
rowful maner they were disconfort in his desolacion  
forowful with his sorow . & angry wyth his anger  
he was in short tyme so gretli pturbed and so inpres-  
sed wyth so eygre inpression of sorow that his face 20  
was lyke vnto ashen or as he had be ded alwey af-  
ter many thoughtis he opend his mouth & spake all  
softly . y fle my self by malencolye & am a man gretely  
abused y haue mad an oth vnto my broder Tytan þ<sup>t</sup>  
y shall put all my children male to deth that shall co- 25  
me of my flessh Parauenture the goddes wole not  
suffre that y shal be forsworn . and haue late me haue  
knowleche by my god appollo þ<sup>t</sup> my wyf hath con-  
ceyued a sone that shall put me out of my Royame  
to that end that y shold flee hym ffor as moche as y 30  
had concluded in my self to haue broken myn oth &

haue spared the lyues of my chyldren . ffor as moche  
as hyt is so y shall no lenger spare them yf hit happen  
that my sone be borne a lyue . certayn he shall be put  
to deth . ffor hit is better that he dye a chylde . than he  
5 shold wexe a man and wex rebelle ayenst me . and  
enhaunse hym self aboue me by hys malyce insurrec-  
cion or other wyse . .

**I**N this wille this sorowful saturdaye retourned in to  
his hous contynuyng in thys estate and sorowfull  
10 syghes and melancolyous fantasies in such wyse  
that Cybell durst not come in to his p̄sence nor coude  
not gete of hym a ioyous syght wherfore he gate hym  
a surname of sorowe And was named Saturne  
the tryste or sorowfull . and hit was so that whan  
15 he had be in his hous certayn space . and sawe the day  
approche that his wyf shold be delyuerid of chylde  
ffor to execute hys sorowfull courage he calld hys  
wyf and said . dame hit is so apparaūt that shortly  
thou shalt be delyueryd of the ffuyt of thy wombe  
20 yf thou be delyuerid of a sone y comaunde the vpon  
payne of deth . that thou flee hym . and that thou sende  
me his herte And whan Cibell hard these wordes  
and this rigorous and innaturell volente and will  
anon she fell to the ground a fwoone . ffor her leg-  
25 ges sayled her And in the releuyng of the fwoun she  
kneled to fore the feet of saturne and saide on thys  
wife . fyre haste thou no shame that will be husbond  
of a woman murtheryng her owen child I the requyre  
of mercy and grace . besechyng the to haue regard that  
30 y am thy wyf and haue the hert of a woman and not  
of a tyraunt or a murderar Dame answerd saturne



requyre me no more of thyng towchyng thys mater  
hit is iuggid by a forseene and counterpeysed sentence  
þ<sup>t</sup> yf þ<sup>a</sup> haue a sone he shall be ded . ffor y haue promy-  
sid & sworn so to my broder Tytan And aboue thys  
y haue answer of the god appollo that in thy wombe 5  
is a sone that shall caste me out of this royaume And  
therefore see that at his birth he be ded . as dere as thou  
louest thi lyf & also as y haue said send me his herte  
medled wyth wyn that y may drynke hit And how  
fyre Answerd Cibelle knowest not thou that y am 10  
a woman and by propre and synguler inclinacion y  
haue a verray loue to smale chyldren and must gyue  
hem to ete & souke O wenest thou that y haue an herte  
so diuerce as for to foylle my handes wyth the blood  
of my sone y pray and requyre the to revoque thy sen- 15  
tence and be pietous to thy wyfe & generacion Thou  
art wyfe after þ<sup>e</sup> iugement of thy peple in this partye  
thou shewyst thy selfe not good ffor be thy oth thou  
art not bounden ner holden to sle thy sone hou wel hit  
is trouth that alle othes maad agayn good maners 20  
ought not to be holden ffor to flee thy sone hyt is a vi-  
layn caas and contrarye to honour . reson . pyte . equyte  
and iustyce hit is synne ageynst nature ageynst vertu  
and ageynst all good maners Than thy oth for to sle  
thy sone is noght . and thou oughtest anulle hyt thou 25  
that art kyng . and that vpon payne of deth defendest  
thy peple to make murdre or homycyde . by thys thou  
that art myrour and example to other oughtest to be  
content and appease thy selfe And me semeth on that  
other side that thou interpretest and construest cuyll þ<sup>a</sup> 30  
sentence of god appollo sayng þ<sup>t</sup> y haue in my wombe



a sone that shall put the out of thy kyngdome ffor by  
this hit ought to be vnderstande that the sone that y  
bere shall ouerlyue the and put the so out of thy kyng-  
dome . that is to saye in thy sepulture the day that thou  
5 shalt departe out of this world And yf this may not  
appefe the . yf hit so happen that y haue a sone . thou ma-  
yfte do hym to be kept in a strong towr And there to  
sette fuche warde upon hym that he shall neuer be of  
power to enhaunfe hym self agayn the . .

10 **S** Aturne had tho the herte passyng grete . that  
for semblable compassion Vesca the moder Cy-  
bell and Ceres wepte and gaf out grete plente  
of teres And in like wyse all the assistentes that were  
in the place wepte out of mesure haboūdantly . yet ne-  
15 uertheles hit myght not softe nor attempre the hard  
comaundement of kyng saturdaye But in conclusion he  
said to Cibell that she shold no more procure the res-  
pyt of the lyf of his sone . but he shold be ded & she al-  
so with hym yf she dide not his comāndement . With  
20 this sorowful conclusion Cibell deptyd from thens all  
in a traunse half ded castyng abroad her armes & han-  
des wyth grete excesse of teres that ran lyke a ryuer  
from her tendre eyen . entrid in to a tour . her moder that  
desolate lady folowed her Sshe beyng in her chambre  
25 forfrusshid and all distemperid of sorowe began to  
trauayle anon & was delyuerid of a doughter and of  
a sone . the doughter was born to fore the sone And  
was sente by Ceres and born to norysse in to the Cyte  
of Perthemye and was named Iuno And the sone  
30 began to laughe at comyng out of hys moders wombe  
and was named Iubyter . . .

When Cibell and vesca sawe þ<sup>e</sup> childe lawhe  
theyr teeres began to growe double. and they  
had not taken grete regard & hede to the chylde  
what tyme Cibell all angrie and corrupt wyth  
wanhope wyth a syghe & feble speryt sayd to her mo- 5  
der. ha my moder what pietous caas shal this be now  
gyue me a sharp cuttyng knyfe and y shall murder  
my sone by innaturel errour agayn my wyll And  
after this vyllayns dede for my absolucion of þ<sup>e</sup> grete  
synne y shall murder my self also. & this is myn oppy- 10  
nion ffor after so cruell a dede & werk notwithstan-  
dyng ony excufacion y wyll neuer lenger lyue The  
moder of Cibell was tho all be wepte and gretli dif-  
mayed whan she herd the ayer of the tendre mouth of  
her doughter redounde in her eres of so hard a cruelte. 15  
she beyng all affrayed sayd to her. my doughter what  
thynkest thou to doo. art thou enraged out of thi witte  
or folyssh My moder answerd Cibelle ye veryly. y  
am verily as ye saye. enraged out of my wytte and  
folyshe. and yet more y am furio<sup>us</sup> and wood. make 20  
me no lenger to languyshe. gyue me þ<sup>e</sup> curfid mortal  
knyfe forgyd in an euylle houre ffor of force me muste  
obeye the kyng. saturene your right wel belouyd sone  
my ryght redoubtid husbond þ<sup>e</sup> hath comaundement  
ouer me. and will schamely put me to deth yf y acom- 25  
plyssh not and fulfille his comaundement in the deth  
of his sone whiche he hath chargid me to flee.

None as vesca consideryd that her doughter  
said and in the errour þ<sup>e</sup> she was in. she toke  
the chylde that was in her armes & pluckyd 30  
hyt from her by force And alwey the chylde laughed



whan Cibell fighe her sone in the armes of her moder  
as a woman araged and out of her wytte she began  
to crye that she shold flee the Chyld or gyue hyt her  
agayn . or ellis she wold aryse out of her bed and go  
5 playne to kyng Saturne After thise wordes Vesca  
delyuerid the child to a damysell of the hows that  
onely was there with hem . & bad her that she shold  
go flee the child in the presence of Saturne or in som  
other place out of theyr sight The poure damysell ex-  
cused her . and Vesca gaf her in comaundement and  
10 charged her wyth grete menasses that she shold go  
forth and take the chyld and the knyf and flee hyt  
And so by the comaundement of these two ladies she  
toke the knyf many tymes and put hit to the throte  
15 of the child for to cutte hit a sonder and alwaye the  
noble child laughed at the knyf And whan the damy-  
sell saw this that hyt was innocent she myght not  
fynd in her hert to do hit ony harme In this sorow and  
in this payne and varyacion Vesca . Cibell and the  
20 damoyfel were a longe tyme Now they iugged hym  
to deth and put the knyf to his throte . and sodeynly  
the damoyfell reuoked hit and swere that she wold  
neuer be psecutereffe of oon so fayr a child & thus than  
began all thre to wepe & sobbe bewaylyng the child  
25 by so grete affeccion that hit was pyte to here After  
this whan they had longe wepte & sobbed & bewailed  
the tendre wepyng & payne of Cibell they began alityl  
to attempre their hert And began to retorne to moderly  
pyte Cibell called her that held the child & requyred  
30 her petoufly þ<sup>t</sup> she wold gyue her . her sone to kyffe &  
hold in her armes . promyttyng that she wold do hym

none harme The damoyfel that wyft not what fhold  
falle delyuerd her . her tendre chyld And than whan  
Cybelle beheld her child with her face all bewept &  
alle diftemprid wyth teris ſhe kyffed his laughyng  
more than an . c . tymes and cam agayn to her 5  
nature knowlechyng her fyn and began to faye My  
chyld y had been wel infortunat yf y had taken thy  
lyf from thee y haue contended thi deth . my right fwete  
fone Alas that y pſecute the after the wyll of thy fa-  
der kyng ſaturne . hyt is his comaundement & y owe 10  
hym obeyſſance yf y obeye the culpe and synne is due  
to hym . yf y obeye not y make my ſelfe culpable of  
deth . a what is thys ſhalt thou dye by my handes . by  
the handes of thy propre moder ha ſhall thy moder be  
thy marterar . ſhal thy moder be thyn enemye bitter & 15  
mortall aduerſarye for doubte of deth . y wot not  
what to faye but wole y or wole y not thou art my  
fone . euery moder loueth her chyld . how may y hate þ<sup>e</sup>  
hyt is moche better that y dye than thou . y have liuyd  
longe ynowh . and thou art now firſt borne veryly þ<sup>u</sup> 20  
ſhalt not dye at thys tyme . y ſhal ſaue thy lyf or y  
ſhal dye for thy helth . requyryng the goddes mercy  
of the euyll wyll that y had ayenſt the .

¶ How ſaturne had comaunded to ſle Iupiter þ<sup>i</sup> was  
new born & how hys moder cybelle ſente hym to kyng 25  
mellifeus wher he was noriſhid .

The right ſorowful lady after this cam better to her  
ſelf and toke hert to her & kyffed her chyld þ<sup>i</sup>  
alwey laughed . and veſca beheld her contenance all  
newe . & ſatte down on þ<sup>e</sup> bedde ſide where her doughter 30  
laye . there they two began to ſpeke to geder of ſaturne



and of the ffortune of this child and that he had ben  
in grete auenture And pmyfid that oon vnto that other  
that they wold faue the child vnto her power After  
this pmyffe in the ende of dyuerfe pourpofes they con-  
5 cluded to fend this child secretly vnto the two dought-  
tres of kyng Mellifeus . the whiche vesca had noriff-  
hid in her yong age Of these two doughters that oon  
was named Almachee and that other Melliffee This  
conclusion fully fynysshid & taken . Vesca lappid and  
10 wond the child as hit ought to be And delyuerid hit  
vnto a damoyfell beyng there p̄sent with all thynges  
and gaue her charge to bere hit secretly vnto almachee  
and Melliffee The good damoyfell enterprisid the said  
charge and deptid out of Crete with the child at all  
15 auenture And so worshypfully guyded her that she  
brought the child leuyng in fauete to the cite of Oson  
whiche she p̄sentyd to Almachee and Melliffee . reher-  
fyng how vesca had sent hym to hem for the grete loue  
and truste that she had in hem And how saturne had  
20 comaunded that his moder shold flee hit .

**A**none as these two damoyfelles sawe the child  
and vnderstoode how Saturne had iuggid hit  
to deth . they resseyued hit wyth pyte and in fa-  
uour of vesca . And promysid to nouryssh hit in the  
25 secretest and best wyse that they mochte And forth-  
wyth the same oure they bare the chyld vnto a mon-  
taygne that was nyghe to the Cite wher in dwellyd  
theyr nouryce in a depe hole of a Caue whyche was  
rychely entaylled and coruen wyth Chyfell & other  
30 dyuerce instrumentis And than they sent agayn the  
damoyfell that brought the chyld in to Crete In this

maner was the lyf of the chyld faued Almache and  
mellifec noriffhid the child wyth the melk of a goot  
ffortune was to hym more propice and helpyng than  
nature . what shall y faye in the begynnyng whan he  
was put in the caue as his nouryces on a day fawe 5  
him wepe and crye by his ppre inclinacion of chyld-  
hood be caufe he shold not be herd . they toke trompes  
tympane and cymbales and maad them to fowne so  
gretly that a gret multitude of bees ffleyng aboute the  
montaygne herd theyr soun . and wyth this soun en- 10  
trid in to the caue and toke an hooll by the chyld fle-  
yng aboute hym wyth out ony greef or harme doying  
to the child . and yet more they maad there hony wher-  
of the child ete and was noriffhed from thens forth  
whiche was a merueylous thyng Allewey for tachi- 15  
eue the mater begynnyng of the damoyfel þ<sup>r</sup> had born  
thys child theder whan she cam agayn she reherced to  
dame cybell and vesca all her besoyne & werk . and  
gaf hem a ryght grete c<sup>o</sup>fort towchyng þ<sup>e</sup> child Than  
the two ladyes by meur deliberacion toke and abbeste 20  
whiche is a precious stone & brayded hit in to pouldre  
and after that they medlid hit wyth wyn in a cuppe  
of gold . and dame vesca bare hyt to her sone saturne  
& she habowndyng in bitter teres all bewept sayd to  
hym My sone thy wyf hath sent to the this drynke 25  
knowe thou veryly that she this day hath rendred &  
yelden þ<sup>e</sup> fruyt of her wombe a sone and a doughter she  
hath sent the doughter to nouryshe in to the cite of par-  
themye but in the obeyng of thy strayt comaundement  
we haue defetyd the sone & put hym to deth . of whom 30  
the body the flesh & the lityl tendre bones been now



torned in to affhis And she hath sent here to the . the  
right noble herte temprid in wyn whiche y present to  
the . to thende that thou do thy plesir And be no more in  
doute by thy sone to be put out of thy Royame .

5 **A** Non as Saturne herd the petous wordes of  
hys moder vnderstandyng the newe tydyngis  
that she said & shewd hym . he began to frowne  
and sayd in this maner O pyte with oute pyte Ne  
ought not my herte be terryble angry . and restraynd  
10 with pressurs of sorow whan hit is force that to myn  
hert this present hert yssued of his blood and rootes be  
gyuen in mete and pasture for to estaunche the descoue-  
nable hunger of myn inhonest desire Thise wordes ac-  
complissid Saturne was gretly displeid and full  
15 of renewyng of sorow . drank the drynke . wenyng  
that hyt had ben as his moder had done hym to vnder-  
stonde And after went in to his chambre . and there be-  
gan to be gretly in melancoly And after that forthon  
he purposid and trowed to abstayne hym self to paye  
20 his wyf the deu dette of maryage but as ther is no so-  
row that ne ouer passeth . by space of tyme he forgate  
his sorow And lyyng with his wyf engendrid an  
other sone . Whiche she sauyd like as Iupiter was sa-  
uyd . how well that Saturne charged her to put hym  
25 to deth And this child was born to Atthenes . where  
he was kept and norysshyd & named Neptune yet af-  
ter this he laye wyth his wyf & engendryd an other  
sone & a doughter . whiche at time couenable were born  
and depted from their moder but at this tyme she told  
30 not of her sone but hid hit from saturne whiche sone  
was named Pluto & she dide hit to kepe in the parties

of Theſaylle that afterward was named hell . and  
for to content her huſbonde ſaturne when ſhe was de-  
lyuerd of theſe two childern ſhe ſent to hym her doughter  
whiche was callid glanta and ſhe dyed in her ten-  
dre yeres And thus of all theſe generacions ſaturne 5  
ſuppoſid þ<sup>t</sup> non had be referuyd but Iuno his doughter  
to whom he wente oftymes to viſite in Parthemye  
where he dide hit to be nouriſhid wyth many noble  
virgyns of her eage . and alſo many auncient gentyl-  
wymen to enduce and teche hem gentilnes and vertu 10  
but of all them y wyl a while tarye now & alſo of  
Iupiter . neptune and pluto and now y wyl ſhewe  
how dardanus put his broder Iaſius to deth for coue-  
tyſe to rengne in the cyte of corynthe . and how he dep-  
tid out of corynthe & how he ſette the fyrſt ſton in þ<sup>e</sup> cy- 15  
te of dardane which afterward was named troye

**¶** How after the deth of kyng corynthus of corynthe  
his two ſones dardanus and Iaſius ſtrof who of  
them ſhold haue þ<sup>e</sup> kyngdom and how dardan<sup>o</sup> flew  
his broder iaſius by trayſon wherfore he moſt depte 20  
out of the contre .

**I**N this tyme whan crete began to be a royame and a  
kyngdome and was in poſſeſſion of their fyrſt kyng  
the ſame wyſe in the cyte of corynthe which ſtant in  
naples regned Corynthus theyr fyrſt kyng . and corin- 25  
thus had to his wyf oon of þ<sup>e</sup> daughters of kyng Ath-  
las of libye named Electra . they regned to geder and  
achieued proſpſly theyr lyf . they leſte after hem two  
ſones wherof that oon was named dardanus and  
that other iaſyus . ſome ſaye that this dardan<sup>o</sup> was 30  
ſone of Iupiter but bochace trowed he was lawful



fone of Corynthus as hit apperith in the sixte book of  
the genelagye of goddes Dardanus than and Iafius  
after the deth of theyr fader Corynthus and of her mo-  
der Electra wold succede in the royame & in no wyse  
5 they coude accorde Dardanus had an hihe & hauntayn  
courage and Iafius in like wyse . they argued and  
stroof to gyder that oon ayenst that other often tymes  
of this mater . and conspired and made secretly menaf-  
ses vnder couert in fuche wyse that Dardanus on a  
10 day assemblid all the peple that he coude gete for to be-  
spryng & destroie his broder iafius and his frēdes whiche  
were tho assemblid in a secrete place for to treete þ<sup>e</sup> pees  
and to see hou they myght contente & plese Dardan<sup>o</sup>

15 **W**Han Iafius sawe hys broder come all in ar-  
mes. all his blood began to chaunge . & seeyng  
that his broder was esmeuyd & full of euyll  
will demyng that his mater shold torne to grete myf-  
chief . he ascried and saide Alas what auayleth for to  
speke and counceyll & seke menes of pees betwene my  
20 broder & me . we ben betrayed . lo here is my broder that  
cometh vpon vs all in armes . eche mān saue hym self  
that may With these wordes Dardanus cam in to the  
consistorie smote his broder vnto þ<sup>e</sup> deth & said Iafius  
thou maist not abstayne thi self from thy machynacy-  
25 ons Thou hast enhaunfed thy self ayenst me . but now  
y shal make an ende of the Iafius fill down ded among  
the feet of hys frendes And ther Clothes were all be-  
sprenct & be bled of his blood Whan the frendes of Iafi-  
us saw this tyrannye they saued them self as well  
30 as they coude to their power and fledd from thens all  
araged Than Dardanus retorned to the riall palays

and the frendes of Iafius gaderd them ad wente to armes and made a noyse and murmure fo grete that in a lityl space alle the cyte was strongly troublid for the deth of Iafius . whiche was gretly in the grace and fauour of all the peple of corynthe . ffor whan they 5 herd reherced the deth of Iafius they toke grete sorow and manaced dardanus to deth . and forthwyth in effect they assemblid by grete rowtes in the stretes & sayd oon to that other Alas now is ded the loue of coryntheus that had more amytie & loue to the comyn 10 wele than dardanus . late vs goo and auenge his deth Gowe & punyshe the malefaeteur . late vs no lenger tarye we shall do a meritorye werk who that euer doth iniustyce & tyrannye is not worthy to be chyef & heed of clemence ner of iustice . yf we suffre a murd- 15 rer to reygne vpon vs . neuer shall ther good come ther . of . wher the heed is seke or euyll þ<sup>e</sup> membres may not be hoole ner good . dardanus hath slayn his broder iafius wrongfully . hyt is vray semblable that he shall flee vs after his wyll . late vs take from hym his puif- 20 sance . and late vs shewe that we be men destroyers of vyces and enemyes vnto all them that seken and engenderen tyrannye in her courages . .

**S**Vche were the clamours of the coryntheus by suche noyse and semblable clamours they 25 chauffyd them selfe and in the end assemblid in oon place . and were ful of ardent appetyt to correte the malefaetour dardanus . and his complices In this tempest & swellyng ffurour they went to the pallais where dardan<sup>us</sup> had put hym self for refuge but they 30 fonde the yates shytte and coude not entre in to hyt



wherefore they assieged the place making a grete  
noyse and so grete tempeste that dardanus was abas-  
shid . and anon he assemblid hys frendes and axed  
them their councel They answerd and sayd that he  
5 and they were in grete auenture and paryll and that  
the peple so meued myght not lightly be appefid . and  
for this they said hym saue thy self and vs also with  
the . thou hast slayn thi broder Iasius whom the peple  
louyd merueyllously for his benyugnyte . the trespaa-  
10 is grete . syn hit is so don the best wey ought to be ta-  
ken we counsell the that thou leue this palais . and  
ffynd maner to yssue out and we shall folowe the  
and goo wyth the and serche our auentures in other  
landes ffor hit shall be grete payne by possibilite euer  
15 to contente and appese this peple . how well that it is  
so that the Corynthieus be terryble to all them that  
they haue in hate and in despyte .

**D** Ardanus heryng these wordes began to sighe  
and considered that he moste departe from his  
20 Cite by his myssait culpe and desert he smote  
hym self on the brest and sayd Ha ffortune vnsted-  
fast what is me befalle My handes ben foule and fil-  
thid with the blood of my lafull broder . the infur-  
reccion and the rebellyon of my peple hangyng to fore  
25 myn eyen hit is force that y flee for to saue my lyf . &  
purpose to lyue of rauayn & thefte . What meschuncé  
what euyl happe is this . syn hyt is so y yelde me fugy-  
tyf and shall go my way at alauenture be hyt . Whan  
the ffrendes of dardanus had vnderstande that he was  
30 concluded and purposed to saue his lyf . they ioyned  
to hym & appoynted to gyder that the next morn in the

first krekyng of the day they wold departe from the  
pallays . & take thauenture to passe by theyr enemyes  
sayyng that yf they myght ascape they shuld go to þ<sup>e</sup>  
ryuage of the see and take the kynges barge . and all  
they sware to helpe and accompanye eche other vnto 5  
the deth The nyght passyd the day aperyd . and than  
dardanus that had not restyd that nyght to his plesir  
but had wacchid wyth his armed men and were re-  
dy to take thauenture that the goddys and fortune  
wold gyue and send hem yssued out of þ<sup>e</sup> pallays & 10  
found the most parte of his enemyes a slepe he thref-  
tyd a mong the vyllayns & passyd forth wyth lityl  
resistence . that notwythstandyng the wakyng of the  
coryntheus he cam to his ryal shipp & toke the see & sau-  
vid them self . wherof þ<sup>e</sup> coryntheus had grete sorowe 15

**W**han dardanus sawe that he was so quyt of  
the fureur of þ<sup>e</sup> coryntheus he wente saylyng  
by the see and descended first at the port of þ<sup>e</sup>  
cyte of Samos beyng in Trache . and there vytaylled  
hym and went to see agayn . and arryued in Asye in 20  
a quarter wher þ<sup>e</sup> land was ioynnyng to the see of hel-  
lespond . and fyndyng this land right good & fruyte-  
full for to enhabite . he made there his habitacion And  
there sette the first stone of a ryght grete cyte that he be-  
gan and after achieued This cyte was that tyme na- 25  
med dardane after the name of dardanus but after-  
ward hit was callyd Troye . dardanus peupled &  
fyld his cyte wyth men and women whiche he gate  
by swetenes and sayr promesses . and that other pte  
he conquerryd by force theste & pillerye . he made hym 30  
self kyng of dardane & dyched the cyte aboute wyth



grete diches After longe tyme he passyd out of thys  
world and dyed . and leste a sone of his wif . Can-  
dame that was second kyng of dardane This kyng  
was named Erutonium and regned seuyn & fourty  
5 yere en augmentyng and encrefying his Cyte and pe-  
ple And at last consumed the end of his yeres . and  
regned after hym Troos his sone This Troos was  
the thirde kyng of dardane and was a stronge man  
fiers and hardy en armes . and encrefyd gretly hys  
10 seygnourye and his Crowne in so moche as the dar-  
danyens said that ther was no kyng but Troos . and  
named them troians And thus was Troyes enhaun-  
ced more than all the royames of Grece so hihlye  
that the kyng Tantalus of ffrigie had grete enuye . and  
15 gaf his hert & courage how he myght anulle and put  
doun þ<sup>e</sup> name of Tros that was his neighbour and be-  
gan tessaie to bryng hit doun as here after shal be said .

**¶** Of the grete werre þ<sup>i</sup> was meued betwene the pela-  
giens & the Epiriens and how kyng lichaon of pelage  
20 was destroyed by Iupiter . by cause of a man put to  
hym to ostage . whiche kyng lichaon did do rost . .

**T**he wise & subtyl virgyne Menerue as saint  
austyn reherfeth shewid her self in this tyme by  
the stagne or riuer callid triton by the gretenes  
25 and subtilte of her engyne . ffor she fonde the maner to  
forge & make armes . and to this purpos Ovide reher-  
ceth that she had foughten agayn a geant named Pal-  
las and slewe hym by the flood of triton In the same  
tyme that the armes were founden And the sciences  
30 of Mynerue were practiqued by all the world a fiers  
descension engrendrid bytwene the Epyriens and the

pelagiens þ<sup>r</sup> after were named archadyens And here  
 of maketh mencion bochace in the fowrt book of the  
 genelagye of goddes . amonge the pelagiens regned  
 that tyme a kyng named lichaon eldest sone of Tytan  
 the epiyens than enterprysed vpon the pelagiens and 5  
 so maad that a right grete noyse aroos and soured  
 ffor whiche cause they assaylled eche other by fete of  
 armes so felounous and aspre that booth parties suf-  
 fryd many fowle mortall shoures than the wyse  
 men of Epire sawe thys warre so disolute and that 10  
 they of their partye had iniustly and vnrightfully at-  
 tamed and begon thys warre . they knowlechid their  
 fault & went to the kyng lychaon beryng braunches  
 of Olyue in signyfiance of pees and loue . and hym re-  
 quyred that he wold condescende to acord and pees of 15  
 bothe peuples Lichaon consideryng that his peple had  
 as moche lost as wonne by this discension . and that  
 bataylles were perylous Accorded to thepiryens the  
 pees by condicion . that they shold delyuere hym oon of  
 thyr moste noble men suche as he wold demaunde for 20  
 to be his seruauant a space of tyme in token that they  
 had vnryghtfully engendrid this discencion The epi-  
 ryens consentid this condicion and delyueryd to kyng  
 lychaon in seruitude the most noble man a mong them  
 and thus ended the warre . 25

**T**He terme and the tyme drewe ouer þ<sup>r</sup> thepiryen  
 seruyd kyng lichaon his due tyme . and than  
 whan the tyme was expired the epiyens af-  
 semblid them to geder and by deliberacion of counceyl  
 sent an Enbassade to lichaon for to trete the delyuer- 30  
 ance of thepiryen Thise enbassadeurs departyd from



Epire and cam to pellation & shewid to the kyng how  
their man had seruyd as long as he was bounden and  
requyred hym that he wold rendre and delyuere hym  
and ratefie the pees . to that end that euer after that  
5 they myght be the more frendes to gyder . Whan lichaon  
that was hard of courage fiers & euyl vnto all men  
and also vnto his owen peple vnderstood the wordes  
and requestes of the epiyens he had grete sorow and  
angre in hym sylf and sayd to them with his mouth  
10 thynkyng contrary with his hert . that on the morne  
he wold seeffe hem and haue hem to dyner and than  
he shold doo lyke as they had demaunded with these  
wordes the epiyens departed ioyously fro the presence  
of kyng lichaon . and on the morn cam to the feste  
15 that was richely ordeynd and maad for them in gret  
plenteuousnes whiche was ryght fayr at the begyn-  
nyng . and in the ende right foul and abhomynable . for  
whan hit cam to the performyng of the feste . the kyng  
lichaon roos from the table & went vnto the kechyne  
20 and there toke the body of thepirien his seruauant that  
he had murdrid the same nyght . and all rostid and  
soden brought hit in a grete plater to the feste and pre-  
sentid hit to thepiyens sayng . lo here is thepirien that  
hath seruyd me whiche was cause of the escheweyng  
25 of the ruyne and perdicion of epiyre . y said yestherday  
that y shold delyuere hym thys day take hym who so  
wole y discharge me and put my handes from hym  
and wole hym no more .

30 **A**lle they that tho were p̄sent as wel his f<sup>o</sup>uauntis  
as strangers As well epiyens as pellagiens had  
anon grete horroure whan they herd and vnderstood

the wordes of kyng Lychaon and had grete shame &  
 fureur to beholde fo hounteufe and abhomynable  
 werk and oultrageous synne . and were fo troubled  
 that the blood wente fro their faces and leyde their han-  
 des afore their eyen . as they that abhorred to behold the  
 pour martir Epiryen And ther was no mān wyfte  
 what to faye of the infamy of the kyng lychaon vn-  
 nethe . whan the kyng fawe them fo troubled and that  
 euery mān began to frowne and grugge a part . he lefte  
 hem & wente from thens vnto his chambre And than  
 every mān rofe fro the table abhorryng & efchewyng  
 the fente and fauour of the dede mān And wold haue  
 departid and goon their way all confufe . ne had ben  
 Iupiter the fone of Saturne whiche the Epiriens had  
 brought with them in their legacion and enbaffade for  
 as moche as he was a fair child . able & gentill . For  
 than whan he fawe that euery mān drewe a parte his  
 waye . he putte hym felf in the myddes of thepyriens &  
 began his glorious enterprifes and faid to them in this  
 wife . O what is this . where is the blood of the Epy-  
 riens Are they bannyd out of hardynes . be they exyled  
 out of valoyr and of honnefte . whiche be the epyriens  
 that by force wole exfofe them felf to the vengeance  
 of fo foule & horryble dede This caas is not to be born  
 And the terryblete of the tyrānt lichaon is not to be re-  
 doubtyd whan hit bleuyth vnpunyfshid . ye fee that  
 the pelaygens make femblant that they be euyl payd  
 with hym he muſte be punyfshid . y faye as for me y  
 ſhall neuer haue pleaſir in my lyf tyll y ſe hym refray-  
 ned of his tyrannye . .

What tyme the Epiryens had conceyued the grete

[leaf 20]

41



courage of Iupiter that was so yonge of age . they thanked their goddes of that / that they had brought hym with hem and said to hym all with oon voys . Childe bleffid be the wombe that bare the . And bleffid be the  
5 goddes that forseyng this Iniure and wronge to vs and hath so enspyred vs for to brynge the wyth vs we had ben now with out courage hardines and will to do well and had not ben so hardy to haue taken ony terme of vengeance . Thy wordes haue awaked and  
10 envertuyed our spirytes whiche were ded and aslepe and passed by the countrepesed Infamye of the tirañt lichaon . Thy hardynes hath maad vs hardy . thy vayllyance hath maad vs vaylliant and louers of vaillyance and thy wisdom hath enlumyned vs in this cause  
15 thou shalt be conduitour and ledar of this werke and comaunder and we shall obeye vnto the &c : . .

I Vpiter answerd and sayd Worshipfull lordes and  
I sirs I am not wise ynowh for to resseyue the honour that ye do me / ner my tendre yeres shall not accepte  
20 hit . Allewey by forme of counceyle humelyed vnder alle correccion / I will well saye to yow that . that me thynketh expedient for to be doon / yf ye fynde no man faie better than ye shall do be my counceill and aduyce ye shall take this poure epyren in the same estate that  
25 he is delyueryd to yow and bere hym vnto the comyn place of this Cyte . ffor hit is this day sabate and haliday . the pelagiens ben there in grete nombre and multitude passyng their tyme wyth dyuerce playes and esbatementis / than ye shall shewe this pour ded man  
30 ffor hit is sayd that the kynge is not well belouyd with his owne people for his vnmanly werkes / this

meffect and trefpaas is paffyng foull and pyetous  
Anone as they fhall knowe what he hath doon by this  
foul werke . ye fhall wel fee yf they fhall take in this  
fynne pleasir or dysplaifir \* yf pleasir \* than hyt were  
abufe and folye for to fpeke therof for this prefent ty- 5  
me ony more . but muſte feke remedye and retorne to  
Epire . yf they take displaifir \* ye may playnly difcou-  
re your courages and prouoke and calle them to purge  
this Cryme that is fo curfid And y wene that they  
fhall right lyggtylly entende to vs and for none amytye 10  
that is betwene hym and them he fhall not domyne ner  
regne vpon hem by tyrannye .ffor he is not their naturel  
lord but he is the fone of Tytan broder of Saturne &  
is not kyng by eleccion but by force .

**A**lle they that herd Iupiter thus fpeke meruey- 15  
led gretly of hym And accorded them to hye  
counceyl in fuche wife that no man contraried  
hit ner agayn fayd hyt And fo fodenly they toke the  
murdred epiroyen & bare hym to the comyn place And  
ther they fhewid hym openly in euery mannes fight 20  
Whan the pelagyens fawe this dede man of whom the  
fkyn was ſcorched the fleifh roſted the ſenewes  
fhronken . and that the bones aperyd by the ioynturs  
they affembrid al aboute hym in grete nombre and caſ-  
tyng her eyen vpon hym they had fo grete orroure abho- 25  
mynacyon and abaffhement that her hertes trembled  
playned eche to othir and many went away for com-  
paſſyon wepte and araged trembled for angre And  
other toke duſte and pouldir and caſted in to the ayer  
in ſigne of ſorow cuttyng their clothis and ſayng and 30  
liſtyng her handes on highe O goddes almyghty what



peple ben these epiyens haue they rosted a mannes bo-  
dy And haue brought hit to fore vs . what mene they  
Are we eters of mannes flesshe / or they bryng hit to vs  
to shew the cruelte of their courage . or they come for to  
5 ete this ded man among vs for to fere vs with all : .

**I**Vpiter ther beyng awaityng & leyyng his eres and se-  
lyng with his eyen the maner of the pelagiens & their  
contenances . Conceyuyng that they condescended in the  
contempnacōn and enemyte of hym that wrought this  
10 pious werke . Whan he had herd their reafons & had  
seen their wondringes . he adressid hym self amōge them  
and said in this wise . O ye men of pelage that ye esmer-  
ueylle yow of this vnmanly & vnnaturell werke / haue  
ye not y now lerned & knowe the tirānies of your kyng  
15 lichaon . he hath murdrid this man / and this man is the  
epirien that was delyuerid to hym at the traytte of the  
pees of yow and of vs for to serue hym . lo this is the  
guerdon and reward that he hath don to hym . he hath  
tirannysed right euyll and hath don hym euyll for good  
20 O what grete Infamie is to yow . that the peple & folk  
of euery other cyte / haue regnyng on them kynges of no-  
ble men and vertuous and they be crowned by elecci-  
ons for their vertuous dedes / ye be defferent fro them &  
all of a nother nature / A Tyrant is your kynge a mur-  
25 drer an Iniuste man A synnar worthy of Infamous  
deth / and vnworthy for to be leste a lyue vpon the erthe  
Confidere ye confidere vnder whos hande ye be and how  
nyghe ye fynde your self in maladye and pareyll of  
deth . Whan the heed aketh alle the other membres suf-  
30 fren payne . Than ye may not be hool and found /  
What shulle we now doo . thynke ye & counceylle ye

vs we come to you for reffuge . & demaunde yow how  
we ought to do and behaue vs ayenst oon that is fo  
fowl a kyng as is lichaon Telle vs the verray trouth  
yf ye confesse the trouth & that ye be louers of rayfon  
iustyce and of equyte ye shall iugge and condempne 5  
hym . ye shal leye your handes and puiffances in correc-  
cion of hym and ye shall be depeffhid of his malice .

**A**Non as the pelagyens vnderstood of Iupiter  
that lichaon their kyng had commysed this vil-  
layns Cryme Also that he had presentyd to 10  
the cryepins the body of their frend so ded they beyng  
at table . they condempned his synne and murmured  
agaynst hym sayng that they wold no more be go-  
uerned and noryffhyd vnder the rodd of so peruers  
and vnfamous a tyrant And sayden to the epiyens 15  
that they wold abide by them and put them in theyr a-  
bandon . Wyth these wordes Iupiter putte hym sylf  
among the epiyens and by his hardynes amoneffhid  
them to conspire agayn their kyng . Wyth whiche con-  
spiracion acorded alle they of the cyte And the wordes 20  
of Iupiter were so agreable to hem and hys maners  
that they put in his hand the deth & destruccion of their  
kyng lichaon And to thende that he shold truste and  
haue affyance in them they put for theyr armes and  
habillemens of warre and armed them After they af- 25  
semblid aboute Iupiter and said to hym that he shold  
be their capitayne and her conduitur for tacheue this  
sayd werke . .

**I**upiter beyng ioyous of so grete an honeur and wor-  
ship excusid hym self but his excusacions had no place 30  
the epiyens and the pelagiens ordeynd & constytuted



hym heed ouer them . And he constituted in this dignyte  
fette his peple in ordre / And after did hem to marche  
toward the palays . They had not longe goon on the  
way whan they fighe kinge lychaon yssue out of his  
5 palais with grete companye of his ffrendes all armed  
as they that had ben aduertysed of the sayd conspira-  
cion maad agaynst lychaon . ffelyng that his enemyes  
cam for taffaylle hym . ffor to shewe hym self a man of  
fyers corage cam a gaynst them wenyng presumtu-  
10 ously for to haue ouercomen them . And anone as they  
began taproche . they escryed eche other to the deth  
with out other counceill . And strongly esmeuyd they  
assamblid to batayll that was right merueyllously  
sharpe . Lychaon fettet and ladd his peple / in ordre  
15 agaynst Iupiter / They medled hem hastely to geder  
wyth lytill stryf of wordes and wyth grete stryf of  
horyons and strokes . The stryf coste moche / but in es-  
peciall to lychaon . ffor his peuple were lasse in puyf-  
fance and myght . than the men of Iupiter / whiche were  
20 stronge of grete enterpryse that they fought and smote  
vpon the pelagiens and caste hem down now here now  
there so fierfly and so desmesurably that none mochte  
abyde that was afore them . Amonge alle other Iu-  
piter did wonder and meruaylles by his well doying  
25 he putte lychaon in a passyng grete Errour and noy-  
ance . And in thys grete anoye he sued passyng fast  
for to haue come ronne vpon hym . But whan the fals  
tyraūt sawe hym come and he sawe that Iupiter fette  
his strokes so myghteli . that all them that he araught  
30 were smeten down to the erthe and confounded . Than  
alle hys herte began to faylle hym / And wente hym

that other fyde and he had not long abiden there whan  
that Iupiter had vaynquyſhid and ouerthrowen the  
pelagiens And made hem to fle from the place to fore  
hym . like as hit had ben the thondre or tempeſte . .

**I**N this maner whan lychaon ſawe his complices and 5  
felawſhip in ſuche extremyte he fledde hym ſelf not as  
a kyng . but as a pour man out of comfort and hope ſo  
deſolate that he durſte take non of his complices wyth  
hym to helpe hym away nor to comforte hym . he doub-  
tyd Iupiter as the deth . he ſo ſleyng a way as ſaid is 10  
durſt not entre his palais . but yſſued out of the Cyte  
and wente vnto a grete foreſt that was nyghe by . and  
from thens forth he was a brygant and a theef And  
for this cauſe the poetes faynen that he was torned in  
to a wolf That is to ſaye he lyued as a wolf of proies 15  
and robberyes Allewey to purpos of this mutacyon  
Leoncius reherceth that Lichaon ſo ſleyng as ſayd is  
ſuppoſyd to be ſued after of Iupiter and be put to deth  
putte hym ſelf in a ryuer or a grete lake and ther ſaued  
hym ſelf . ffelyng that the water of that ryuer had a 20  
ſynguler pprete . that is to wete that the men that put-  
teth them ſelf in the water ſhold be torned in to wol-  
ues for the terme of . ix . yere And the . ix . yere exſpired  
yf they wold putte them ſelf in the water after that  
agayn they ſhold recouure a gayn their firſt liknes And 25  
ſo hit myght well be don . for lychaon putte hym ſelf in  
to the water and was tranſumed to a wolf by the  
ſpace of aboueſaid . and lyuyd of theſte and pillerye  
in the wodes and foreſts waytyng oftetymes how the  
pellagiens gouerned them ſelf And in the ende whan 30  
he had accompliſhid his penaunce He retorned in to



the ryuer and toke agayn his mannys forme & know-  
lechyng that the Cyte of pelage myght neuer be reco-  
uerd . and than he retorned poure and myschant vnto  
his fader Tytan / of whom I shall tarye a lytill . And  
5 shall telle how Iupiter began to be Amerous on Calis-  
to doughter of the said Lichaon &c : : .

¶ How Iupiter after the disconfiture of kynge Licha-  
on transformed hym self in guyse of a relygious wo-  
man of the goddesse deane for the loue of calisto dough-  
10 ter of the said lichaon and dide with her his will : : .

A .Fter the discomfiture of kynge lichaon whiche  
was transformed in guyse of a wolf and be-  
gan to be a rauysfheur of the substance of men  
of the contre . Eter of her children and murdrer of wilde  
15 bestes that he oste tyme assaylled by rage of hunger  
whiche constrayned hym to cherissh & kepe his myse-  
rable lyf / whan the Epiryens syghe that Iupiter had  
vanquysfhid their enemyes And that he abode maistre  
in the place / they brought hym with grete Ioye and glo-  
20 rye to the palais And foughte longe lichaon / ffyrst in  
the place where the bataile had be . And after that in the  
chambres of the palais / but they fonde hym not quyk-  
ner ded ner coude here no tydyngis of hym / and hit hap-  
pend that as Iupiter sought hym thus from chambre  
25 tochambre / he fonde in the hiest tour the doughter of the  
kynge lichaon named Calisto / whiche was passyng  
fayr yonge and fresshe of coloure / the damoyfell be-  
wepte right sorowffully the losse of her fader whiche  
she had all newly vnderstonde . whan Iupiter sawe  
30 her so desolate and discomforted . he sette hym down by  
her & said / damoyfell comforte your self & speke to me

and sece your wepyng Alas fyre sayd the damoyfell  
 how shold y recomforte my self the Epiryens hau  
 slayn the kyng my fader . ought y to take complacion  
 in this ruyne . ought y not be angry . ought myn herte be  
 wyth out sorow . my stomake with out sighes and  
 myn eyen with out wepyng an . C . thousand infortu- 5  
 nes trauerse my body and corrompe me And y se me  
 so poure a gentyl damoyfel doughter of a kyng . that  
 y desire more þ<sup>e</sup> deth than lyf and am more in wanhope  
 than in hope. . 10

**W**Han Iupiter knewe by the wordes of this da-  
 moyfel þ<sup>t</sup> she was doughter of kyng lychaon  
 he had more grete pite of her than he had before  
 for as moche as she was doughter of the kyng and  
 said to her Damoyfel appese your hert . y wote well 15  
 that hit is force that nature acquyte hym self . but ye  
 ought to considere þ<sup>e</sup> inordinate werkes of your fader  
 whiche ye ar bounden to bewayle . he was lasse reso-  
 nable man than a kyng ought to be . he is not ded he  
 hath put hym self in som place secrete to saue hym self 20  
 his synnes were to infamo<sup>s</sup> . and who shal beplayne  
 & sorow hym The goddes & fortune haue suffrid the ra-  
 baishement & casting down of his pride & of his tirānies  
 hit is a rightwys thyng that ye take & haue pacience in  
 his rightwis aduersite . ffor his demerytes gyue yow 25  
 cause to take pacience where as nature enclyneth yow  
 to vnpatience And ye ought not to be in pacyent for his  
 rephension and castyng down . ffor like wise hyt is so  
 that the losse of tyrañt torneth alle a contrey to ioye  
 O than conforte your self damoyfell the oultragious 30  
 synnys ner the vnmanly furours of your fader nor his



shamefull dedes shall no thyng be dampnable vnto  
yow ner torne to yow preiudice . nor no man shal mis-  
faye ner do to yow . ner attouche yow in any maner  
wyse I yow assure certaynly &c : : . .

5     Syre answrd the mayd I thanke yow of your  
courtoysies and of the fayr wordes / wyche  
ye profere and saye vnto me I wote well  
that my pouerte hath maad me indygne and vnwor-  
thy / but whan I see that the Infortune of my fader is  
10   irrecouerable & that his Infelicite hath no recourance / I  
renonce the world and pray yow that hit plese yow  
to trete for me vnto the epiens that I myght goo yelde  
my self in to the relygion of dame Deane the noble vir-  
gyne / doughter of the wise Iupiter somtyme kynge of  
15   Actyque and born in this londe / where vpon ought to  
be rememberid . that right auntyently yssued out of pel-  
lage a wyse noble man . named Iupiter / of whom bo-  
chace maketh mencion in the first booke of the genelagie  
of goddes / whiche Iupiter was kynge of actyque / for  
20   as moche as he Introduced the peple to honest lawes  
and dide first do ordeyne and halowe maryage . ffor to  
fore that tyme the acticyens married hem not / but vsed  
women in comyn . And of this Iupiter cam a doughter  
named Diane . the whiche willyng tabide in thestate  
25   of virginyte maad a Cloistre in the wood of Archade  
where she assemblyd many virgyns that passed her  
tyme with huntyng and chacyng the wild bestes . ffor  
to torne to purpos this noble virgyne deane lyvyd the  
same tyme of the subuersion of the regne of lychaon /  
30   whan Iupiter vnderstood of calisto that she wold yelde

her filf with the vyrgyns . he behelde her and said vnto  
her And how damoyfell be ye so dispeyred for a litil  
tribulacion that toucheth not your persone ye be yong  
and fayr amonge none of yow that so go in to religy-  
on may growe no fruyt of children Aduyse yow wel 5  
hit were better that ye abode amonge the worldly pe-  
ple that enplenysfh the world Many women and  
also men entre in to religion in their youghth that repente  
them in their age Syre said Calisto tempte me no more  
yf ther be ony gentilnes in yow resseyue the praier and 10  
request of oon so desolate & infortunat gentyl woman  
more desirous of the helth of my fowle than of tempo-  
rel plaifirs Duryng these deuyses Iupiter beheld with  
out cessyng this damoyfell & coude not y nough com-  
playne her beaulte . for as moche as she wold in to re- 15  
ligion wyth grete payne whan he had herd her an-  
swers and had seen how swetly she had taken hit and  
wold not be torned fro her wyll he said to her that  
her requeste shold be accomplisfid . Than he called the  
epiriens and requyred them that they wold be content 20  
to suffre this virgyne entre in to religion What shall y  
say the Epiriens put the requeste in the will of Iupi-  
ter And Iupiter did so moche that she was conduyte  
and led in to the religion of virgyns After he serchid  
all the palais of kyng lichaon . and maad thepiriens 25  
to sease his riches And there Iupiter abode a certayn  
tyme wyth so grete worship that the pelagiens and  
the Epiryens wold haue crowned hym to ben their  
kyng but he wold neuer consente ther to as he that con-  
sidered ouer his yonge age . and the variacions of for- 30  
tune . And said that hit auaylleth more to a man . and

is to hym more sure to be maad kynge in his olde age  
than in his youghth for the dyuerce parylls that may  
fall. Alleway he accorded that he wold be Capitaine  
of the royaume And was a man of grete Iustice swete  
5 and debonnayre vnto all manyer peple &c ::.

**T**His was the first comyng vp of this right no-  
ble Child . whan he had submysed to his play-  
fance the pelagiens / he beryed thepirien that li-  
chaon had murdrid as hit is said afore . And did his  
10 obsequye solempnly And after he dide do brenne in to  
asshen the pelagiens that had ben slayn in the helpe of  
lichaon. And after that he sent word and did alle  
these thynges to be knowen and shewed to the Epy-  
riens that were leste at home in Epire as to the kynge  
15 Mellifeus . wherof all the epiyens . And the kynge  
mellifeus gaf thankyngis vnto theyr goddes. But  
for as moche as I muste telle all after this he gaf not  
his herte and courage so moche to accomplissh these  
thynges . but þ<sup>t</sup> otherwhile he gaf hym self to remembre  
20 and to thynke on the beaulte that he had seen in the re-  
ligyose Calisto wherof the sparkles of loue enuyron-  
ned strongly his herte / in suche wyse that day and  
nyght he wisshed hyre in his armes . And repentyd  
hym that he had consentyd that she wente in to rely-  
25 gion And so laboured in thys manere that his reste in  
the nyght was taken from hym and was bastard  
for the franchise of her courage . & so encrefid he to loue  
and desire this virgine . & for to see her he made his passe  
time to haunte þ<sup>e</sup> woddess & continuelli to hunte þ<sup>e</sup> wild  
30 bestes in the forest wyth dame deane . wherof fortune



and auenture suffrid otherwhile that he recountrid & mette the mayde Calisto . And whan he had ones seen her that day he was all enioyed And yf he sawe her not . he had aboundance of many thoughtes that ran redely in his intendement . y may not alday tarye on thys 5 mater . he thoughte ynowh how he myght come to the grace of this religieuse Calisto And all thoughtes reduced and brought in to on he concluded on a day in hym self that he wold putte hym in the habite of a relygiouse woman & wold go in to the cloystre of dame 10 diane . faynyng to be a woman and requyryng to be resseyued with the virgyne .

**T**His conclusion taken and ratefied Iupiter by many deliberacions in dyuerce daies he dide do make hys womans clothyng by a secrete 15 werkman . whiche promysed hym to kepe his secretes whan his clothyng was maad . he assemblid thepiryens in an euenyng & toke his leue of them for a certayn time sayng that he wold goo allone for to do certayn secrete thynges . Thepiriens were all dismayed and de- 20 solate whan they herde thentencion of Iupiter And prayed to the goddes that they wold conduyte and spede hym in his iorney . requyryng hym instantly þ<sup>t</sup> he wold retorne shortly agayn to them . And he promysed hem that he so wolde And than he withdrewe hym in to 25 his chambre and toke the keies of the grete gate . and on the morn betymes whan he was arayed and adoubyd in the vesture & clothyng of a mayde . he departyd from thens alone and entrid in to the woode & so exploytid that he cam to the habitacion of the relygiouse maydens 30

**I**Vpiter had yet no berde and was whyte and fayr



colourid in the visage / whan he cam in to the relygion  
 he knocked at the yate . And than cam to hym a pas-  
 syng fayr mayde named Athalanta that after was  
 wyf vnto the kynge Melleager of Achaye . And she  
 5 demaunded hym what he wold . Iupiter answerd No-  
 ble virgine Alas I am a poure woman of a noble hous  
 I haue auowed to the goddes my virgynyte . I pray  
 yow that ye wole presente me vnto the lady of this  
 place . tothendethat I myght seruethe goddess and be of  
 10 the nombre of the other virgyns . and yf hit plese the  
 goddes I shall deserue hit anenste yow . Athalanta me-  
 uyd of compassion in the mayde . accorded hym his re-  
 queste . And presentyd hym to dame Deane . Iupiter  
 spake also swetly and demourly . and made so humble  
 15 and femenyng manyers . that he semed proprely to be a  
 mayde . Diane behelde hym well and longe . And said  
 that she had neuer seen so fayr a mayde ner so grete  
 and than welcomed hym and resseyued hym Than Iu-  
 piter thanked dame diane of her grace and athalanta  
 20 of her courtoisie . and had good hoope in his enterpryse  
 whan he sawe hym self so sone resseyued wythout  
 knowyng . Than Iupiter began to lerne spyne and to  
 werke in the filke and to done the excersitees of maidens  
 And hit became hym as well as he had ben a mayde / he  
 25 was humble and of folitary conuersacion . he labou-  
 red with his handes . with his eyen and his herte . with  
 his handes he mad corporell werkes . with his eyen he  
 beheld oftetyme secretly the beaulte of Calisto . And  
 wyth his herte ymagynyng and edifyng how and  
 30 by what mene he myght begyle and deceyue Calisto  
 And ofte tymes conuersid & felawshipt with her &c

**H**ys hert was alwey in right grete payne other  
while he was meuyd with grete heuynes . and  
otherwhile in conforte and hope to spede well  
and wiste not what to saye ner doo . for as muche as  
shame and drede were more in hym than hardynesse . 5  
what shall y saye more . he was long in this payne .  
more douteuous and shamefast than hardy . but in the  
ende he auentured hym self And fflyndyng on a day  
Calisto beside a well where she refresshid her as she  
that was wery that had ronne longe with dame dea- 10  
ne chassyng than & huntynge a wilde beste . he sat hym  
down by her and said My suster Calisto y me yelde to  
the and to thy grace . y am a man & nothyng woman  
thy beaute hath ouercomen my corage for to come to þ<sup>e</sup>  
poynt where we be now . y haue clothid me lyke a 15  
woman and a mayde . Alas y require the that thou ref-  
seyue me vnto thy loue so shal we lyue to gyder in the  
religion And we shall take our deduytes and plesan-  
ces . a man hath nothyng in this world but his lyf .  
They that haue more than that . they be so moche more 20  
eureus and happy . Thou hast withdrawen the hether  
for displysyr . and lofest thy flourisshyng yougth . Ca-  
listo y can not ynowh complayne ner bewaile this do-  
mage . y may not preyse the ynowh . y haue ben so desi-  
rous to fynde the in secrete place . that the force of my 25  
will hath ben mescried . and þ<sup>i</sup> y have enterprised this  
auenture hopyng in fortune þ<sup>i</sup> she shall gyue me grace  
and suffre oure yougthes to be vsed to gyder secretly  
ffor we may comune to geder þ<sup>i</sup> oon with that other  
with out knowyng of ony parfone not only in the 30  
chambres but also in the busshes of this woode O my



suster take hede what I saye . And as I resseyued and  
exhaunced late thy prayer / I pray the resseyue and-ex-  
haunce my requeste without desdayn of hym that thou  
mayst see . is verray louer of the &c : \* : \*

5 **W**Han Calisto had herd Iupiter and knewe  
that he was a man . she was alle affrayed /  
and roose vp wenyng to haue fledd . but she  
myght not . ffor Iupiter helde her faste by her clothyng  
and maad her to sytte down by hym . Clippyng her a-  
10 bout<sup>e</sup> the nekke and kyssyng her by force . so moche  
that Calisto ascryed and said . O Iupiter what folye  
is this . wenest thou that I am so to be ouercome of thy  
flatteryng wordes . I had moche leuer that the erthe  
wold opene and swalwe me in to his wombe . My  
15 suster Answerd Iupiter ther is no remedye that may  
lette that my wyll be accomplisshid . ye shall do my  
will and pleasir be hit be force or be hit by loue . with  
this word Calisto began to crye with all her myght  
And Iupiter began to accomplissh his pleasyr of her  
20 ther was neyther man ner woman ther aboutes that  
herd hit . how well the Cry of Calisto was grete .  
Notwythstondyng Iupiter dide his will of his body  
and knewe her flesshly and engendrid on her a sone .  
After he confortd her and promysed to helpe her in  
25 alle thynges . And to take her to his wyf yf she wold  
retourne to the world wyth hym . But his fayr spe-  
che ne his promesses myght not conforte her Ner for  
no thyng that he coude do or say . he coude not come in  
to the grace of Calysto . And allewey she sware grete  
30 other that she wolde complayne vnto her maystres  
dyane . And maad so moche that Iupiter departyd

from her all displeid for her displayfir . and so went by  
the woodes thynkyng what was hym befalle and  
also what he had to do . .

¶ How Calisto for as moche as she was with childe  
the goddesse diane putte her out of the order and of her  
compaygnye . .

**A**T this tyme began to ryse in thentendement of  
Iupiter many thoughtes . and for the better he  
concluded in hym self to retorne agayn in to pel-  
lage fro whens he cam fro . And than how well that  
he was displeid for the enforfyng of his lady dame  
Calisto by loue . He departid fro the wood and so ex-  
ployted that he was on the morn among thepiriens in  
his first habite . Whan thepiryens saw Iupiter comen a-  
gayn . they made hym right grete chier and grete honour  
And the same day Iupiter faigned hym that he wold  
go on huntyng . and so wente and fonde the maner to  
speke with Calisto and requyred her that she wold  
be his loue . but she in no wyse wold assente to hym .  
He retourned from the chaffe so anoyed that for to  
passe his melancolye he departed out of the contre the  
fourth daye folowyng after that he had ordeyned  
there folk that gouerned the peple . And retorned in to  
the hous of kyng Mellifeus who hym resseyued as  
his sone . and there dwellid a longe tyme with out a-  
uentures whereof ony mencion is maad . And also Ca-  
listo dwellid in pees a while . whan she herd telle and  
vnderstood that Iupiter was goon she was passyng  
ioious ffor she had hym leuer ferre than nyhe Allewey  
the tyme passid the fruyt of her wombe grewe And  
the dayes cam that diane and athalantha wyth other



virgyns apperceyued that she was with childe where-  
fore they assamblyd alle in her Chapitre and callid  
Calisto And than spack deane to her and said . Calisto  
my doughter thou hast doon fornycacōn with some man  
5 this fornycacōn is not excusable / The vyrgins of this  
place be sory of thy synne . and haue abhomynacion  
of thy shame . ffor this cause hit is force that thou de-  
parte out of this hous / thou shalt be no longer theyr se-  
lawe . thou hast maad thy self worthy to departe by  
10 the brekyng and losyng of thy virgynite . take thyn a-  
ray & gere and go thy wey in to som place where thou  
mayste be delyuerid of the fruyt that restith in the / ffor  
thou shalt no lenger be here with in &c : : .

15 **W**Han Calisto herd the goddesse Deane . And  
knewe that she sayd trouth . grete teeres fylle  
from her eyen . and wepyng by grete habon-  
dance excused her vpon Iupiter reherfying of the mys-  
chief and auenture that she had . Deane and the may-  
dens had grete meruaylle of Iupiter that had them so  
20 deceyued . Calisto cryed her mercy right humbly . And  
many tymes offrid her self to the punycion of the may-  
dens . this not withstondyng how well that she was  
hold excused . they resseyued her not to mercy / She  
was condemned to go out of the Cloyster / And so  
25 moche wente the mater forth . that the pour religious  
woman departed fro thens all beweppte & so shamed  
that she wold not go to no toun . Cite . ner hous / but in  
to a depe caue that she had seen afore tyme in the woode  
And first she made her prouysion of herbes & rotes for  
30 as moche as the winter was comyng . after she entrid in

to the caue . And ther she helde her also longe tyme as  
the bere holdeth hym in his denne . wherfore the Archadi-  
ens saynen that she was torned in to a bere . And it  
is not to be forgotten that duryng this tyme she was  
delyuerid of a sone whiche she named Archas . This  
child was grete and huge of membres . Calisto nou-  
rished hym among the wilde bestes with rotes with  
fruytes & herbes . and of the propre metes and proyes  
that the cruel and terrible bestes lyueden with . And  
ther was no beste that dide hym ony herme . ner none  
was so hardy to do hym ony greuāns . And he was so  
cruell and fiers that at the eage of seuyn yere as hys  
moder angrid or troublid hym on a day . he lift vp hym  
silf ayenst here and wold haue slayn her . in so moche  
that Calisto was constrayned to flee to fore hym by  
the bussches and yet more to yssue out of the wood &  
to goo to Iupiter whiche at that tyme was in the cyte  
of Pellage . .

**A**Rchas pourfued Calisto his moder vnto he cam  
with in the cyte . and so forth entrid after her in  
to the palais and held in his two handes grete rounde  
stones . Whan Calisto entrid in to the palais by auen-  
ture she encountrid and met with Iupiter whom she  
knewe And she kneled down on the erthe to fore hym  
and requyred hym with affraied spirite . that he wold  
do her iustice of her sone that wold sle her Iupiter that  
nothyng knewe calisto for as moche as she was euyl  
clothid and half wilde and sauage . beheld the Chyld  
and made hym to be taken . And after he demaunded  
calisto what she was Sire said she y am Calisto þ'  
for thy synne y was long syn bannysshid out of my

religion . I haue had this child of thy seed . fuche as thou  
feest is thy sone / I haue nouriffhid hym feyn yere in he  
forest amonge wilde beftes . he now wold fle me for  
as moche as I haue angrid hym . I pray the faue my  
5 lyf / whan Iupiter herde thefe wordes of calisto he was  
right glad and Ioyous for it was faid that fhe was  
ded . And confortd her the beft wife he coude / after that  
he callid Archas & maad the peas betwene hym and  
his moder / and did do clothe hym and reteyned hym in  
10 his palays And forthon the fame Archas gouerned  
hym fo wele and fo wifely that at the prayer and re-  
quefte of the pelagyens Archas was maad kynge  
of the contre &c :: .

¶ How Titan affayled by warre his broder faturne  
15 for as moche as he had not put to deth alle his Chil-  
dren males &c :: .

I N this tyme that the yonge Archas was Crowned  
kynge of Pellage and that he named the Cyte Ar-  
chade after his name . the kynge faturne was fo grete  
20 and fo puyfaunt . that for to ample and encrece the  
splendure of his natyuyte . he named hym felf faturne  
sone of heuen & of erthe . but than as he began to stu-  
dye how and what maner he myghte enhaunce the  
refplendour of his felicite by dyuyne myfteryes ffortune  
25 torned her back to hym ward . And as ther ne is no  
thinge in erthe that may abide & endure So hit happend  
that Titan was all acertayned that the quene Cibell  
had dyuerce men children that fhe did do kepe secretly  
& fo had fauyd their lyf / bochace þ<sup>r</sup> recounteth this hif-  
30 torie in þ<sup>e</sup> . iiij . book of þ<sup>e</sup> genelagie of goddes faith not by



what mene Titan knewe this thyng allewey or by sus-  
pecion or by enuye that he had of the glorye of saturn  
his broder or by secret aduertisement . vnder this colour  
he determynd in hys courage that he wold affaylle  
saturne by armes And for this cause he dide assemble 5  
on a day all his sones . and them required þ<sup>t</sup> they wold  
ayde and helpe hym to grete the lond of Crete Sayng  
that he wold make warre agayn Saturne his broder  
and that by right and iuste tittle he had good cause . for  
he had not put to deth dyuerce men children that his 10  
wif Cybell had conceyued . of his seed lyke as he had  
promysed and sworn .

**T**He children of Tytan þ<sup>t</sup> oon was Lychaon that  
at this tyme was no lenger wolf ner kynge of  
archade . another had to name Typhon and was kyng 15  
of Secile and of Cipres . the thirde was callid Brya-  
rius & was kynge of nericos . the fourte was named  
Ceon and was kynge of the yle of Cea . the fift was  
named Egeon kynge of the see Egee and of the yle  
deferte . and the sixte was named Eperion kynge of 20  
plipheros . Whan they had herd the will of their fader  
that had pourueyed for them alle these royames that  
he had conquerid after his departyng out of crete . they  
desiryng to please hym and coueytyng the recourance  
of ther ancient heritages that was tho of grete renome 25  
sayde to hym as by oon voys that they were redy to ac-  
complish his good pleasir & to goo in to Crete with  
armed hand and sworn that they shuld constrayne  
saturne to seke and seche his sones and them persecute  
with his hand vnto the deth . . 30

**T**he olde Tytan had in his herte grete ioye whan he



behelde the free and grete courages of his fones . And  
there they promysed and swere to geder that they all  
shuld employe them to the recouerance of their heryta-  
ges . After whiche comueracion / they ordeyned in suche  
5 wife that they gaderd hem to geder at the porte of Se-  
cyle . And sente vnto their lordshippis to assembele men  
of armes & of warre . They wente and made suche dili-  
gence and so exployted that there were assemblyd  
grete Armour and harneys and moche peple at said  
10 porte . And whan the day was comen / they so desired  
to laboure this mater that they departyd from Secyle  
with a grete Oost and took the see and so made their  
Iournees wyth out auenture that in fewe dayes they  
sayled vnto Crete And there at the porte arryued and  
15 toke londe . And than entryng fierfly in to lande they  
destroyed and wasted all afore them so cruelly and  
contynued in theyr warre so mortally that they cam  
vnto the Cyte of Crete where kyng Saturne dwel-  
lyd and was resident / and than Saturne was aduer-  
20 tyfied of their comyng and discent . And than Tytan  
that myght no ferther passe with out bataylle or af-  
fault / sente to saturne a lettre wherof the tenour folow-  
eth . Saturne englottid of wordly honneur & couetyse  
of glorie . for as moche as thou art ocupier of the feyg-  
25 nourie that by right langeth to me titan thy lord & elder  
brother / furthermore be cause that thou art falsely per-  
iured . ffor thy wif hath dyuerce men children that thou  
hast not put to deth in like wise as thou were bounden /  
knowe that I am come to take possession of thy kyng-  
30 dom not apperteynyng to the but to me / wherfore come  
to mercy and meke thy self to grace . Or ellys make

the sure of thy parson . ffor yf hit be possible for me y  
shall come and haue refon of the .

**W**Han saturday had redde this lettre as a man all  
esbayed sent for his wyf Cibell and toke her  
a part . and coniured and charged her to saye 5  
the trouthe and telle hym what she had don wyth his  
children . With this charge the poure lady changid co-  
lour and seeyng that she was constrayned to saye the  
trouthe she sayd . Syr thou knowest that y am a wo-  
man . the herte of a woman naturelly doth werkes of 10  
pite had not y haue ben in nature an abhomynable mon-  
stre yf y should haue deuourred with my hande the chil-  
dren of my wombe . where is that moder that shal mur-  
dre her children . Certes my hand was neuer man flear  
ner neuer shall be . y haue erred agayn thy comaunde- 15  
ment in the favour of nature . And syn hit must nedes  
be said y had leuer to be murdrid than a murdrere . and  
to be named pietous than cruel . ffor murdre is cruelte  
apperteynyng to vnrefonable bestes and to tyrantes  
And pite is naturelly apperteynyng to women . And 20  
therfore y confesse to haue born thre sones conceyued  
of thy seed . whiche y haue do be nourishid secretly but  
demaunde me no ferther or where they be . they shal liue  
as longe as hit plesith fortune . wil Tytan or not . and  
ther is no deth wherof ony woman may be turmentid 25  
with . that shall make the places to be dyscoueryd  
where they be . .

**S**aturday herynge these wordes of his wyf was so  
esbayed that he wist not what to answere . Not  
withstondyng for the better he assemblid all the wise 30  
men of his cyte . And to them sayd My brethern and



frendes what is best to be doon . Tytan my broder hath  
 begon warre in this royaume / my wyf hath confessed  
 that she hath resseyued of me thre sones whyche she  
 hath nourished in strange land vnder the colour that  
 5 I shold not flee them . Tytan assaileth me / what shall  
 we don . Syre answerd the wyse men / where force is  
 enhaunfed by ouer grete presumpcion . ther muste be  
 craft to conduyte wiseli to put the hand to withstand  
 hit / Thou hast a stronge Cyte and fulfillid with grete  
 10 peple . thou art wyse for to gouerne hem . put thy self in  
 armes . and take no regard to the quarele of titan . a man  
 is not worthy to be a kynge / but yf hit be by his vertu  
 and gentil maners Crete was neuer royaume but now  
 tytan hath ben all his lyue enclyned to vices and is en-  
 15 uoluped in synne . in whyche purpos he maynteneth  
 to come to thy Crowne / yf he enhaunce hym self . thou  
 muste rebasshe and put hym down this is the Remedye  
 Helpe thy self and we shall helpe the / he that fleeth  
 causeth his enemye to chaffe hym . thus now hit may  
 20 not be fled / but hit must be wythstande and to gyue  
 arrest to our enemye . And that ryght coragiously . ffor  
 that a man may do this day . late hym not put hit ouer  
 tyll to morowe . Arme the than well and sewerly /  
 And assayle from thy Cyte thyn Enemyes . yf thou  
 25 so doo / thou shewest thy corage to be enhaunced gretly  
 and not lyghtly to be ouercome by them . And so thou  
 mayst attempre somewhat their pryde and presumpcion  
 yf thou mayntene otherwyse thy self . and late them  
 take their reste / that shall be mater and cause for to en-  
 30 corage them . vpon whyche they shall enflame them  
 self hoping to come to their aboue . whiche shall be to the

more harmyng than vayllable . ffor corage and hope  
ofte tymes men faie make men to attayne to grete and  
hye victoryes . notwithstondyng thou art kynge thy  
will be accompliffhid and fulfilled . .

S Aturne Anwerd and faid . Brethern and fren- 5  
des hit were grete shame to vs and to our cyte yf  
we suffred hyt to be diffypate and destroyed . Hit is  
force that the warre be begonne and open . euery man  
dispose hym to faue his worship Titan assaileth myn  
honour . and requyreth my dyshonour . Syn hyt is 10  
force that of this mater the armes and warre be iugges  
we shall arme vs this hour and pourfiewe thenterte-  
nement of þ<sup>e</sup> ryght good auenture þ<sup>t</sup> of fortune is come  
to vs . And my herte telleth me that also sodeynly as  
our enemyes ben entrid in to this land . also sodeynly 15  
we shal make them to goo and yssue out agayn . with  
thys answere alle the wyfe and noble men of Crete  
took grete plesir Than Saturne gaf the answer to the  
messanger of tytan And faid to hym . yf tytan retourne  
not with in two houres that he wold come and take 20  
the batayll ayenst hym . With this answer the messan-  
ger retorned to tytan and faid to hym thentencion of  
saturne . Tytan swore than that he wold neuer retorne  
backward tyl he had attended and abiden the batayll  
Saturne was a man of grete valure and hye wyll 25  
Whan the messangier of tytan was departid . he made  
sowne to armes . at whiche sowne the yong and olde  
adowbed them & made hem redy . What shall y make  
long proceffe in short tyme they were redi at the poynt  
And whan saturne sawe that his enemyes made no 30  
semblant to meue . he went & ascended in to his Chare



ffor in this tyme the kynges went to bataill in Chares  
After he yssued out of his Cyte and rengid his peple  
aboute hym / and anone after he dide do marche them  
agaynst Tytan &c :: :: ::.

5 **F** Rom as ferre as the Tytanoyes sawe the Sa-  
turnyens come . they were right glade and made  
them self the grettest chiere of the worlde . And  
meuyd them silf Ioieusly ayenst them and with a grete  
crys / they had grete sheldes of tree / maces and pollaxes  
10 and guisarmes of strange facions . and they were all  
on fote . referuyd Tytan and his sones . whyche as  
Kynges had theyr Curres and Chares in whyche  
they were brought and caried not by the force of hors  
but by the puyssance of men / they approached so nyghe  
15 that they cam to fightyng and began to werke / than the  
archers of kynge saturne began to drawe & shote And  
maad the tytannoys to arest and stande also longe as  
their shotte dured and slowe and hurte many of them  
whan the shotte sayled . the tytanuoyes that had grete  
20 sorowe for to be so feruid of the saturnyens / esmeuyd  
hem self agayn And swore that oon to that other that  
they wold be auengid And cam for to fight hand oon  
hand in whiche they employed them so aygely that of  
the noyse and deñe that their axes and guisarmes smote  
25 vpon their sheldes hit semed as hit had ben thonder / At  
thencounteryng than the batayll was right ffell / Ly-  
chaon . Egeon . Creon . typhon . and encheladus were in  
the first front / ther was many a shelde broken for the  
weight of the clubbes & polaxes & many heedes broken  
30 Creon & tiphon at þ<sup>e</sup> begynnyng maintend hem self right  
vailliantly & conduyte her folke alle with in the batayll

by the rigour of their strokes in so moche that whom  
they mette of the saturniens they bete hem down . by their  
well doyng they were knowen and doubtyd of their  
enemyes in so moche that saturne maad his Chare to  
be lad out of the wey for the grete bruyt & noyse that  
they made aboute hem . there was grete effusion of blo-  
od . ffor the tytanuoyes enforced them to haue endured  
in their bruyt and crye . And the saturniens with sa-  
turne putte them in payne for to abate hit and breke hit  
And so the comyng of saturne was cause of prouesse  
vpon prouesse and of many oon deed . and entended oon  
and other so acertaynly to the werke that the most  
part of that day they maad grete stryf with out that  
none myght enioye hym for victorie ne trouble for dis-  
confiture . but in the ende whan the titanuoyes sawe the  
sonne declyne as couetous of glorye and of worshyp  
At oon crye that Tytan made vpon saturne . Lychaon  
and Egeon with many other enclosed aboute hem . he  
beyng dyspkled . his chare broken by force of polhaxes  
and gaf hym many woundes and finably they toke  
hym And brought many of þ<sup>e</sup> saturniens to deth and  
ouerthrewe them in disconfiture . and that werse is they  
were so discoragid whan they vnderstode that saturne  
was taken that they losse the viguers and strength of  
their hertes and the myghtis of their armes And tur-  
ned their backis and fledd all destroyed . that the tyta-  
nuoyes entred with hem in to the cyte and toke hit and  
wanne hit with out ony resistance betyng down the pe-  
ple and wyth grete murdre of men women and of  
smale Children . .

**A**<sup>T</sup> this tyme men myght se the ladies & matrones

[leaf 33]

67

of Crete take the duste and caste hit in to the ayre and  
renne by the stretes now here and now ther all deffhe-  
uellyd with her here hangyng aboute her hedes castyng  
a ferre their atyre / and their lityll Children crying after  
5 hem the wise men of þ<sup>e</sup> toun semed out of their witte . the  
Cyte was so trowblyd that they myght no more / A-  
monge all other Cybell vesca and Seres maad grete  
forow semblably with out cessyng / ffor tytan that ne-  
uer louyd them . cam tho in to the palays . and putte in  
10 prifon Saturne and his wyf / And swore they shold  
neuer departe thens tyll they had put to deth all her so-  
nes that were come of them And furthermore Tytan  
dide hym do Crowne kyng of Crete / so ne auayled not  
the Infinite praiers and orifons that dame vesca made  
15 to tytan in the compassion of her sone saturne and of  
Cybell for their delyuerance / Ner the fayr spekyng of  
Ceres ne the teeres meuyd of charite . were of no valu  
the moo prayers that they made vnto Tytan / the more  
fonde they hym vncourtoys felon and malgracyous /  
20 He dyde do execute and put to deth alle them that held  
or were apparteynyng to the partye of Saturne / And  
by the space of four dayes vexid and troublid Crete  
in robbyng and shedyng the blood of the Cytezeyns /  
And he ne persecuted onely the men . but also women  
25 and chyldren and toke theyr goodes and departyd a-  
monge them that helde on hys partye / Than whan ves-  
sca sawe alle these thynges happene in the Cyte And  
that her sone tytan gouerned hym so malicyously and  
allewey worfe and worfe with out any compassion  
30 on the peple / She cam to the pryson where Saturne  
and Cybell were and sayd to hem wyth a mouth



widyng dolorous fighes . Alas my children what shal  
ye do . what shall come of yow . how shal ye be sau-  
the land of crete is not only drowned by þ<sup>e</sup> teeris and  
wepying of your best frendes . but with their blood &  
with the blood of their wiues and children . And the  
herte of tytan is so terrible harded and indured that ye  
shal dye here in myserable payne . or ye muste put your  
fones to deth . fyn it is so hit is better that they be put to  
deth and that ye sende to seke hem . whan for your lyf  
is none other remedye

10

**T**he anger of Cibell was right aspre and sharp  
to here the sorowfull tidynges in so moche that  
her herte faylled Saturne and her moder thought on  
her whan she was come agayn to her self she escryed  
and saide . Ha my moder what saye ye to vs . haue we  
so grete payne for to kepe our Children and that we  
shold this oure abandoune them to the deth Shal y do  
trayson to my children that begyn to floryssh in right  
clere fame . that shall neuer be yf hit plese the gooddes  
y haue well leuer haue regard to my semblant Iupiter  
my sone hath a grete name and hath wonne the loue  
of the pelagiens . and of thepiriens . all the world prey-  
feth hym and holdeth hym oon of the vailliants men of  
the world . he is my sone y shal sende to hym and late  
hym haue knowleche of the myserye that y am in . by the  
damoyfell that bare hym vnto the montaigne of ofon  
and shall requyre hym of focours . and y hope that he  
is a man of so hye corage and so ewreus comyng vp  
that he shall focoure her that hath don hym that merite  
that is worthy to haue his focours And þ<sup>e</sup> saued hym  
in his tendre dayes . and my hert telleth me that he shal

20

25

30



reffeyue by this tydyng a ryght grete Ioye in knowle-  
chyng the place of his natyuyte / ffor more gretter Ioye  
he may not haue ner come to hym / than to knowe that  
he is the fyrst sone of the auncyent hous of Crete / And  
5 this shall torne to hym a fouerayn gladnesse whan he  
shall see that he is requyred to come and make the reco-  
uerance of his fader and moder and of his contre : .

¶ How Iupiter wyth Ayde of kynge Mellifeus of  
epire deliuerid saturne his fader & Cibell his moder out  
10 of the prison of tytan / & how he slewe tytan in bataill : .

**W**Han Saturne and vesca herde Cibell so speke  
Vesca said that her aduyse was ryght good /  
And saturne was all esbaied . ffor he thought  
that Iupiter that he had seen at dyuerce tymes wyth  
15 kynge mellifeus shold in no wyse be his sone / vnnethe  
he coude beleue hit and gyue faith vnto the wordes of  
cybell And said yf Iupiter wold socoure hym he were  
the man to do hit / and that he was content that Cibell  
shold sende to seche hym as she had sayd . Than Cy-  
20 bell sent for the damoyfell that knewe alle the guy-  
dyng of Iupiter and gaf her the charge to go vnto hym  
and to fornysshe the werkis . The damoifel Ioyeus of  
this enbassade departid secretly . and taried not til she  
cam vnto the hows of Mellifeus / And fyndyng there  
25 Iupiter with the kynge . After the reuerence made she  
adressed her Orison to Iupiter & sayd to hym / Iupiter  
esioye the and be glad I brynge to the tidyngis of glad-  
nes / Neuerthelasse amonge other sorowes . ffortune  
that hath hold the long tyme Ignorant and not know-  
30 yng the place of thy ryght noble natyuyte / hath now  
certainly suffred the discouerture & knowleche of that

fame ignorance and will that thou knowe that thou  
arte the firste sone and heyr of the kyng saturne and  
of dame cybell . The kynge saturne thy fader as euery  
man knoweth had longe syn maad an Oth vnto his  
broder Tytan that he shold slee alle his children males 5  
that shold come of his seed for whiche cause the day  
of thy natyuyte he comandyd that thou sholdest be put  
to deth . but thy moder had pyte of the . And for to saue  
thy lyf she sente the secretly vnto this hows . geuyng  
thy fader saturne to vnderstande that she had do perfe- 10  
cucion on þ<sup>e</sup> . And so for to eschewe the fureur of thy fa-  
der . thou hast ben here norysshyd all thy dayes And  
knowest not thy self what thou were . and now thou  
art in certayn what ioye is this to the Certaynly grete  
And thou oughtest to go ioyously vnto thy fader and 15  
moder presentyng thy self vnto her grace yf hyt were  
not that after thyse tydyngis of ioye whiche y muste  
nedes shewe vnto the Iupiter other tidyngis . and that  
is this Thy moder that hath sauyd the . thy oncle Titan  
holdeth her in pryson with saturne . for that . that she 20  
hath do norisshe the . and he hath ouercome & venquy-  
shid thy fader in bataile all newly and take from hym  
his royaume . and yet more he will do hem dye . wher-  
fore they praye and requyre the that thou haue pyte of  
them and that thou wilt employe the to go & delyuere 25  
them of the daunger that they be in at this daye .

**T**He kynge mellifeus and Iupiter heering thise  
tydyngis of the damoyzell meruayled them  
right gretely . And Iupiter was right ioyous  
whan he had vnderstand that he was sone of kynge 30  
saturne . and on that other side he was fore vexid of



the trowblyng of Crete . And thankyd the damoyfell  
And after that he torned hym vnto the kyng . and said  
to hym . Syre ye may now knowe & vnderstand what  
I am and of what hows As this damoifell witnesfeth  
5 my fader and my moder ben in the handes of their ene-  
myes / I praye yow in their faueur that ye wyll helpe  
me to focoure them / And that we goo hastely oppres-  
fying hym that hath oppressed them / and I haue a singu-  
ler hope and truste in fortune that she shall helpe vs  
10 . Fayr sone Answerd Mellifeus knowe that I haue  
more of affection in the recourance of thy lignage than  
I can shewe or make semblaunt / And in signe of this I  
promyse to helpe the as moche as in me is possible /  
And than Iupiter assured the damoyfell and swore  
15 vnto her that he wold put hym in armes agaynst titan  
and bad her retorne vnto saturne and Cybell and to  
comforte them in hope of right short focour / The damoi-  
fell departyd from thens with the wordes of Iupiter  
and returned in to Crete / And told vnto saturne and  
20 cibell all that she had doon / Anone after the damoyfell  
was departid / Iupiter sent for Archas his sone hastily  
with the archadiens / And also sent for the Epiriens  
and the parthemyens with them of the Cite of Anlacre  
All thise peple louyd Iupiter with grete loue and cam  
25 at his comandement in grete nombre of men of warre  
Iupiter welcomed them as well as he couthe / and told  
them the cause why he had sent for them . And told them  
that he was Sone vnto kynge Saturne / After thise  
thynges he dide do be maad redy alle thyng that was  
30 necessarye vnto hys Ooft / And so they departyd fro  
the Cyte of Oson wyth ryght a fayr compaygnye

of men of armes vnto þ<sup>e</sup> nombre of fixe thousand figh-  
tyng men And so well spedde that in short tyme he  
brought hem vpon a myle nyghe the cyte of Crete : .

And there jupiter wold tarye vpon the toppe of a  
Montaigne / and callid to hym his sone Archas 5  
that that tyme ne had but . xiiij . yere of age but he was  
right wise and well bespoken / And gaf hym in charge  
that he shold go in to Crete to gyue sommance vnto  
the kyng tytan that he go out of the cyte / And deliuiere  
to hym his fader Saturne with his moder Cibell / the 10  
yonge Archas that was hardy and had his herte hye  
enhaunsd with the worde of his fader wente vnto  
crete to the kyng tytan to whom he dide hym to be pre-  
sentid and sayd vnto hym thise wordes that folowe  
Tytan j come vnto the in thobeiffance of my fader jupi- 15  
ter first sone of kyng saturdayne that thou holdest in cap-  
tyuyte / he hath ben aduertised of thoppression that thou  
hast don in the persone of his fader & of his moder and  
the deth of her sones / he signifyeth the by me that he is  
sone of saturdayne / and that he is as moche thyn enemye 20  
as thou to his sones art enemye vpon whiche j the so-  
mone as legat ones . twyes . thries / that thou yelde this  
cyte vnto his fader kyng saturdayne / And that as hastely  
as thou hast entrid therin in like wise that thou departe  
Childe answerd tytan thou tellest me tydynges that 25  
ben full of plasirs and of exultacion by the whiche j  
knowe by thy wordes that saturdayne hath a sone yet ly-  
uyng ffor by this moyen j see clereli / and also seeth all  
the world that by good and iuste quarele j am maad  
kyng of this cyte / Late jupiter thy fader knowe that 30  
j doubte hym not / Nor sette nothyng at alle of hys



comyng / And also that I will no thyng do after hys  
comandement / Tytan sayd Archas for as moche as  
thou abidest in this will / I wyll no more at this tyme  
ocupie the . Make good wache Iupiter is here by that  
5 tarieth for none other cause but Answer fro the for to  
do his deuoyr to recoure his Cyte &c : : .

**W**ith this word departid Archas fro the presence  
of Tytan and retorned agayn vnto his fader  
whan Iupiter herd the answer of tytan / he was  
10 full of gladnes / ffor he desyred no thyng but for to be  
in armes / And concluded with his peple . that on the  
morn he shold assaulte the Cyte / in caas that Tytan  
ffurnysshed not hem of batayll / Anone were their ten-  
tes made of bowes and leeuies and her tabernaclis / the  
15 Ofonyens . the Archadiens & the Epiryens laye vpon  
the grene verdure . and maad her Ooft to wache / Ty-  
tan was than in crete . And hit is to wete whan Ar-  
chas was departid fro his presence / he assemblid alle  
his sones . and told hem thise tydyngis whiche were  
20 to them plesant and agreable ffor they desired nothing  
but stryf & debate . And assured hem self to haue victorie  
of Iupiter as well as they had of saturne . In the same  
hour they sent four spies to espie the nombre of their ene-  
myes . And made redy their harneis . these spies went so  
25 ferre that they sawe the ooft of Iupiter / and made their  
report to tytan of the place where his enemyes were &  
of what nombre of peple they bee / after the report of the  
said spyes . titan concluded for as moche as his enmies  
were but a myle from the Cite . that they shold make  
30 hem redy and go to batayll agaynst hem on the morn  
Eerly . the nyght passed fast / the day cam on And

than aboute the sonne ryfing Tytan mountyd vpon  
his Chare that was right riche and made his titanoyes  
to reinge in batayle And leste an honderd wyth in the  
cyte for to kepe hit from rebellion or fro trayfon / and  
toke all the other with hym vnder his conduyte and 5  
of his fones and his espyes &c : : .

I Vpiter that was not ydell had the same houre sette  
all his men in ordenaunce / And had than brought all  
his folk in a fayr playne hopyng of bataile And thus  
tytan had not ferre ryden that he ne sawe the Oofte of 10  
jupiter / ffor this playne was all discouerte on all fy-  
des / and from as ferre as eche myght see other / eche of  
them full of joye enforced them to make showtes and  
cryes And by grete desire they marched þ<sup>t</sup> oon agaynst  
that other vnto the comyng and smytyng of strokes 15  
Than jupiter put hym self in the front of the batayle &  
hauyng his bowe in his hand and his arowes by hym  
by his shotyng began a medlyng that was right fiers  
ffor on that oon side and þ<sup>t</sup> other ther were ryght good  
archers / and many casters of poliffhid stones that fail- 20  
led neuer and that was cause of deth of many / whan  
the shotte and castyng of stones faylyd they began to  
go to geder with speres and tho began a mortall fygh-  
tyng hand of hand that was so sharp that of the bre-  
kyng of the speres and of þ<sup>e</sup> sheldes hit resounded vnto 25  
the walles of Crete / and cam to the eeres of Saturne  
and of Cybell the noyse wherof they began to reioye  
ffor they had a verrey hope that Iupiter shold obteyne  
the victorye agaynst tytan / This hour vesca went vp  
vpon a hye tour that she myght see vnto the feld and 30  
ther she sawe the fightyng of the batayle / Tho helde



Iupiter his glayue in his hand & his sheld in that other  
and with his glayue he smote in to the thykkeft of his  
enemyes / and with his sheld he fauyd hym self from  
their ftrookes . And with oon ftrook of his glayue he  
5 departyd the body of encheladus oon of the fones of  
tytan and caſte hym on the ground at the feet of the ty-  
tannoys that were right fory for the deth of her felaw  
Iupiter affayllid them right ſharply . And oon cryed  
flee flee / but he that ſo cryed was ſlayn a non by the  
10 handes of Iupiter that deſtroied the blood of his aduer-  
ſaires he was ſtronger . fier / yonger and boyſtous and  
of aſpre entrepryſe . He defended hym vigourouſly as a  
lion . myghtely as an Olephant and eighly as a Tygre  
And ne entendid only vnto the deffence of body . but to  
15 faue and reſcowe alle them that were in parell vnder  
his warant / he did merueilleus on alle ſides . The noyſe  
and bruyt doublid and redoublid aboute hym . The Ty-  
tannoys began to ouerthrowe by grete routes that oon  
fill on his ſholders that other on his ſheld / & he charged  
20 ſo fore vpon them that his ſtrokes myght not be ſuſtey-  
ned of men . they were ſo ſtrong and puyſſant &c :

**T**his bataile was felonous & hard at begynnyng for  
bothe the two parties / and ther were many of titan-  
noys of tharchadiens & of thepiryens hurte dede & caſt  
25 vnder foot . Archas was there accompaigned of fifti ar-  
chadiens commyſed vnto the garde of his body for as  
moche as he was yonger / & yet he made & put hym ſelf in  
right gode deuoir to emploie hym ſelf to the armes / melli-  
feus failled not / ner Titan lichaon egeon & the other ſyde  
30 alſo / Eche man dide his beſte þ<sup>t</sup> he might / I can not ſaye  
how many men were ded on the ground / ne how often

tymes that oon gate vpon that other but ye shall vnderstande that ther was none comparable vnto Iupiter en strengthe in conduyte ner in prowesse / ther was no thyng to hym impossible . he ouercame the ouercomers / he slowe the flears . he smote down the smytars . he 5 put hym self so forth and in so many places in the bayle of the tytanoyes that in a destrayt he cam & sonde tytan in his chare . that confounded the epiyens by stonnes and rounde plomettes that he caste on them And cried tytan tytan for as moche as he thoughte that he 10 faught well whan Iupiter knewe that tytan was there he drew toward hym and as titan auauncyd his arme for to smyte vpon one epiyen . Iupiter haunsyd his swerd . and dishargyd so fore vpon his arme that he smote hit of and departid hit fro his body / wherof 15 he had grete ioye and cryed Iupiter iupiter And tytan so hurt had grete sorow that he fyll a doun wyth in his Chare :

**A**T this poynt the epiyens began to corage them self / and the tytannoys were discouraged Lychaon and Egeon were ther fast by where they 20 sawe her faders arme fle in to the feld they began tasfaile iupiter as men dispayred / & so began a newe medling where moche blood was spild but notwithstanding the fierste of lichaon that had Iupiter longe tyme 25 in hate . for as moche as he had taken from hym his lordship Iupiter entendyd so eygrely to put tytan at vtrauce that he brak his chare in to peces by the helpe of the Epiyens . And that with the swerd that he smote of his arme / he departyd the lyfe from the body of the 30 vnhappy tytan by a mortall strook that he gaf vnto



his herte . and than gaf he his entente and prowesse to  
 perfecute Lychaon and egeon that had gyuen to hym  
 many strokes and horions . and adressyng his swerd  
 vpon the hede of lychaon that the swerd wente to his  
 5 herte . wherof Egeon had so grete sorow and drede . that  
 he fledde and sau'd hym from the tempest whiche tem-  
 peste ranne so vpon the titannoys so vnmesurably that  
 all were put to deth and to flight in to the felde . fom  
 here and some ther Reseruyd oon of the sones of titan  
 10 named typhon . that seyng the discomfiture cam vnto Iu-  
 piter and said . Iupiter see here thyn enemye . flee not  
 after them that flee . hit shall be vnto the more honou-  
 rable to fyghte agaynst me . that deffie the . than to  
 renne after the fugytifs . Neuer yet was I founden fle-  
 15 yng to fore myn enemies ner yet I shall not . thou hast  
 slayn tytan my fader . and my broder is slayn and  
 venquysshid by fforce and strength And so behoueth  
 than thys Royame muste be thyn or myn . and now  
 late vs see who shall do best / yf I may I shalle vayn-  
 20 quyshe the : and yf I ouercome the certaynly thou shalt  
 not dye by glayue ne swerde / but by the water of the  
 fflood that renneth alle reed and died by the blood of  
 my kyn . to thende that thou drynke of the blood that  
 thou hast maad renne out of her bodies / wherof I haue  
 25 a grete Anoyance to endure hyt . ffor by the cours of  
 nature me ought to take displayfir and anoye . And  
 also to torne to grete dyspyt the dysplaisyr that thou  
 hast doon to me &c : : .

**¶** How Iupiter vaynquysshid in the felde Thyphon  
 30 and caste hym in the Ryuer &c : : : : .

**T**His typhon was grete and full of orguyell  
 and pryde / whan he had said all that laye on  
 his herte / Iupiter that had than beholde and  
 vnderstand Answerd to hym / vaiffale hast thou no  
 knowleche what rayson and right the goddes and for- 5  
 tune don for me / thou art stronge of membres and pro-  
 cedeth fro the herte more oultrageous than wise Alle-  
 way for as moche as thou demaundest batayle . thou  
 art welcome / make the redy shortly & do the best that  
 thou canst . & haste the for the caas requyreth hit with 10  
 this worde thyphon smote Iupiter so rudely vpon the  
 hede of his shelde that he bare away a grete quarter  
 And made Iupiter to stoupe wyth the ryght legge /  
 ther were ther by many epyryens / that seyng Iupiter  
 so smeten ranne and cam for to rescowe hym / but Iupi- 15  
 ter wold not suffre hem that they shold helpe hym in  
 any maner / but bad Mellifeus and Archas that they  
 shold folowe the chaas of them that fled And than  
 he began to assaile typhon by grete vertu and force in  
 suche wise that he gaf hym many woundes in his bo- 20  
 dy And thus began the batayle of typhon and Iupiter  
 they were bothe stronge & able in the craft of armes  
 they charged one vpon that other dolorously and ey-  
 grely / hit is no nede that y declare how many strokes  
 that oon gaf vnto that other / but y muste telle how Iu- 25  
 piter so fought & smote hys enemy that he toke from  
 hym his swerd and his shelde And whan he was in  
 that poynt / he chargid hym vpon his sholdres by force  
 of his armes / And bare hym to the ryuer that was all  
 dyed wyth the blood of dede mē : . And ther he dyde 30  
 hym dye miserably castyng hym in to the flood . the



hede vnder for as moche as he had menaced Iupiter of  
suche deth . what shall I say more of this batayll After  
the deth of typhon Iupiter wente agayn to the pur-  
suyt of his enemyes vnto the sonne began tenclyne in to  
5 the weste and sued on by grete slaughter / but in pro-  
cesse of tyme whan he sawe that Tytan and the more  
part of his sones were ded . And that the reste of their  
peple were so feble and so disperfid by the feldes / that  
they myght neuer aryse agayn . he sowned the retrayt  
10 and reassembled his folke the best wise he myght / and  
after he toke the ryght way to the Cyte hauyng grete  
Ioye and exultacion of his victorie . And he ne had tar-  
ried longe that foure Cytezyns of Crete cam vnto hym  
and told hym that all they of the partye of tytan were  
15 fled and that they had taken out of pryson his fader / .

**¶** How Iupiter and Saturne reconciled them to gy-  
der / & how Iupiter by comandement of his fader wente  
for to destroie the kynge Apollo of paphes . and of the  
medecyn of Esculapius &c : .

20 **I**upiter ressayued these Cytezyns and their tidyngis  
in ryght grete gladnes / and desiryng withall his herte  
to be with his fader & moder did so moche that he en-  
trid in to crete / saturne & Cibell with vesca were at the  
gate / whiche ressayued hym honourably & brought  
25 hym vnto the palays . where he was fested with the  
kinge melleseus & archas in suche facōn that hit might  
be no better / At the comyng of Iupiter many teres were  
wept for Ioye by dame Cibell and vesca . Cibell kyfte  
and beclypt often tymes her sone . And alle they of  
30 the Contrey cam theder in to the palais for to feste and  
worshipe Iupiter and also they gaaf hym many grete

yestes / And hit is not to be forgotten how Saturne re-  
 concyled hym self vnto hym and gaf hym astate as to  
 his sone . Duryng these thynges the body of titan was  
 ferched amonge the dede bodyes by comandement of  
 saturne . and ther was maad for hym his obsequie so- 5  
 lempne as hit apperteyneth to a kyng / semblably and  
 vnto hys sones that were found dede in the batayle  
 Alle the sones of tytan were not perissid and ded in  
 the batayle ffor amonge alle other Iopetus and bry-  
 areus were left a lyue and fiede That is to wete bry- 10  
 areus in to an yle of grece named Nericos And Iape-  
 tus fled in to a partye of libye / wher he enhabited hym-  
 self And brought with hym thre sones that he had by  
 his wyf . wherof the eldest was named Athlas the se-  
 cond had his name Hesperus And the thirde named 15  
 hym self Prometheus . Athlas dwellid in Libye . and  
 hesperus regned in spaigne . And were bothe vaynquy-  
 ffid by hercules as hit shall be said in the second book

**F**OR to holde on our purpose . whan Saturne  
 and Iupiter had doon the obsequyes of the tita- 20  
 noys . Tydynges cam to Iupiter that Apollo  
 kyng of Paphes had resseyued partye of them that  
 fledde fro the bataill of tytannoys / This said appollo  
 had maad allyances vnto saturne and was sone of  
 Iupiter of Actique . Whan Iupiter & saturne herd these 25  
 tidynges . Anon saturne required Iupiter that he wold  
 helpe to take vengeance of Appollo that was his al-  
 lye . and that he shold destroye his enemyes : At the re-  
 quest of saturne Iupiter entreprisid the warre : and in  
 all haste he wente and beseged the Cyte of Paphes 30



and took hit with affault . and put to vttrance and  
destruccion all the fugytyfs that he coude fynde / and yet  
about that he despoyled Appollo of alle his rycheffes  
and of his lordshyps so nakedly that he departyd fro  
5 Paphes not as kynge . but as a poure beggar / and for-  
tune was to hym so contrarye . that he was constray-  
ned to kepe the shepe of kynge Ametus of theffayle  
In this Paas some men saye that in the tyme that Iu-  
piter began to mounthe in hys Regne and to embrace  
10 honour / Esculapyus sone of appollo whyche was  
ryght expert in medycyne . and serchyng on a day hys  
aduentures as he wente by a woode side he sawe from  
ferre where an herdeman with his lityll horne fought  
agaynst a basylique . that of his nature slewe the peple  
15 only with his fyght / whan esculapyus sawe this . he  
was gretly esmeruayllyd and taryed . and he had  
not longe abyden . but that the herdeman had ouercome  
the basylique / and constraynd hym to wythdrawe  
hym vpon a Rocke that was there nyghe by . Escula-  
20 pius was alle esbayed with this thyng that he wiste  
not what to saye . ffor hym thought hit was Impossi-  
ble for a man to ouercome oon so mortall a beste / Than  
whan tyme that the basylyque was wythdrawen  
vpon the sayd Rock / Esculapyus went hym hastely  
25 vnto the herdeman . And fyndyng that he had vpon  
his hede a Chapellet or garlond made of many diuerce  
herbes and of flowres . He Iuged incontynent that  
in thys forsayd Chapellet was an herbe of fuche ver-  
tu that kepte hym from the deth and also from the sub-  
30 tyll venym of the basylique . than he dide so moche  
that the herdeman or shepard gaf hym hys chappelet

or garlond as innocent : And than the sayd herdeman  
went agayn for tassaile the basilicque / and than so-  
deynly of oon propre sight of his eyen the poure she-  
pharde fyll ded vnto the erthe &c. : .

**A**sculapius was than well assured that he had  
wel thought that in the chappelet was an herbe  
that suffisid to withstonde agayn the malicy-  
ous entoxicacion of thenuenymous eyen of the beste / &  
wyth the sayd chappelet he went to the rocke . And  
fought so agaynst the basilicque that he slewe hym  
wherof he had so grete ioye / that a herte entending to  
worship myght haue no more / whan he had thus done  
he went vnto the herdman and hauyng pite on hym / he  
toke all the herbes oon after an other wherof the chap-  
pelet was maad . And put hem diuysably eche by hym  
self in his mouthe . And synablely he touched only the  
leues of the vertueuse herbe / and so brusid hit vpon his  
mouth . that sodeynly he roos from deth to lyf / O mer-  
ueyllous vertu of herbe / men rede that by thys same  
herbe . Ipolitus whiche cam vnto his deth . by the mene  
of his styfemoder that accusid hym falsely . afterward  
was reysed to lyf agayn / & after that he had be longe  
ded and drawen by bussches egghes montaygues and  
thornes / whan hys body was founde that they that  
fonde hym leyd hym in a medowe vpon a plante of her-  
bes like vnto the herbe / wherof is spoken to fore by ver-  
tu of the whiche his woundes were heled and his lyf  
was gyuen and yelde vnto hym agayn . : .

**F**or to holde on the matier whan esculapius had  
reysed the herdman or shepherd / he toke the  
herbe and the basilicque and bare hem vnto the



Cyte of paphes tellyng his aduenture . and from than  
forth he reysed men fro deth to lyf by vertu of the herbe  
and fought and ouercame bafyliques / And for thys  
caufe he gate hym fo hye a name / that Iupiter was a-  
5 glottyd of his glorye / and toke warre agaynst hym  
and flewe hym . wherof his fader appollo toke fo grete  
forowe in hym felf / that he enterpryfid the warre a-  
gaynst Iupiter / but Iupiter ouercame hym and conftreyn-  
ed hym to fuche an extremyte . that for to hyde hys  
10 name / he wente and feruyd the kynge ametus of thes-  
fayll as is fayd to fore . And thus whan Iupiter had  
vaynquyffhid appollo by that oon manyer or by that  
other he retorned in to Crete with grete glorye / And  
fonde there Neptune and Pluto his brethern and Iu-  
15 no his fuster that maad hym grete chyere . This Iuno  
was the moft beauteuous woman and fayrest mayde  
that was in all the contre / after the retorne of Iupiter  
fhe conuerfid with hym certayn fpace of tyme / allwey  
they difcoueryd not their couraiges at this tyme . and  
20 by proces of tyme retorned Iuno in to parthemye with  
the other vyrgyns with whiche fhe had be nouryed  
and ther abode in many thoughtes and defyres / And  
ne maad neuer other prayers vnto the goddes . but that  
only they wold gyue her grace for to be wyf vnto her  
25 broder / And it is not to be forgotten that yf fhe was  
ftrongly fette in the loue of her broder Iupiter / as moche  
or more was Iupiter fermly fette in the loue of her / for  
for to fee her only after that he had fent home alle his  
men of warre in her owen Contreys / And that he  
30 had eftablyffhyd his fader Saturne in hys feygnou-  
rye and lordfhypp . Vnder the Colour of deuocyon

he wente ofte tymes in to the cyte of Parthemye . and took pleasir to be with her &c : . :

¶ How Iupiter with grete Ioye spousid his suster Iuno . And how the kynge saturne began a warre agayn Iupiter his sone &c : :

**A**llewey as Iupiter was besy to solicyte thus the virgyne Iuno in the cyte of parthemye for to haue the better occasion to abide there he edefyed a temple . And dide hit to be dedyfied vnto hys moder Cybell . And at laste dide do make an ymage or statue of a woman in ryall attyre that gaf mete vnto many smale ymages of lytil children in remembrance that she had saued the lyf to her children / And whan this temple was parfayt and maad vnto the dedicacyon . Saturne and Cibell to gyder cam theder with all the nobles of the contre . and there maad a grete solempnyte that duryd fiftene dayes in playn gladnesse . And at this grete feste and gladnes faylled not Iupiter ner Iuno . ffor aboute the ende of this solempnite the nobles of the contre traytted theyr maryage . And the preste of the temple of Cybell assured and trouthed them to gyder . and anone after in the same temple their espousaylles were made and celebrered with so grete glorie Ioye and Tryumphe that hit is not possible to be reherfed And Iupiter and Iuno laye to gyder / and engendrid a doughter that they named hebe . The parthemyens for memoyre of this maryage founded there a temple where in they sette the simylacre of Iuno in habyte of a mayde that maryed her And alleway after that same day that Iupiter wedded Iuno . they maad in that temple an annyuersarye & a grete feste whiche



was holde in maner of a weddyng / After alle thyfe  
thynges than Saturne retorned in to Crete / Pluto re-  
torned in to a partye of Theffaylle where he founded  
the cyte of Helle wherof shall be spoken in the seconde  
5 book / and Neptune retorned vnto Atthenes / where the  
atthenyens maad hym kynge as well for his vertues  
as for that he was sone of faturne / at that tyme the  
moſte renommed kynge of the world : . .

10 **I**N theſe dayes whan ſaturne ſawe hym quyte  
of tytan and of his generacions / And that he  
ſawe his chyldren mounte from lowe places  
into regnes and hye chayres / Certayn all his ſorowes  
vanyſſhid a way / and than began the clerenes of his  
regne to be payſible / All dowtes all dredes all ſuſpeci-  
15 ons were put a waye / he had of the goodes of fortune  
as moche as he wolde / None was than ſo hardy that  
durſt conſpyre agaynſt his domynycacyon / he ſonde hym  
ſelf in peas generale / and hyt is to be ſuppoſed and le-  
uyd conſidered the regnes of his tyme and that he was  
20 in ſo grete peas and tranquyllyte / that he myght haue  
ſynyſſhid and ended his dayes in the ſame / yf he hym  
ſelf had not putte hym to the warre / ffor he had Iupi-  
ter his ſone vnto his helpe / at that tyme the moſt abill  
in armes that was in all the worlde / And longe tyme  
25 whan Saturne ſawe hym thus in peaſe / hit happend  
on a day whan hit cam vnto hys mynde . that his god  
appollo had prenoſtyqued that this Iupiter ſhold put  
hym out of his royame / Sodeynli there began to engen-  
dre in hym a mortall hate agaynſt Iupiter that had don  
30 vnto hym ſo many good dedes / And alſo ſeeing that

euery man helde hym in loue . and was besy to please  
hym . he adioustyd fayth and gaf credence vnto his cur-  
rid prenosticacyon . And so suffryd hym self to be en-  
uolupped wyth so grete a folye that he coude neuer  
drawe hyt out after : And than he retorned vnto his 5  
auncyent sorowes and fantasies in suche wyse that  
they appered outward &c : .

**W**Han they of Crete sawe saturdaye so troubllyde  
the moste pryue of his secrete counceyll enplo-  
yed them to comforte him, but hit helped nowht 10  
Ner they cowde not gete from his mouth the cause of  
suche melancolye . vnto the tyme that he had determy-  
ned in his herte that he shold persecute vnto the deth  
his sone Iupiter And than he did do assemble his pryn-  
ces and his counsellours . and said to them / I Charge 15  
and adiure yow all by the names of all our glorious  
goddess that ye saye to me the trouthe and auys / what  
thyng shall or ought a kynge to do with a man that  
he doubtyth by a dyuine answer that hath be said to  
hym / that this man shall put hym out of his regne and 20  
kyngdome / Whan they of Crete had vnderstande the  
charge and adiuracion of the kynge . they assemblyd  
hem self at a counceyll And there they ordeyned and  
toke oon that for all that other shold haue charge to  
gyue this answer / Syre the counceyll knowe that 25  
longe syn ye had an answer of your god conteynyng  
that he had engendrid a sone that shold put yow out  
of your regne . And that dame cibell at that tyme was  
delyuerid of Iupiter / The counceyll prayeth yow . that  
ye will take hede . how what tyme ye were depnyed 30  
of your Crowne and had losse hit / he delyueryd yow



and made yow quyt of all your enemyes / yf the cause  
of your Charge and adiuracion touche not this mater  
The councyll is of oppynyon / that yf the kynge haue  
puyssance and myght ouer hym that he doubtyth / and  
5 that he haue cause euydent / A kynge than ought to kepe  
hym feur from that man for the daungiers : . .

**C**ertes sayd saturne thauys of the councyll is  
resonable ynowh / and for as moche as I must  
declare yow and saye yow what I mene / I am  
10 the kynge that I speke of / And the man that I doubte /  
is Iupiter my sone / that I fere and drede moche more  
than the deth In so moche that I may not endure ner  
take reste for hym . ffor slepyng I dreame that he ryseth  
ayenst me / and assaileth me in armes with grete mul-  
15 titude of Archadyens & of epiroyens . and resteth vaync-  
queur & victorious ouer me / And wakyng I haue alle  
weie myn eeres opene for to herkene and espie / yf he be  
aboute to come on me wyth men of armes / and thus I  
can haue no Soulas . Playr ner Reste / and am a man  
20 losse / Thys confyderyd I wyll that he be ded . and I  
take the culpe and synne vpon me / and I will that ye  
knowe that I am your kynge and that ye to me owe  
obeissance / and for that I comande yow vpon payne of  
deth / that ther be not oon man that is so hardy to with-  
25 saye ony thyng contrarye to my will / And that eche  
of yow be to morn found redy in armes to fore thys  
pallais for to focour & serue me in this werke whiche  
is the grettest thyng that euer shall come to me : .

**H**ow they of Crete whan they had herd the comande-  
30 ment of Saturne were fore troublid & sory / and how  
they meuyd hem self ayenst Iupiter his sone : .

**W**Han they of Crete had herd the resolucion of  
saturne they were gretly abashed . ffor they  
knewe well that saturne toke this mater gret-  
ly to his herte . and that he was a terryble man to of-  
fende . And so they knewe that wrongfully he wyl- 5  
lyd the deth of his sone Iupiter that had restored hym  
to his lordship by his prowesse & vailliance / Many  
ther were that went in to an other kyngedom because  
they wold not be with the fader ayenst the sone ner  
with the sone ayenst the fader / but ther was noman 10  
that durste be so hardy to replie agayn saturne ner saie  
that he dide euyl / for they dredde more his yre than to  
offende Iustyce . what shall I saye after the commande-  
ment of saturne / eche man withdrewe hym vnto his  
hous full of grete and bitter sorowe in herte . And ther 15  
was not oon man but he had his face charged with  
grete greef and pefaunt anoyance &c : .

**T**he day than drewe ouer / And on the morn Sa-  
turne armed hym self & sowned Trompettis  
vnto armes . They of crete aroos this mornyng 20  
And many ther were of them that knewe thentencōn  
of saturne . And also ther were many that meruailled  
of that / that the kyng wold doo & coude synde no reson  
wherfore he maad this armee . ffor all Crete was in  
pees And all the tytannoyas were disparklid and put 25  
in to destruccion perdurable / Amonge all other Cybell  
wist not what to thynke Seeying that saturne sent  
not after Iupiter She demanded hym oftentymes whe-  
ther he wold goo . and for what reson that he toke not  
Iupiter with hym in his compaygne . Iupiter was at 30  
that tyme in parthemye with his wyf Iuno / Whan



saturne had herde the demande of his wyf Cybell / alle  
his blood began to change . and sayd to her that all in  
tyme she shold knowe the place where he wold go to  
Cybell was wyse and subtylle . whan she herd the  
5 answer of the kynge / and sawe Incontynent the facōn  
her herte gaf her that he had some euyll wyll . and  
had suspesion that he wold do harme to Jupiter / wher-  
fore she wente in to her chambre ryght pensyf . and  
at all auenture she sent hastely in to parthemye and fyg-  
10 nesyed to Iupiter that he shold departe hastely thens  
and that she ymagyned that saturne his fader wold  
do hym displayr / ffor he maad right grete assemble of  
men of armes . and there was no man that wold telle  
the cause wherfore : .

15 ¶ How kynge saturne wyth all his grete oost cam to  
fore the Cyte of archade ayenst Iupiter his sone : .

Hyt is to suppose that Iupiter had the herte right  
dysplayfant whan he had resseyuyd these ty-  
dynges fro hys moder cybell . and how well  
20 that she warned hym by supposyng / as she that wyft  
not veryly the wyll of the kynge / Allewey whan he  
confyderyd that he was not sent fore vnto this armee  
he doubtyd hym and departyd thens / and sayd to his  
wyf Iuno that he wold goo vnto archade concludyng  
25 in hym self that by thys meue he shold see the conduyte  
of his fader and to what place he employed his armee /  
but he was not ferre on hys waye / whan he restyd vp-  
on a montaygne and loked behynd / hym that he sawe  
the Cyte of parthemye / that anone was enuyroned  
30 and full of men of armes of kynge saturne / that gaf

to hym a grete preef of thaduertyfement of his moder /  
And for to see what way he entended . he taryed styll  
on the montaygne hauyng his eyen alwey vnto the cy-  
te . And anone he sawe his fader faturne mounte in to  
his Chare And all his arme yssue out at the same gate 5  
wher he cam fro and toke the same waye that he had  
taken . And that gaf hym verily to vnderstande and  
knowe that his fader fought hym . and so departyd  
from this motaigne and wente hym to Archade and  
told vnto his sone and to the archadiens the cause 10  
wherfore he was come & prayd hem that they wold  
garnyshe hem of good armures to the ende to deffende  
their Cyte yf hit be nede &c : . .

**T**he archadyens at the request of Iupiter maad  
redy theyr armes and their cyte / and sente out 15  
espies vpon the waye And anone after they  
were come from the palais / the espies assermed to Iu-  
piter and Archas that they had seen the champaynes  
and the weyes of Archade all fulle of men of armes  
Anone was cryed in the Cyte in the name of their fou- 20  
uerayn lord Iupiter that euery man shold make good  
wache and kepe his warde / with this crye the Arch-  
adiens armed hem with helmes & armes of leder And  
wente vpon the walles and towres hauyng in their  
handes axes . fwerdes . guyfarmes . glayues and maces 25  
And they had not longe taryed there . whan they sawe  
come from ferre two men of Crete whiche cam to the  
gate and axed of the portiers yf Iupiter were with  
Inne The porter whan he vnderstood what they axed  
answerd them that Iupiter was in the Cyte / and yf 30  
they had to do wyth hym they shold fynde hym in the



palls . where he passid the tyme wyth his sone Ar-  
 chas / and that he was newly come in to the toun to  
 visyte hym . whan they of Crete herd thys they were  
 fore troublid . ffor they fought hym that they wold not  
 5 fynde / Notwythstandyng they wente in and passid  
 forth vp to the palls / And there fyndyng Iupiter  
 with the nobles of archade after the reuerens made that  
 oon of them spake and sayd . Syre we seke the / & we  
 haue no will to fynde the / ffor we come aienst our will  
 10 to execute a comission by the whiche may sonner come  
 ruyne and trouble than peas Saturne thy fader coman-  
 deth the that thou allone come speke with hym he hath  
 fought the in all the places of parthemye / his doughter  
 Iuno thy wyf not thynkyng euyl . hath acertayned  
 15 hym that thou art come hether / he is comen after the in  
 armes / And we knowe not what he thynketh to doo /  
 he was neuer so angry ne triste ne so fiers as he is now  
 we ben hys seruauntes / fforce hath constrayned vs in  
 his obeyssance . and after this we gyue the day to ap-  
 20 pere in persone to fore hym this same hour all excusaci-  
 ons cessyng &c: . .

**W**Han Iupiter had reteyned and well putte in  
 hys mynde the adiournement wyth hys eyen  
 full of teeris maad his answer and said thus  
 25 I meruayll me of the ryght straunge conduyte of my  
 fader / and paraenture hit is not wyth out grete cause  
 his royame is in peas / And I haue putte and sette hym  
 agayn in hys royame . And now he hath putte hym  
 self in armes wyth oute my knowleche . And syn  
 30 sendeth for me that I shold allone come speke wyth  
 hym / And that is to strange a thyng vnto me . And

he gouerneth hym not as he ought to do / ffor me ought  
to preyse them that haue deferuyd hit and be of valu . I  
haue auayled hym as moche as his royame is worth  
he hath othertyme sente for me to make warre / I wote  
neuer now what euyll wyll he hath or may haue to  
me . but here he is come with his armee where he hath  
no thyng to do Notwithstandyng he is come & deman-  
deth no thyng but me aloonly All thyng countyd &  
debatyd I haue not Intencion for to obeye his comande-  
mēt how well that he is my fader for as moche as the  
fuspicion is to moche apparaūt / but I am content yf he  
haue to do wyth me to serue hym & to come to hym by  
condicion that I shall be accompanied of alle my  
frendes that I can gete & none otherwyse : : .

**T**he two comysfaires with this word retorned  
vnto saturne and told hym thentencion of Iu-  
piter / Saturne toke right inpatiently the An-  
swer of Iupiter and approched vnto Archade and be-  
fegyd hit with grete othes makyng his auowe vnto  
his goddes . that yf he may haue Iupiter he with his han-  
des wold make sacrefice of hym . And than he sente of  
his moſte wiſe men and ſaid to hem . that in felle mena-  
ces they ſhold go ſomone the kynge Archas / and the  
archadiens to yelde and delyuere hym Iupiter . Decla-  
ring openli that he were more his enemy than his ſone  
The wiſe men departyd from the Ooſt at the comande-  
ment of ſaturne—and dide ſo her deuoir to ſomone the  
archadiens and ſaid to the kynge & peple of Archade  
we be come vnto yow for as moche as ye ſuſtene Iu-  
piter whom the kynge ſaturne holdeth for his enemy .  
yf ye delyuere hym vnto ſaturne ye ſhall be his frendes



And yf not / he doth yow to wete that ye do kepe yow  
wyth good wacche and warde / ffor he hath not in the  
world gretter enemyes than yow &c : : .

**B**y this mandement knewe Iupiter that he was  
5 hym felf for whom fatorne maad hys armee  
The Archadiens affemblyd to counsell wyth-  
out Iupiter and fpake of thys mater / and maad anf-  
were to the wyfe men of Crete / conteynyng how they  
were bounden to ferue Iupiter / and how they wold ke-  
10 pe hym and lyue and dye wyth hym agaynft all men  
a boue all other / whan the wife men had their answer  
retorned vnto faturne and told hym the answer of  
tharchadiens / Anone haftely fore achauuffed be enfla-  
myng of grete yre . he comanded that the Cyte fhold be  
15 affaylled / And anone wente to armes they of Crete  
in fuche wife / and approched the wallys and mu-  
raill / that tharchadiens fawe their enemyes approche  
anone they fowned to armes and cam to the affraie &  
put hem to defende their walles by grete corage / tho was  
20 drawen & fhotte many an arowe / & many a ftone cafte  
and many beten & hurte as well with in as with oute  
gonnes bombardes ne grete artillerie was none in thys  
tyme in the royames / all wey they of the cyte had well  
the craft to caft vpon their enemies brennyng brondes &  
25 oilles & watres boillyng with affhes / & for to doo thus  
Iupiter had enduced & taught tharchadiens peple men  
& women þ<sup>t</sup> whan they of crete cam moft ftronge to thaf-  
fault and fupposid to haue entryd the Cyte they were  
chargid with fyre . oylles and fkaldyng watres / that  
30 force conftreyned them to go a back with grete losse of  
peuple / And they fowned the retrayte / Saturne than

takyng the moſte ſorwe of the world what for that  
he myght not furnyſhe his pleaſyr as for that by the  
walles laye more than ſowre . C . of his mended . And  
ſo returned in to his tente after thaſſault paſſyng ſo-  
rowfull and deſolate . And had ſo grete anoye at his 5  
herte that he mochte neyther ete ner drinke . but this not-  
withſtāding he thought right well on his hurte peple  
and wente to their tentes . and dide do mynyſtre medy-  
cynes vnto them that were hurte &c : : .

¶ How Iupiter ſent his enbaſſadours to his fader 10  
ſaturne for peas . And how ſaturne wolde here ner en-  
tende to peas &c : : .

**T**he Archadyens were paſſyng Ioyous whan  
they ſawe and toke heed how they of Crete cea-  
ſyd with ſhame theyr aſſault / after thaſſault 15  
and the retrayt of bothe ſides Allewey that Saturne  
entended to hele and gyue medecynes vnto his hurte  
men . Tharchadyens aſſembrid a counsell And by grete  
deliberacōn they ſente ſeuyn of their honorable counceyl-  
lours in ambaffade vnto ſaturne / of whome that oon 20  
ſpack and ſayd / Saturne thou knoweſt & oughteſt  
to knowe that euery kynge ought tentende to lyue in  
peas / ffor the moſt ſayr thyng of the world is peas  
Peas noryſſhyth prouffit by peas ar noryſſhid men  
and chyldren / townes and cytees ar vnyed and knet 25  
to geder by charite . and anexed by amerous cōmyny-  
cacion . by peas the royames prouffyt en decoracion  
and bildyng fair houſes In labour and ereyng the erth  
and in length of lyf / By peas the mannes bodyes ben  
hole and quyetē . And hit is that thyng that cauſeth a 30  
man to demande ſouerainte . O ſaturne hit ſemeth that



thou rekkest not of this good vertu / for regnyng in peas  
and tranquyllite their is no kynge ner prynce that dar  
shewe hym agaynst thee / Thou hast not only troublid  
thy royalme / thou art abuser of warre for to haue  
5 peas a man ought to putte hym and dispose hym to  
the warre / thou doost all otherwyse . Ne seeft not that  
thy sone Iupiter hath delyueryd the from the bondes of  
thyn other enemyes . And hath sette thy dyademe in a  
feuerte of peas where thou myght not doo wyth oute  
10 hym / Ne seeft thou not for to make hym warre / thou  
ne mayst haue peas / And that thou destroyest and bre-  
keft this peas / Ne seeft thou not that thys is thy sone /  
Ne seeft thou not that thou art a monstre in nature / The  
fadres naturelly loue their children / the same wise rude  
15 and brute bestes kepe and holde this condycion of na-  
ture / Thou sekest and woldest destroye the blood of  
thy sone / And from whens cometh this dysnaturell  
appetyte / Myght hit not satysfye to thyn appetyt and  
olde errour the goodnes & wele that thou hast receyued  
20 late in reysyng / been thyn Interyor rancours permanent  
shall thy fantasyes neuer cesse / shalt thou be in Age  
lasse & sympler than a child / the more that men growe  
in age / the more be they wyse / Thou hast lasse know-  
leche now / than thou haddest in thy paryllous youghth  
25 and fro whens cometh this deffaulte / is this by the he-  
uenly Influence / yf hit be thus / where is rayson where  
is equyte / wher is the loue of the fader to the sone / kno-  
west thou not that ne had Iupiter thy sone ben / thou  
haddest ben yet in grete derkenes languysshyng / I syg-  
30 nesye the as aduocat of Iupiter that he loueth the as  
hys owen fader / And furthermore I praye the / that

thou wilt be in peas . And yf thou wille hym no good  
yet at the leste wille hym no harme ner encombraunce : : .

**I** Sholde be fone vaynquyffhyd Answerd Saturne  
yf the xperience of thelyf of Iupiter cam not to my sight  
See I not how he enhaunceth hym self the most he can 5  
see I not how the peple by his fayr and blandiffhyng  
wordes owe hym more fauour than me / see I not that  
he fleeth from me . yf he be not culpable werfore fleeth  
he / he shal saye to the peple that he is Innocent Saye  
ye that he hath no thyng don ayenst me . I wote neuer 10  
how tharchadiens vnderstande . but yf I may ones sette  
my hande on them . ther was neuer so grete myschef as  
shall come vnto Archade . And y haue not thentencion  
to departe from this place tyl I haue put in pardurable  
ruyne this cyte rebell ayenst me and my comandemens 15  
Syre Answerd the Archadiens syn that fayr speche  
may not refreyne thy passyng grete Ire . vnto thy warre  
be warre / kepe the well from vs and vs from the / syn  
the mater shall take his cours in this party god spede  
the ryght and fortune / we shall not longe drawe the 20  
festue hit is concluded that tharchadiens and Iupiter  
shall yssue to morn out of the cyte . And yf they fynde  
ony that assaylle them . they wyll defende their lyues  
This worde accompliffhid Saturne torned his back  
to tharchadiens shakyng his hede / And tharchadiens 25  
retorned in to their Cyte and reherced and told from  
the begynnyng to the ending all that they had founden  
And by there reporte hit was confermed that the day  
folowyng they shold yssue out of the cyte in suche  
wyse as they had purpofyd amonge hem &c : : . 30



Iupiter had grete displeiſur in hym ſelf of that he ſawe  
that his fader was ſo greued and wold not be con-  
tente / yet notwithſtandyng he doubtyd not ſo moche  
that he ne toke courage to hym . and ſaid he was more  
5 holden to kepe his lyf than to obeye the euyll wyll of  
his fader / that hated hym at his burthe . This nyght  
paſſid ouer / anone after that the ſonne clered & lyght  
the ayer / aboute the thirde hour of the day Archas Iu-  
piter and the men of warre of the Cite wente hem in to  
10 the ſelde in goode ordenance . and than they were not ſo  
ſone yſſued of the gates / that they ne were ſeen of the  
ſaturnyens that waited after hem by the comandement  
of ſaturne . and ſo began eche agayn other a grete bruyt  
and noyſe that it reſounded vnto the Montaignes and  
15 walles . And than they began taſſayle tharchadyens  
by ſhotte & ſtones ſo certaynly that whan Iupiter ſawe  
that ther was none other remedye but to fyghte / he put  
hym forth formeſt in the fronte to fore / and ſo began  
to ſmyte on them that fought hym cryyng with an hye  
20 vois . lo here is Iupiter / eche man do to hym what he may

**A**nd thus began the dolorous bataill of ſaturne  
and Iupiter / ther was the fader againſt the ſone  
and the ſone agaynſt the fader / Ther loſte na-  
ture her fayr and recomaunded propertes . The fader  
25 fought the blood that he had engendryd . And promy-  
ſid grete yeſtes vnto them that myghte take hym / The  
batayll was rygourous & harde . And than wrought  
and foughte well Iupiter and Archas . and ſoue-  
rainly the noble Iupiter emploied ſo hardely his ſwerd  
30 temprid with ſtele that he ſmote down ſheldes & helmes  
and cutte of heedes and armes / and there was no man

myght refiste hys prowes Inuyncible . he made to trem-  
ble the moſte hardieſt that were ther / he made reforte &  
to go abacke them that had auauuced them ſelf more  
than they had power and vertu . he brak the wynges  
of the batayle And in their moſt ſtrength he entrid and 5  
encountryd many tymes ſaturne his fader / and was  
well in his power and puyſſance to greue hym . but  
how wel that ſaturne caſte on hym and gaf hym grete  
ſtrokes and greuouſ horions . yet he wold neuer ſmyte  
agayn but ſaid to hym ofte times . Alas my fader wher- 10  
fore ſekeſt thou theffuſion of my blood . I am thy ſone  
and thy ſeruaunt . Thou haſt no cauſe to perfecute me / I  
ſhal not employe myn hand vpon the . but beware and  
take no fyance in the archadiens . for yf they may haue  
and gete the in her power thou ſhalt fynde in them ly- 15  
tyll pyte ne mercy &c : .

**S** Aturne notwythſtandyng theſe fayr wordes  
wold neuer refrayne his Ire but ſmote euer vp-  
on Iupiter alſo fierſly as he mocht . Iupiter of  
alle his ſtrokes toke non hede and ſette lityll ther by 20  
And how wel that he had concyence to fight & ſmyte  
his fader / yet allewey he torned his ſtrokes and had  
no cōcience to occupie his trenchant ſwerd vpon them  
of Crete . ſo fermly that euery ſtrook wyth out faute  
was dyed with newe blood . And for to do ſo he en- 25  
forced hym ſelf to ſhewe hit to ſaturne that he faught  
a yenſt hym in vayn . and that to hym was no thyng In-  
poſſible . In alle theſe thynges ſaturne toke no regarde  
ner enſample . The Crye was grete aboute Iupiter / the  
armes were gretely exercyſid . the ground was all co- 30  
ueryd with theffuſion of blood . And the dede bodyes



laye oon vpon an other beheded and smyten in pecys / O  
right hard and fore batayle / Saturne was so enuo-  
lupped in his obstynacion that the blood of his men we-  
tyng his armes by the cours of the large woundes that  
5 Iupiter maad vnto them myght not modere his yre ner  
herte / And hys eyen were so blynde in his Ire that he  
sawe nought his ryght euydent domayge . where he  
fought the propre Moyen by whiche he was put out  
of his Royame that he dowbtyd and ayenst whiche  
10 he entendid to resiste and eschewe with his myght : .

**¶** Howe Iupiter vaynquysshid the batayll ayenst  
saturne his fader / and saturne fledd by the see : .

**I**N this batayll Iupiter sauued often tymes Saturne  
among the glaiues of tharchadiens / & dide good ayenst  
15 euyll / many of them of crete fought against herte know-  
yng that saturne had meuid. & was cause of the warre  
And howe well they put their handes to werke / yet  
alleway the variacōn that they had amonge them was  
cause of the losse of right grete nombre of peple / & they  
20 doubtyd Iupiter & they had no power to withstande &  
fight / in suche wise as they wold haue don yf they had  
had or felte her querele good / And by this maner was  
the bataill demenyd to the grete preiudyce of the satur-  
nyens / Iupiter put hym self in deuoyr vnto his fader /  
25 And ofte tymes Cryed in his ere that he shold wyth-  
drawe hym er the batayll went worse or be lost / And  
wythstood hys strokes a grete whyle / Awaytyng  
that he wold conforme and conuerte hym self fro his  
euyll oppynyon . But than at last whan Iupiter toke  
30 hede and sawe that he wold in no wyse here hym / He  
opende and desployed hys vertu and the grete myght

of his armes and of his swerd / and maad fuche af-  
fray vnto his aduersaryes . brekyng their helmes and  
hewyng their harnoys . not in manere of a man hauyng  
alday susteyned the feet And grete strokes and pey-  
fant of the saturnyens / but in the manere of a Champi- 5  
on freshe & newe of whom the strookes redowblid : . .

**T**Hus than hit semed vnto the saturnyens that  
in multiplieng of horions & strokes the strength  
and puissance of Iupiter began to norissh and  
growe . Hys well doying and vayllyance gaf vnto 10  
tharchadyens strengthe vpon strengthe . And vnto his  
enemyes grete losse of blood and also of lyf . ther was  
the ground bedewed with newe blood . ther were the  
ded bodies coueryd with newe ded men . ther was the  
Chare of saturne smyten in to peces . Saturne held a 15  
longe while the bataile . also longe as his might wold  
endure and in no wise wold flee / but in cōclusion whan  
his men sawe that the thyng wente for them allewey  
from euyl in to worse . they began to flee And torned  
the back and fledde . And than Saturne torned and 20  
fledde also in like wise . Tho they were folowed in the  
chasse so asperly and dedly . that som were slayn in the  
way And some sau'd hem self now here and now  
there / And amonge all other Saturne was so nyhe  
poursiewed by Archas and some of tharchadyens 25  
that he had no leyser to retorne in to Crete . but was  
dryuen by force tyll he cam vnto a porte of the see that  
was ther by . where he sau'd hym self by moyen of a  
shippe that he ther fonde / And ther he wente vnto the  
see wyth some of them that fledde so sore greuyd and 30



anoyed that he might not speke &c : : .

**T**Hus thys batayll ended of the fader and the  
sone / whan Archs sawe that saturne was sa-  
uyd in the see / he retorned to Iupiter hys fader  
5 that assemblid again his peple and told hym these ty-  
dynges / And also more ouer he assemblid his counceill  
for to wete what Iupiter shold doo / and they of the  
counceyll were all of the oppynyon that Iupiter shold  
goo in to Crete . and that they wold make hym kynge  
10 Sayyng that the goddes had shewyd clerly that they  
wold that he shold succede as kynge in the royame /  
wherof his fader was fled fro and also for so moche  
as they had than no heed To this counceill accorded Iu-  
piter / and wente to Crete / by space of tyme where he  
15 was resseyuyd for kynge / ffor the cytezeyns durst not  
agaynfaye hit for as moche as they wiste neuer wher  
saturne was become / And how well that Cibell and  
vesca maad grete sorowe for the Infortune of saturne  
Allewey they torned theyr sorowe in to gladnesse at  
20 the coronacion of Iupiter . and sente after Iuno / And  
than began Iupiter to regne in destribuyng and depar-  
tyng vnto the Archadyens the tresours of hys fader /  
wherof they had grete Ioye and gladnes / and for this  
cause sayen the poettes . that Iupiter geldyd his fader  
25 and caste his genytoyrs in to the see . of whom was en-  
gendryd venus / That is to saye that he castyd the tre-  
sours of hys fader in to the belyes of his men / wherof  
engendryd alle delectation whyche is comparyd and  
lykenyd vnto venus &c

30 ¶ How Acrisius had a doughter named danes / the whiche

he did do shette in a tour for as moche as he had an Answer that she shold haue a sone the whyche shold torne hym in to a stone &::.

**I**N these dayes whan Iupiter of Crete flourysshid in honour strength prowesse and vaylliance . In the Cyte of Arges regned the ryght myghty kynge Acrisius / that his doughter Danes did do beshitte and kepte in a tour / ffor to knowe the genealogye of this kynge acrysius in this partye hit is to be noted that of Iupiter born of archade and of a damoy-  
sell named yfis cam a sone named Epaphus . This epaphus engendryd a sone and a doughter the sone was named belus and regned in a partye of Egypte : And the doughter had to name Libye . and dwellyd in Af-  
fryque where she conceyuyd a sone named Busiers  
that was an vnhumayn tyraunt . as shall be said here after in the dedes of hercules / Belus than engendrid two  
sones / Danaus and Egistus . danaus had fifty doughters . and Egistus had as many sones . And thise sones and doughters were conioyned to geder by maryage  
wenyng Egistus right well to haue married his sones but he was deceyued of his wenyng . ffor danaus for enuye and couetyse to haue the succession . maad that by his doughters trayterously shold be murdryd alle  
fifty sones of the said egistus the fyrst nyght of theyr  
esponsailles as they slepte . & all they concentid in this  
foule horrible cryme & synne / except oon allone named  
ypermestra . whiche had a stedfast herte of pyte . ffor  
whan she shold haue persecutid her husbond linceus  
she saued hym his lyf mercifully . And also conceyued  
of his seed a sone that was named Abas . that after



was kynge of Arges / And he engendryd the kynge  
 Acrysius wherof is maad mencion in the begynnyng  
 of this Chappitre / These were the parentes and proge-  
 nyttours of kynge Acrysius . he was ryght puyffant  
 5 in rycheffe / But he named hym self poure . ffor he had  
 no Chyldren but oon doughter only whyche was na-  
 med Danes . but for to haue a sone / he wente day by  
 day in to temples and oracles of the goddes / And ther  
 made many prayers and sacrefices ynowhe fastynges  
 10 almeffes and other suffrages / Alle these thynges myght  
 not helpe ner brynge to exaudycion the accomplyfhe-  
 ment of his desire / His wyf cam vnto her bareyn yeres  
 And than he was out of alle hope to haue ony chyl-  
 maale / and than he confortyd hym in danes his dought-  
 15 ter / And sette hys loue so gretly in her / that he had no  
 pleafance but only to beholde her / and that he purpo-  
 syd that neuer no man shold haue her ner wedde her but  
 yf he were the moſte noble and vayllaynt man of the  
 world / but for as moche as in this world is no thinge  
 20 pardurable / This loue was of lityll enduryng . and  
 that by the purchas of the kynge Acrysius / ffor as the  
 loue that he had in danes grewe in ampliacion of natu-  
 rell Ielowſie / he wente hym in to thoracle of god Be-  
 lus his old grauntfader / And ſerchyng what ſhold be  
 25 the deſtynee of his doughter / he dide hym to be anſwerd  
 that of her ſhold come a Sone that ſhold torne hym  
 in to ſtone & :: :: .

30 **B**Y this anſwer Acrysius began to falle from the  
 grete loue that he had in his doughter / he retor-  
 nyd ſorofull and penſyf in to his hows and



becam all melancolik with out takyng Ioye ne plaifir  
in ony thyng that he sawe . his doughter was than  
yonge . he sawe her often tymes . otherwile in cruelte  
and some tyme in pite / the remors of that that he throw-  
ed to be transformed in to stoon by hym that by destine  
shold be born of his doughter / meuyd hym to a cruelte  
in suche wyse that often tymes he determyned that he  
wold put her to deth And so to spille his blood to the  
ende for to remedye his Infortune / but whan he had  
take in his hand the glayue wherwyth he wened to  
slee her / Nature began to medle and put hym betwene  
bothe . And of this cruelte he maad hym to condescende  
to pyte . and to put away his glayue . and to late the  
shedying of her blood . that was come of his owne  
blood the whiche shold come to the succession of his  
crowne whiche his auntyent progenytours had or-  
deyned to fore &c : .

**F**or to saye the verite this kyng Acrisyus from  
thens forth toke his reste trauerse of many  
syghis . he coude not be assured . his doughter  
grew and becam a woman she was passyng fayr  
and right well adressed / many kynges & grete ertheli  
lordes desired to haue her in mariage and wold endowe  
her with noble Crownes . but the kyng Acrisyus re-  
fused all them that requyred her And ymagyned that  
his doughter for her grete beawte might be taken away  
and rauysshed . by whiche she myght by auenture  
haue a sone that shold torne hym in to stone . And to  
the ende to eschewe this pareill & daunger / he thoughte  
that he wold make a tour the strengest of the world  
And that in the same tour shold his doughter danes be

closed and shette duryng her lyf wyth out comyng of  
ony man to her / ffor he was so Ielous of her that he be-  
leuyd her not well whan he sawe her / In the ende he  
sent for werkemen and forgiers of stele and of copper  
5 from alle partyes . And brought hem vnto a stronge  
place alle enuyronned wyth waters where was no  
entre but in oon place &c : : : : .

10 **W**Han he had brought theder all his werkemen  
he sayd to them that he wold haue a tour made  
alle of copper wyth a gate departyd from the  
tour for to put In four & twenty men of armes for to  
kepe the tour yf hyt were nede / the werkemen bargay-  
ned with the kyng Acrisyus to make the tour and the  
gate / they sette on hande to the werke / the towr was  
15 maad by proceffe of tyme / And than whan alle was  
achieued . Acrisyus brought theder his doughter with-  
out latyng her knowe his entencion . And also sone as  
she was in the tour he sayd to her / My only doughter  
hit is comen vnto my knowleche / that in serchyng thy  
20 prosperyte to my god belus / I haue ben aduertised that  
of the shall come a sone whiche shall conuerte & torne  
me in to stone / Thou knowest that euery man naturelly  
coueytyth and desireth thenduryng to lyue in his lyf / I  
loue the passyng well / and no thyng in the world  
25 so moche sauf my lyf / But certayn my lyf toucheth  
more ner to my herte / than thy loue / wherfore I sekyng  
and requyryng the remedies ayenst myn predestynat  
Infortune / I wolde neur gyue the in maryage to ony  
man that hath required or desired the . Also to thende that  
30 generacion descende not of thy body / And that thou

sholdest haue no knowleche of man duryng my lyf / I  
haue do forgid this tour of copper / and wille that thou  
be closed and shytted therein . And that no man see the / I  
pray the my doughter accorde the vnto my will and  
desire . And take pacyence in thys place for to passe thy  
tyme . I shall do accompanye the with many noble vir-  
gynes . And shall gyue vnto the alle that / that thou  
canst or mayst thenke &c : .

**W**Han the noble damoyzell Danes vnderstode  
the will of her fader she beheldeth the tour of cop-  
per for to kepe her shytte faste therein . And fur-  
ther she considerid that she shold neuer marye duryng  
the lyf of her fader the kynge . she was sore troubled  
in these thynges . And by grete bitternesse and sorow-  
full herte began to wepe and said / Alas my fader am  
I born vnder so vnhappy constellacion for to be a mar-  
teresse and prissoner / not in the ende of myn yeres . but  
in my yonge tyme Not in a pryson of stone or symēt  
but in a tour of copper & laton in suche wise as I shold  
dwelle therein perpetuely My fader what hast thou  
thought . thou enterpretest euyl the sentence of the god  
belus sayng that of me shall be born a sone that shall  
torne the in to stone . ffor by this sentence . ought none  
other thyng be vnderstande . but that I shall haue a  
sone that shall regne after the . And shall torne the in  
to stone . That is to saie that he shall putte the in to thy  
sepulture . . beholde than what sympleesse shall hit be to  
the to hold me thus enfermed and shytte in this tour  
My doughter answerd Acrisius thou interpretest the  
prenoſtication of our god belus after that the liketh to  
thy Ioye and prouffyt hit lieth me fore on my herte



yf thou haue a sone / he shall putte me to deth and that  
is my Iugement / ne wythfaye no more ayenst me I am  
thy fader / lorde and mayster ouer the / thou shalt abyde  
here eyther by loue or otherwyse / At thys concludion  
5 whan danes sawe that she myght not contente her fer-  
full fader / as wyse and sage as she was she agreed  
and accorded to do his playsyr / Sayng hyt with the  
mouth and not wyth the herte / And than the kynge  
sente for virgynes and also olde matrones in alle the  
10 royaume aboute / And delyuerid his doughter vnto them  
for to accompanye serue and kepe / and maad hem all  
to beshette and closed / After he toke leue of them / coman-  
dyng vpon payne of deth / that they ne souffryd ony  
man to come and speke wyth his doughter with oute  
15 his wytyng and knowleche / whan he had thus doon  
he retorned in to the cyte of arges. and assemblid fourty  
stronge women / whiche he gaf wages & sowlde and  
sente hem to kepe the gate and the entre of the tour / And  
than aroos the renomee of these thynges in so grete a  
20 soūn & noyse that all grece was full of the meruaylles  
and ther was no kyng ne prynce / that ne complayned  
the losse of the youth of fayr danes than holden & na-  
med the most fair of alle the grekes / doughter of the  
kynge &c : : :

25 ¶ How Iupiter in gyse of a messanger brought vnto  
the tour of darrayn to the damoyelles and to danes  
many Iewels saynyng that he cam from Iupiter : : .

30 **B**y this tour & by this moyen Acrisyus thought  
to ouercome his pdestynat Infortune / and was  
well eased that his doughter was in so seur a  
place / Alle the world spacke of her and of her tour

by compaſſion they cōplayned her / hit was ſo moche  
ſpoken of this caas that Iupiter had his eeres full ther-  
of . And not onely his eeres but alſo and his herte . ffor  
in heryng the recomendacion of the exceſſiue perfeccion of  
this virgyne Danes . he was amorous of her ſo gretli  
and deſirouſly like as the mariage of hym and Iuno  
had be conſumed . And than he began with alle his  
herte to thenke how and whan and in what maner he  
myght come to ſee this damoyſell danes . And ſo mo-  
che he thoughte & ſtudyed in this mater / that ther was  
none other thyng that he wold here of ner no deuyses  
of his men . ſaue only of them that ſpake of the pryſon  
of danes And he ſpak gladly and deuysed with good  
will coueytyng Inſtantly to be with her / And that as  
well in the pſence of Iuno as other wiſe . whiche ſaid  
many tymes . that he wold that the goddes wold gyue  
hym grace and power to brynge this damoyſell danes  
out of the tour &c : :

**B**y this mene & theſe deuyses Iuno was in doubt  
and began to fele the firſte ſparklis of Ielouſie  
caſtyng Inſynye curſes and malediccions vp-  
on danes / and vpon all them that had ſowen theſe ty-  
dynges to fore her huſbond not only in couert and in  
her ſtomack / but more openly in the preſence of her huſ-  
bond ſhewyng euidently that ſhe had thataynte of  
Ielowſie . This notwithstanding Iupiter ne was the  
laſſe deſirous for to ſee danes than he was to fore / the  
malediccions ne curſes myght not lette ne withdrawe  
his affeccions / whiche grewe more and more . In the  
ende he fonde hym ſelf ſo ſurmounted that ther was  
no more contynence founden . And that in the diffinycōn



to deuise entencions and conclusions he concluded to go  
vnto the gardyens and kepars of the damoyfell danes  
and that he wold bere vnto them so largely & so many  
owches of gold & Iewels wyth monye of gold that  
5 he wold torne hem with his yestes to acorde to hym &  
late hym entre in to the tour of danes / Than he sente for  
the Iewellers þ<sup>t</sup> were wonte to serue his fader saturne  
And maad hem make the moste ryche bagues and  
owches that were euer seen or thought / whan the werk-  
10 men had made a partye / Iupiter toke hem and charged  
hym with all / And euyll clothed lyke as he had ben  
a seruaunt allone departed from crete and drewe hym  
to Arges the moste secretli that he myght / and so wente  
and cam sechyng the tour of darayn . whiche he fonde  
15 in an euenyng & sawe the walles shynyng and cam vn-  
to the gate where he fonde many of the matrones fyt-  
tyng at the dore for recreacion &c : : .

20 **W**Han Iupiter was comen he salewed the Ma-  
trones and said vnto them . Noble dames the  
good nyght come to yow / what tour is thys  
that is so noble & of so stronge facion . ffayr sone said  
the eldest of them . ye be not of this contre for as moche  
as ye knowe not the name of this tour / knowe ye cer-  
tainly that hit is named the tour of darayn / and this  
25 is the propre place that the kyng Acrisius hath do make  
for to kepe his doughter the virgyne danes / whiche is  
accompliffhed of all vertues and honorable manyers  
that ther lyke is not in alle thys worlde / But the  
poure mayde is so moche Infortunat / that her fader  
30 acrisius holdeth her in this tour shitte for that he had an  
answer of hys goddes that of hys doughter danes



shold be born a childe that shold torne hym in to stone  
This is the cause wherfore we ben and kepe her that  
no man ne conuerse with her in no facōn And her fader  
is the kynge Acrisius whiche is so fore smeton to the  
herte with Ielowfye that yf he knewe of your beyng 5  
here . he wold sende to destroye yow . And therfore  
withdrawe yow and goth forth on your way. Iupī-  
ter heryng the answer of the woman gaf no regard  
vnto her wordes . sauyng his eeres / ffor he emploied his  
eyen vnto the regarde of the tour / And seeyng that hit 10  
was Imprenable for ony assault As well for the  
strenght of the place where hit was founded on . as for  
that hit was nyghe the Cyte of Arges whyche was  
right stronge / he considered in hym self that for to come  
and see this mayde he coude not obteyne but by the mo- 15  
yen of these women . And than thus answerd to the  
old woman . I thanke you of your good aduertisement  
I am moche beholden vnto yow / but I shall yet say  
more vnto yow . yf hit please yow . I am sent vnto the da-  
moyfelles of this place fro the right myghty kynge Iu- 20  
piter of Crete for to delyuere to them certayn presentes  
on his behalue . wherfore I pray yow that hit please  
yow to gyue me assistance anenst them / whan the olde  
matrone vnderstood of Iupiter and that he brought  
presentes vnto the damoiselles she answerd hym that 25  
he was right welcome / And maad hym to entre in to  
a lityll chambre whiche was by the gate for to speke  
therin to her frendes whan they cam to visite them . And  
than she wente in to the chambre of danes . and there  
assembled alle the women of the place and said vnto 30  
them . My felawes the kynge Iupiter of Crete greteth

yow well by oon of hys seruantes / whom I haue  
putte in to the chambret of the yate / he hath sayd to me  
that he hath brought certayn presentes . See ye now  
whether ye will resseyue hem or not and what I shall  
s answere to the messanger &c : . .

**T**He damoyfelles were right Ioyous and glad  
whan they herd these tydynges and toke their  
counceyll to gyder / and concluded that they  
wolde take and resseyue these presentes of the kynge  
10 Iupiter / Than they descended in to the chambrete and  
fested the mesager whiche dide hem reuerence . and said  
to them . Ladyes and damoyfelles your renomee is so  
grete that hit hath meuyd the kynge Iupiter to desyre  
your loue / In fygne of whiche he hath sente to yow of  
15 his Iewels . and praieth yow to resseyue them in thank  
And that he recomandyth hym vnto the right noble  
grace of your maistres the kynges doughter / with these  
wordes Iupiter opend his sacke of lether wherin were  
his Iewels and delyuerid them vnto the damoyfelles  
20 whan they had resseyued them and seen them what  
they were / they were all abasshed for to see thynges  
so precious and sayd that they wold goo and shewe  
hem to their maistresse / And forthwith they wente vp  
in to the tour and shewyd their present vnto danes /  
25 Sygnefyyng her that the kynge Iupiter recomandyd  
hym vnto her noble grace / Also sone as thys noble vir-  
gyne had seen these Iewels / She sayd that hit muste  
nedes be that Iupiter was riche & large and that the  
yest that he had yeuen was more of value than all the  
30 royaume of arges / and also that she wold that the man

that had brought these Jewels were fested as hit ap-  
perteyneth and also thanked in her name . Than the da-  
moyfelles by the comandement of danes wente to feste  
the messanger of kynge Iupiter the beste wyse that  
they myght the moste parte of the nyght in mete and  
drynke / And than cam the aged woman that had first  
spoken with hym and said to hym . My sone the may-  
den danes thanketh the kynge Iupiter of the courtoysie  
that hit hath plesid hym to do to her damoyfelles . And  
she taketh her self gretly beholden to hym and to yow  
that haue taken the payne to brynge them / yf ther may  
please yow any thyng here in . spare not this hous : :

**D**Ame answerd Iupiter ye do me to moche ho-  
nour that oon half / yf ther be any thyng in crete  
to your pleasir . Axe ye hit / and certaynly ye  
shall be serued wyth good herte . And than they tal-  
ked so longe that hit was tyme to wythdrawe hym  
Iupiter toke leue of the damoyfelles & concluded that  
he wold retorne into his contre on the morn erly . what  
shall I saye more Iupiter toke this nyght as moche  
rest as he myght . and had the herte so surprised that he  
awoke more than he neded for the hour was not come  
for that he attended for to speke to danes / He returned  
secretli in to Crete And did do make newe Jewels mo-  
che more riche and more precious than the other were  
for to go a gayn and presente to the damoyfelles / and  
as sone as was to hym possible . he gadrid to geder as  
many as wold charge an hors . After this on a mor-  
nyng erly he laded an hors with these Jewels . and  
with oute wetyng of any persone / with the same he



fo laboured that with oute auenture he cam vnto to the  
tour / And there assemblid the damoyfelles & dide hem  
reuerence and sayd to them / Ladyes and damoyfelles  
the kynge Iupiter hath yow so in his grace that know-  
5 yng by the reporte of me what feste and Ioye ye maad  
late of his Iewels / he hath sente vnto yow / and in his  
name I presente to yow these Iewels that I haue nowe  
brought / prayng that the presente may be acceptable &  
agreable / and that hit plaife yow to do so moche vnto  
10 your maistresse / that I myght a litil speke with her for  
to aduertise her yf hit plaife her of certain secrete thinges  
that towche her / & wherof I am charged by Iupiter : .

¶ How Iupiter in the guyse of a messanger wyth  
many Iewels cam the seconde tyme to see danes / and  
15 how he spacke & gaf her in knowleche what he was  
and how he laye with her the same nyght : .

Whan Iupiter had achieuyd his purpoos / he des-  
ploied his merceryes / and whan the matrones  
had vnderstand of Iupiter that he desired to haue  
20 grace to speke with danes / They wente vnto the mayde  
by the counceil of the olde woman for to haue her oppy-  
nyon / & comyng with hem the olde woman she had the  
wordes for hem all / And said my doughter the kynge  
Iupiter hath sente hether the burthen of a hors of þ<sup>e</sup> most  
25 fairest Iewels that euer ye sawe / Certes hit is a tryum-  
phe to see them / notwithstanding we durst not resseyue  
them for as moche as the messanger requireth to speke  
with yow / whiche is vs defended by your fader / See  
what we shal doo . we ben gretly beholden vnto þ<sup>e</sup> kyng  
30 Iupiter of his courtosies . but whan we behold the strait  
comandement of your fader . we wyte neuer what to

do . Whan the mayden danes had herd the wordes and  
the tydynges of the old woman She was right pen-  
fyf . but not for that she ne spared not to saie that . that  
her herte Iugged her And thus answerd . My moder  
ye knowe well and hit nedeth not to telle yow . that  
he that doeth shewe loue and curtoisie . ought to be than-  
kyd by semblable . The kynge Iupiter as ye haue to me  
said hath ofte tymes doon for vs . the first good cometh  
from hym . me thynketh vnder all correccions . that we  
may well suffre hym speke with me / Hit is a lityll  
thinge of his seruaunt or varlet . the kynge my fader  
shall neuer knowe hit / hit is no nede that he knowe  
all that shall falle . but first shewe to hym . howe hit  
is defendid yow vpon the lyf that no man speke with  
me . And make hym promyse and swere that he shall  
kepe this thyng secrete &c : .

**T**He damoifels and the olde woman Ioious of  
thanfwer of the mayde wente down from the  
tour vnto the gate . And fyndyng Iupiter besy  
to desplaye and vnbynd his Iewels / the old woman  
said vnto hym / ffair sone the kynge Iupiter hath foun-  
den more grace here in this place anenst the maide danes  
than all the men in the world . Neuertheles ye ought  
to knowe that vpon payne of deth . hit is to yow defen-  
ded and to other by vs . And we ben also defended vp-  
on the same paine by the kynge Acrisius . that we shall  
late no man liuyng speke with her / The comaundemēt  
of the kynge is so grete . And your requeste is not lityll  
Certes we dar not brynge yow vnto her alle thyng  
concyderid . ffor yf hit were knowen with out faute  
we shold be all put in to the ffyre . And perauenture yf



ye were founden here with in by the kyng that cometh  
 often tymes hether he wolde put yow to deth / wherfore  
 we pray yow that hit please yow to excuse vs a yensft  
 your maystre / By the comprysing of this answer Iu-  
 5 piter fonde nought that he soughte / And than he helde  
 hym more ner in dyspayre than he dyde in hope . but he  
 remembrid that a beggar shold not go away for ones  
 warnyng / And sayd vnto the olde woman to the be-  
 gynnyng of her answer / Dame ye do well yf ye fere  
 10 and drede the kyng / whiche is to me no meruayll / All  
 way his comandement is not so strait / but that ye may  
 enlarge hyt yf ye wyll / he hath deffended that none  
 shall speke wyth her / The kyng Iupiter requyreth  
 that his seruant may saye to her sertayn thynges secrete  
 15 towchyng her honour / ye shall doo that pleseth yow  
 but in trouth yf ye acorde hym his requeste / the accorde  
 shall not be preuidyciable to yow in ony thyng . ffor  
 the kyng Iupiter is no pletar and knoweth so moche  
 of the worlde / that vnto yow he had not sent me yf he  
 20 had not found me secrete / And thus yf ye wold doo  
 to hym any pleasyr ye haue none excusacion resonable /  
 None knoweth herof but ye and I / yf I speke vnto  
 the Mayde by your consente / who shall accuse vs / hit  
 shall not be ye for the mater toucheth yow / And hit  
 25 shall not be . I . nor the kyng Iupiter / ffor sartaynly  
 we had leuer dye in sorofull deth and also abyde in-  
 deffamable payne &c. : : : : .

30 **F**Air sone answerd the old woman / ye speke so  
 swetly / þ<sup>t</sup> we may not / ner can yeue vnto yow  
 the reffuse of your requeste we dare well assye



and truste in yow . Alas dame answerd Iupiter doubt-  
ye / whan I shall sawte ayenst yow or ony other / I be-  
fmyten with the thonder and tempeste I wold verita-  
bly that ye had the prerogatyf to knowe the humayn  
thoughtes to the ende that in Iugyng of my corage by 5  
your Iugement were the mayde assured not to haue by  
my cause ony Inconuenyence / with these wordes Iupi-  
ter drewe to his will the olde woman and all the da-  
moyfelles as well by his subtyll langage as by his  
richeffes . ffor short proceffe the old woman accorded 10  
to Iupiter that he shall haue the grace to speke with  
the mayde . And brought hym to fore her with all his  
prefentes / Iupiter had than more Ioye than I can write  
And whan he was thus aboue the tour of darayn  
in beholdyng the ample beaulte of danes his Ioye dow- 15  
blid / & he knewe her lightly by her beawte . And made  
vnto her reuerence sayng . Right noble & right accom-  
pliffhid damoyfell the kyng Iupiter saleweth yow  
by me . And sendeth vnto the women of this hous of  
suche goodes as fortune hath gyuen to hym . yf hit be 20  
your pleasir they shall receyue them . And after I shall  
saie vnto yow certayn thinges secrete whiche the kyng  
Iupiter your seruauant hath chargyd me to saye vnto  
yow . My frende answerd danes sauf your honour the  
kyng Iupiter is not my seruauant / but I my self am behol- 25  
den to hym and am his seruauant / And thanke hym of  
the largeffes that semeth as he had reyned gold in this  
place . hit is ryght agreable to me þ<sup>s</sup> the women of this  
tour haue your present / And hit plefeth me well also  
to here your charge . to thende that kyng Iupiter saye 30  
not that I were vnkynde &c : : .

**T**He Matrones and the damoifelles were pre-  
 sent at this answer / Iupiter deliuerid vnto them  
 his Iewels whiche they reffeyued with grete  
 gadnes / After that . danes toke the mefanger by the  
 5 hande and lad hym a parte vnto the beddes fyde where  
 she maad hym to lene by her / And than whan Iupiter  
 fonde hym fo allone wyth danes / he sayd vnto her /  
 Ryght noble damoyfelle / I fhall no more calle yow  
 damoyfelle but lady . ffor ye ar my lady and my only  
 10 mayftrefse whiche haue maiftred myn herte / and alfo  
 haue ouercome me vnder the fowne and bruyt of your  
 glorious loos and name / ffor to aduertysse yow verily  
 I am Iupiter / of whom now I haue fpoken to yow at  
 the presentacion of the Iewels / And hyt is trouth that  
 15 hit is not longe fythen whan I was in my royaume / for  
 to here reported the manere how your fader helde yow  
 fhette in thys tour wyth lityll good that may acorde  
 vnto your honour / as well as for to gete your thanke  
 and grace . as for pyte wher with I was meuyd / I haue  
 20 delyberid in my herte to employe my self vnto your de-  
 lyuerance and alfo for to gete your grace / and for to  
 execute this deliberacōn / I haue taken partye of my tre-  
 fours & am come hether to p̄sent them vnto your damoi-  
 felles / and fo departid and of newe am comen agayn in  
 25 hope to haue your loue / and wherof I am well contente  
 and thanke mercy & fortune Alas madame yf I am fo  
 hardy as for to haue put myself in thauenture of my lyf  
 for to shewe the grete loue p̄t I haue in yow / excuse me . yf  
 I haue entreprised thynges so hye that I ne me hold wor-  
 30 thy to touche hyt but in the affyance of fortune & in fo  
 moche as she wil me fauour in this pyte / madame than

in the concideracion of my wordes . ye may see my lyf or  
my deth And ye only may lightly make the Iugement  
yf your humylite condescende in the knowleche of pyte  
that I haue had of yow / disposing my self in to the daũ-  
ger / where I might be sure . I am now nyhe the leoparde 5  
whiche ye may saue And yf not I yeld me your pry-  
sonner Certes the shynyng resplendissour of your re-  
nomed beawte . wherof the dede passeth the renome and  
the tryumphe of your Incompared excellence hath enra-  
ched myn herte And hath brought me hether in to the 10  
pryson of your will . Alas madame behold ande see  
with your eyen full of swetenes and of clemence me  
whiche seeth not at this time . but languyshe in faute  
of reſte in contynuell trauayll in furies redowblyd & in  
fighes vpon fighes whiche may not be pourueied of re- 15  
medie but by your benyngnite & amorous purueyance.

**A**T the begynnyng of the first recomendacyon  
that was maad of yow in my preſence . And  
at the poynt that I entreprised to delyuere you  
out of this tour / I helde me ſelf right ewro<sup>p</sup> / and happy 20  
be cauſe of ſo hye an enterpryſe . but ſeeyng the pannels  
where I fynde only my ſelf ſyn . I wote neuer what I  
may ſaie of my ſelf . ffor by moneth vpon moneth . weke  
vpon weke And day vpon day your name hath had  
domynacion on me . And ofte tymes hath conſtraynd 25  
me to be rauyſhed and yet more in a traunce be deſire  
to ſpeke to yow . and to ymagyne how I ſhold come  
to the poynt where I now am . And not only in this . but  
alſo to fynde mercy in yow . And I pray & requyre yow  
right humbly that the amorous yeſte of mercy ye will 30



to me acorde / and thus doyng ye shall do mercy to your  
self and haue pyte of your yonge daies whiche ye haue  
consentyd to lese / by the folyssh fantasies of the kynge  
your fader / ye knowe well that his lyf during he shal  
5 not suffre yow to be maried to ony man . hit is possible  
that your fader shall lyue as longe as ye / ffor he is  
stronge of membres hard and boistous / Also ye ought  
conceyue yf ye wyll beleue me / that your lyf hath no  
welthe ne playfanse only / the playfances come vnto  
10 the peple by the syght and by beholdyng of dyuerce  
thynges / the women syngulerly haue their pryncypal  
plaifirs in her huibondes & in her generacōn and lignyes  
ye ne may come here to / but yf ye haue mercy on your  
self / Is hit not in your consait and knowleche that no  
15 man hath but his lyf in this world / ffor as moche as  
ye obeie and complaife the folish comandement of your  
fader the kynge Acrisius / ye shall be a woman losse be-  
yng in this place / hit is not possible to take and haue  
pacience / This is to hard a thyng vnto a yonge herte  
20 to be put in prifon with oute demerite / I knowe the hu-  
mayn affecciōs and vnderstande that naturelly euery  
creature loueth his prouffit to fore the prouffit of an  
other / This is ayenst your prosperite and vtilite that  
ye be shitte here with Inne / how may ye haue loue vnto  
25 hym whiche is cause of two euillis . the lasse euyll is to  
chese syn that ye fele yowe condempned here vnto the  
ende of the dayes of your fader / dowte ye not but hys  
ende is ofte desired to his myschef for your sake . and his  
meschief may not ye do be don with oute grete charge of  
30 conscience / me thynketh that better hit were for yow in  
dyuerce facions to fynde manere to yssue and go out

of this place / and to take to husbonde some man noble  
 & puyssant / that wold entreprife to carye yow away  
 secretli for to be his wyf in his contrey / by this moyen  
 ye shall be delyuered fro the payne / where ye be in / ye  
 shuld eschewe the deth of your fader / And lasse euyl 5  
 ye shold do in fleyng his soliffh comandement than to  
 abyde in the poynt wher he hath putte yow / Madame  
 alas thynke ye hereon for your honour and helthe as I  
 haue sayd yow I am your seruaunt / and yf hit please  
 yow to departe from this place / ye shall fynde no man 10  
 redyer than I am for to kepe yow and conduyte I gyue  
 my self vnto your noble comandementes for to furniffh  
 your wyll to my power / as he that bereth allewey the  
 remembrance of yow in the most deppest place of my  
 mynde In slepyng I see yow and wakyng I thynke on 15  
 yow I haue had neuer reste in my self ner neuer shall  
 haue but yf hit please yow that my fortune my destynce  
 my happe or vnhappy come of yow / yf ye take me vnto  
 your mercy / and that I fynde grace anenft yow I shall  
 be the moste happyest of all happy & yf ye do otherwyse / 20  
 hit may be sayd that among all unhappy none shall  
 go to fore me / but whan suche fortune shal come to me  
 by your rygour I shall take hit in pacience for the No-  
 bleffe that I see in yow allewey I require yow that my  
 herte be not pryued ne put from yowr herte . . For as 25  
 moche as hit toucheth me / Alle the tonges of . men can-  
 not saye ner expresse the quantite of the loue that I haue  
 in yow / no more than they can pronounce by propre na-  
 mes / all the sterres of heuene / by this loue I am allewey  
 in thoughtes laboureus . en fighis anguysshou and ofte 30  
 tymes in grete fere and doubte And at this oure I wote



neuer whether I lyue or not / how wel me 'thinketh I am  
here for to reffeyue abfolucion or mortal ſentence Thife  
thinges cōſidered alas will not ye haue hym in your grace  
That for to deferue your loue & mercy hath abandonēd  
5 and auentured his lyf as ye maye ſee / leuyng his ryall  
aſtate for the better to kepe his caas ſecrete/vnto an herte  
well vnderſtanding ſewe wordes ſuffiſen / .For conclu-  
ſion I pray yow to gyue your herte vnto him.that hath gy-  
uen his vnto yow . and that ye pourueye from hens forth  
10 for þ<sup>e</sup> loſſe where ye now be Inne after þ<sup>e</sup> comyn Iugemēt

**W**ith this Iupiter helde his pees and kept ſcilence  
and entended hiſeeres for to here what ſhold be  
thanſwere of danes / The right noble damoyſell  
whan ſhe had herd this purpoos . whiche ſhe had fore no-  
15 ted And whan ſhe ſawe that he had gyuen her place to  
ſpeke / how wel ſhe was right aſſewred . ſhe changed  
colour & ſaid to hym / Syre kyng alas knowe ye well  
what ſhold be the renome that ſhold beleue with me. yf I  
ſhold beleue your counceyll / what ſhold the peple ſaye.  
20 madame anſwerd Iupiter / the worſte þ<sup>t</sup> they may ſaye  
ſhall be þ<sup>t</sup> men ſhall name yow dyſobeyſſant vnto the  
ſoliſſh comandement of your fader / whiche as all the  
world knoweth that he holdeth yow ſolily in his priſon  
here faſte ſhitte in / And yf ye wole thus helpe your ſelf  
25 & ſtele your ſelf away / men ſhold but lawhe for your  
youth ſhold excuſe your feet. and ye ſhold be renomēd  
to haue don this ſette by grete wiſedom / A ſire ſaid danes  
ye wene to deſceyue me by your fair & ſwete wordes / I  
knowe the ſpekinges of the argiens & alſo I knowe þ<sup>t</sup> I  
30 am bōūden to obey my fader / & forthermore I am not ſo  
ignorāt but that I wold wel haue ſom noble man to my



husbond but that myn honour were saued / and also  
that more is I knowleche þ<sup>t</sup> I am gretly beholden to hym  
that hath departyd here wyth in so largely of his tre-  
sours and Iewels / and in lyke wyse vnto yow yf hit  
be trouthe that ye be he that ye saye that ye ar / but  
whan I haue alle knowen and vnderstanden And seen  
visibli that thargiens shold deffame me to perpetuite  
And that my fader shold haue sent me where myn ho-  
nour shold strongly be defowled and put vndre  
foot . And also that I haue none other knowleche of  
yow / but by your propre declaracion I will in no wise  
abuse yow . ner ye shall haue no destourbance for my  
cause but I praye yow to thinke on other part and that  
ye late and suffre me only with my felawship and  
frendes &c . : .

15

**M**Adame answerd Iupiter be ye in dowte of me  
that I am not Iupiter kinge of crete yf I be other  
alle the goddes confounde me and the thonders  
falle on me / the swalowe of the see resseyue me . And  
that I be giuen to mete vnto the most venymous bestes  
of the world . O madame put no suspencion in my  
feet . as I haue said to yow . I am comen to yow not in  
ryall astate / but in symple aray / for to conduyte my  
thinges more secretly / yet at the leste / at this first tyme  
accorde ye my requeste / take ye day of aduise / and that  
to morn I may speke ones to yow . and ye shall coun-  
ceylle yow well this nyght .

**T**He noble mayde danes had than the blood  
esmeuyd that wyth grete payne she wiste not  
what to doo she durst not beholde Iupiter . For  
shame smote her in the eyen . This not withstanding

her hert comaunded her to see what man he was / And  
 whether he had the chyere of a noble man or of a kynge  
 At hardest she toke day of aduys / And accorded to hym  
 that she wolde speke agayn to hym on the morn / After  
 5 this / she dide the tables to be coueryd by the damoyfells  
 And sayde that she wold feste the messanger of kinge  
 Iupiter / The damoyfelles heeryng that Answerd that  
 they alle were moche bounden to feste him and to make  
 hym grete chyere / and shewd to her their riches that  
 10 they had / all arowe in the chambre / wherof the walles  
 shone and were bryght / what shall I saye more the da-  
 moyfelles arayed wyth the Iewellis of Iupiter / Gar-  
 nysshid the tables wyth mete / Danes & Iupiter were  
 sette oon agaynst that other / the seruyse was gret  
 15 and riche and had I nowh to ete / how well that Iupi-  
 ter ne danes gaf lityll fors of etyng / Iupiter ete lasse  
 bodyly than spirituelly / he was in traunces in doubtan-  
 ces and feeser he had an answer by whiche he coude  
 not glose no thyng to his prouffyt saauf oonly that he  
 20 hopid that danes shold discouere hit vnto the damo-  
 yffelles in suche wyse as the yonge maydens ben of cus-  
 tome to discouere that on to that other / & that whan  
 ony requyre them of loue that they shold be in fauour  
 to hym the more for his yestes / In this estate was the  
 25 kynge Iupiter for his parte / The damoyfelles behelde  
 hym I nowh and sayde / that he had not the mayn-  
 teygne of a yoman or of a seruaunt / / but of a man  
 of ryght noble and grete facion / And aboue alle o-  
 ther danes to whom Iupiter had gyuen cause to be  
 30 penyf / Caste her eyen vpon Iupiter vpon hys conte-  
 nance vpon his facion vpon hys beaulte / And than

her femed that he had fayd trouth / as well than as in  
the nyght folowyng ſhe began to fele the ſparklis of  
loue / and ſeeyng his richeſſes that he had gyuen in the  
hows / ſhe varied to gyue to hym her herte and her loue  
of this variacion to whiche her herte enclyned / ſhe  
was right acertayned and fermly / that her engyne her  
entendemēt were entrelarded of habondaunt thoughtes  
Many noble men had required her loue afore tyme  
that ſhe was ſhette in the tour / and coude neuer torne  
her herte ner cauſe to ſighe and thenke for her requētes  
The only wordes of Iupiter were ſo ewrews and  
happy that conſtraynd her to exaudicion and parſayt  
penſifnes / brekyng all doutes and contrarie oppynyons  
¶ How Iupiter cam from his chambre by nyght and  
laye in the tour of darrain wyth the damoyſell danes  
on the whyche he engendryd the noble perſeus .

**S**O longe dured the ſteſtoying of Iupiter that  
hit was oure and tyme to wythdrawe Than  
danes toke leue of Iupiter and dyde do conueye  
hym in to a ſecrete chambre by her damoyſelles  
whan Iupiter was departyd ſhe entryd in to her  
chambre accompanied only wyth the olde woman  
that was her maiſtreſſe whiſhe had charge on her  
aboue all other / and as ſone as the olde woman had  
her pryuely in her chambre / as ſhe that was malicio<sup>9</sup>  
ſayde to her / my doughter telle me of your tidynges /  
I muſt nedes knowe what thinge this meſſanger hath  
ſayd to yow / Dame anſwerd danes . woll ye wete  
ye ſayd the olde woman / than anſwerd danes / he  
muſte come hym ſelf and make the raiport / . For he hath  
ſayd to me ſo many thynges that the tenth part is



not in my mynde / My doughter said the olde woman  
I thinke well he is not comen hether wyth out cause  
what hath he sayd / yf ye haue not all in mynde / telle me  
at leste / that abideth and resteth in your mynde / Dame  
5 answerd danes ye knowe well that neuer I mystru-  
sted yow / And that the secretenes of myn herte to yow  
hath alwey ben open / I wyll now make no newe custo-  
mes / .For to shorte this mater / he that nameth hym ser-  
uant of Iupiter / is Iupiter him self by his raport and hath  
10 maad grete othes that he hath do maad thyse presentes  
and yestes for to speke to me / In dede he hath shewyd  
to me how I lose here my tyme / And hath requyred me  
to be his wyf to whiche I haue not yet consentyd / but  
I haue taken day for to gyf an answer to morn hopyng  
15 to take your counceyll / And therfore I pray yow that  
ye me counceyll in that I haue to do and what answer  
he shall haue of me / ye knowe how I haue suffrid his  
yestes to be resseyued he muste be contentid by som ma-  
ner / by fayr speche or other wyse.

20 **T**His olde woman had ben other tyme in the hous  
of kynge melliseus and there had seen Iupiter in  
the tyme of his retorne of his conqueste of ar-  
chade / and had in pertye knowleche of him syn the first  
day that he cam theder / this notwythstondyng she dou-  
25 tyd of his persone for as moche as men otherwhile ben  
like oon to an other And she had alway her eye on hym  
whan than she had vnderstande by danes that had told  
her that he was Iupiter / she was seure that hit was he  
in hys persone / and had grete Ioye saynge / my doughter  
30 certainly I knowe hym that we speke and deuyse of  
longe tyme past / And for his persone I assure yow / hit

is he / that hath don yow to vnderstonde of / but vnto the  
regarde for to counceyllle yow / yf ye take hym vnto  
your hufbonde I can saye none other wyse to yow / but  
that he is oon of the most vailliantest of the world  
and that his entrepryses ben right hye / and yf I had a 5  
doughter the moste best manerd of the world / ther is  
no man leuyng that I wold gyue her sonner vnto than  
to hym / yf hit plesid hym to take her / ye see that not-  
wythstandyng his symple aray that he is a goodly  
man he is noble / he is ryche / he is wyse / he is a kynge / ye 10  
fele in your self your corage / yf ye wole vse and ob-  
serue the comandement of your fader / ye may not with  
hym hold consistorie ne parlament / yf ye wyll absente  
yow from this place by good moyens ther is no man  
but Iupiter that may helpe yow / I counceyllle yow ney- 15  
ther that oon ne that other / chese ye and take the beste  
waye &c.

**A** My moder sayd danes how shold I chese my-  
self . ther is in me neyther wytte ne entende-  
ment to take that I shold chese . ne for to dis- 20  
cerne the good from the ywell . and as for me I shall  
put hit all in to your deliberacion . and wole that ye  
knowe that out of this tour wold I fayn bee myn ho-  
nour sauyd and the honour sauyd of my felawshyp .  
wyth thys cam In to them alle the damoyelles of the 25  
hous and sayd to her that they had made right good  
chere to theyr ghest . and thus saylled the secrete deuyses  
of danes and of the aged woman . the damoyelles  
wente and fette theyr Iewels . newly presented to  
hem and departed them eche after her porcion saynge 30  
that to kynge Iupiter was none like / but that he was



amonge all other the moſte large and the moſt honou-  
rable kynge of kynges.

**T**He mayde danes toke grete playſir wyth all  
theſe thinges / whan the damoyſelles had par-  
tyd among hem her Iewels of gold with grete  
5 Ioye / they brought danes to bedde / And departyd from  
her chambre whiche they leſte open by forgetyng / as  
they that had ſette alle her mynde and entendementes  
on her rycheſſes / And ſo wente to theyr beddes in to  
10 theyr chambers / Iupiter liyng in his bed at this hour  
ſonde hym ſelf ſo ſurmowntyd wyth couetyſe of loue .  
That he was conſtraynd to aryſe And to loke out at a  
wyndowe to beholde yf the day approched liſtyng his  
eyen agayn the ſterres of the heuene / And was rauyſ-  
15 ſhed in his herte by the remembrance of fayr danes  
and ſayd / O noble danes that hath more beaulte than  
the ſterre ſhynyng / And that ye ſhyne by ſouerayn cle-  
renes / Alas where be ye this houre / the payne that I en-  
dure for your cauſe / ye knewe not the grete leopardye  
20 and the paryllous paas that I haue put me in . to attayne  
your loue / vnkendenes , may ſhe haue place in yow . with  
deſdayn rygour and fierſnes / whiche ben myn enemyes  
enuenymed with mortall venym / O danes remembre  
your ſelf of me / And thou fortune that haſte ſocouryd  
25 me in alle myn affayres / ſocoure me in this preſent nede .

**W**Ith this word his complaynt ceſſed / and gaſ his  
entendemēt to many ſharp thoughtes that percyd  
his herte right penſiſly / This thoughte was grete and  
touchyng a right auenturous enterpriſe all acoūtyd &  
30 abatid he determinet in him ſelf to aſſaye yf he mocht



come vnto the ende of his thoughte / and arayde and  
clothid hym self and went out of his chambre vnto  
the tour / where he sawe the dore opene to his femyng  
And findyng trouthe that hit was open he wente vp  
as softly as he cowde that he shold not be herd / and  
cam so ferre that he cam to the chambre of danes wher  
of the dore was open In whiche chambre was a lampe  
brennyng / Iupiter all full of gladnes put his hede in to  
the chambre to beholde yf the damoyselfys had ben  
wyth danes / and whan he had beholden that ther were  
none but that danes was allone in her bedde / he auen-  
turyd hym to go vnto her where he fond her slepyng  
and awoke her by kyssyng &c.

**D**Anes was so fore abasshed whan she felt her-  
self so kyfte / that she crept wyth in the bedde .  
Iupiter nyghed neer so fer that he descourid her  
face for to speke to her / wherof she beyng a frayd  
opend her eyen and whan she wiste that hit was Iu-  
piter / and was allone by her bedde side / she made a  
ryght grete shryche and crye / whan Iupiter herd this  
crye he was not right well assured / Neuertheles he  
poursued his aduventure tornyng her to hym ward and  
confortyng her by hys swete spekyng / he declared to  
her in the ende that hit was force that she muste be his  
wyf promyttyng to come and to secche her in short  
tyme / and so longe he held her in suche deuyses / that  
he vnclothed hym self / and that in spekyng to here he  
sprange in to the bed and laye by her side . how well  
that she wythsayd and wythstode hit wyth alle her  
myght Thanne sayde the mayde that she was betrayed  
And wepyng tenderly she wende to haue fled and

dide her beste to haue gon away But Iupiter toke good  
hede / And at the lepe that she supposid to make caught  
and helde her by the Arme / And made her to lye down  
agayn And beclypt her and kyfte her agayn / And so  
5 appesed her in suche facion that she leste her wepyng  
And on the mornyng whan he roos vp from her he leste  
her wyth chylde wyth a yong sone / what shall I saye  
more Iupiter by this hardyesse achyeuyd his feet and  
gate his wyll on fayre danes And made the pees of his  
10 offence The nyght passid ouer And the day came / that  
Iupiter muste nede aryse and departe from her / and than  
by necessite constraynyng hym self for to kepe the ho-  
nour of danes he aroos And toke his abillements trust-  
fed to geder and retorned in to his chambre where he  
15 wente to bedde and slepte so faste and sewrly that he  
awoke not tyll the hour and tyme to go to dynner.

**A**T this hour danes axid where was the mes-  
fangier of kynge Iupiter and sayde that she  
wolde ete with him / and that they shold brynge  
20 hym vp in to the tour secretly / Wyth the worde of da-  
nes two damoysselles wente down of the tour in to the  
chambre of Iupiter / And fyndyng hym a slepe awoke  
hym / Wherof he was hounteus and ashamed / .For  
the sonne was that tyme mounted hye / And than he  
25 a roos and arayed hym fastely whan he wyfte that  
danes had sent for hym to come speke wyth here / And  
so came ho her / whiche began to wexe reed and to lese  
her mayntyene and contenance whan she sawe hym.  
After the reuerence maad they wente and ete to gyder  
30 and made grete chyere allewey danes was a shamed  
and was strongly sousprysed for the caas that was

was happende to her & she myghte not abstaine to sette  
her eyen on the beawte of Iupiter / whiche also faylled  
not on his side to beholde her by so ardent desyr / that the  
eyen of that oon and that other perced eche other often  
tymes / In this beholding they passid parte of the tyme 5  
of the dyner / whan they had taken their refeccion / Iupi-  
ter and danes drewe hem a part and helden a longe par-  
lement of their werk / And was concluded betwene  
hem that Iupiter shold go in to his contre and that he  
shold retorne theder wyth a certayn nombre of peple 10  
for to take a way the fayre danes / and wyth this con-  
clusion Iupiter departyd and retourned in to crete le-  
uyng danes in the tour / of whom I wyll tarye for this  
present & retourne to speke how Tantalus the kynge  
of ffrygye faughte agaynst the troyans / and had ba- 15  
tayle agaynst them whyche was the first that euer  
was in troye .

¶ How the kynge Tantalus of ffrygye assaylled by  
bataylle the kynge Troos of Troye / and how ylyon  
and gammedes his fones desconfited hym in bataylle / 20

**W**Han than the kynge troos hadde named hys  
cyte Troye and was mountid and enhaunced  
in so hye renome / That the kynges his neygh-  
bours as to his regard were put in lityl reuerence and  
lasse glorye / Many thus leefing their honours / by hys 25  
right grete worship / began to murmure ayenst hym in  
feet and in thought / and amonge alle other the kynge  
tantalus of ffrygye sone of tharchaden Iupiter kynge  
of actyque took in ryght grete despyte the excellence of  
troos and conspyred ayenst hym and made a grete 30  
assemble of men of armes / and so departed out of his



royame in entencion to destroye and spille the kynge  
Troos and his Cyte of Troye / This tantalus had a  
sone in his compaygnye named pelops / And also he  
left a sone at home named thiestes for as moche as he  
5 was yong / And this thiestes had a sone sins named  
philistenes the fader of menelaus that regned in the  
tyme of the thirde destruction of Troye / .For to retorne  
to our purpoos / Than Tantalus exployted in fuche  
wyse that he conduytyd and brought his ooste vpon  
10 the terrytorye of Troye / And dide do smyte down and  
destroye alle thinge that was in theyr puyssance vnto  
playne destruction / Wherof the Crye and clamours of  
them that fledde was so grete / that in short tyme the  
kynge Troos was aduertysid / wherof he was not  
15 affrayed . For he had the Cyte well garnyshtid of  
peple / Also he made redy to resiste his aduersaryes / and  
that by fuche dyligence / that whan he had herd the ty-  
dynges in the morenyng / In foure oures after he yssued  
out of Troye wyth . xxx . thousand fyghtyng men and  
20 drewe vnto the place where the frygyens were entryd .

**T**His noble kynge Tros had in his compaygnye  
two sones of whome the eldest was callyd  
ylion to whom cam down from heuen the palladiū /  
And the yonger was callyd Gammedes / These two  
25 sones vayllyant and hardy comen in to the feld and  
requyred theyr fader Troos to departe his arme in two  
And that he wolde graunt to them hys vawarde for  
to preue theyr myght vpon theyr enemyes / Troos  
considering that by separacion of hys peple / they that  
30 were fowled or put a back myght be focowryd whan

hit sholde come to strokes / acorded the request to his ij.  
fones / and toke vnto them . xij . thousand of fyghtyng  
men / ylion and gammedes thankyd the kynge / troos  
their fader / and toke leue at hym / and went forth with  
her fyghtyng men in suche wyse that they were a mile 5  
to fore the batayll of the kynge . and so the kyng / troos  
fued the batayll of his . ij . fones ylion and gammedes /  
And he had rydars betwene bothe comysid for to re-  
porte to the kynge tros whan his fones had founden.  
tantalus their enemye / and also the . ij . noble fones had 10  
to fore hem their diuerse espies and waytars that were  
sente out in to diuerce places to see and to descouere  
thestate the puissance & thordenance of their enemyes  
whiche fonde them aboute the euenyng . and anon after  
they retorned vnto ylion and gammedes & bad them 15  
to make chiere / and that they had seen the enemyes of  
troye in a certain place that they named / and that there  
they had seen hem logged / And that they myght well  
be nowmbred by estymacion aboute . xxx . thousand  
fightyng men . 20

**O**.F these tydynges had the troyens grete Ioye /  
hit was that tyme aboute mydnyght and they  
were logged in the ende of a valeye / ylion and  
gammedes anon the same hour assemblid alle the noble  
men of ther compaygnye / & told them what the espies 25  
had raportyd / and they demanded of them counsell . all  
were of oppynyon that they shold suffre their oste reste  
yet a good houre . and after that they shold breke their  
faste a lityll and lightly / to thende to haue the better  
and longer her breth / and also to be the more corageo<sup>9</sup> 30  
and also to cause hem to be the better awakyd . and this

don they shold departe for to goo assaylle theyr enemyes / This oppynyon semed god vnto the fyue fones of the kynge / And they signyfyed theyr entencion by the ryders vnto theyr fader Troos / After this they wyth-  
5 drewe hem to take a lityll theyr reste and gaf charge vnto them that kept the wacche / to awake them whan they sawe her tyme / And so they had but lityll restyd whan they were awakyd and callyd / And that eche man shold take his Armes and folowe on / This Tro-  
10 ians obeyed and knowe well hit was tyme to make redy lightly . They were neuer so Ioyous as ther were whan they knewe that they shold go to batayll / They ete and dronke attemperatly full of oon good wyll. They garnysshid hem wyth theyr Armes / And shewid that oon to that other how they wold fight in the  
15 batayll and confunde theyr enemyes / and menassid them of an euyll recountre for them.

20 **A**T this houre the mone shone right clere / By whiche shynyng and light ylion and gammedes putte theyr peple in araye in fayre ordenance Whan they had take the shorte refection they began to marche toward them and put hem self to fore all other they came so nyghe by mone light and by her guydes that they wer herd of them that kept wacche of theyr  
25 enemyes that they foughte / the whiche fledde vnto the tentes of kynge Tantalus and awoke hym and tolde hym that the troians were come tassayle hym . And that they had seen hem in grete noumbre / But Tantalus beleuyd not lightly hys wacche and deffer-  
30 ryd hys arysing more than nede was / he had not longe



abyden but the troyans cam vpon his ofte and smote  
doun right vpon the ffrygiens so defmefurably / that the  
redoundyng of her strokes cam & fill in to the eeres of  
tantalus / whyche aroos and sprange on his feet terry-  
bly affrayed / wyth this affraye were awaked all the 5  
frygiens in generall some by mortell woundes and  
some by their cryes and some fmyten anguyffhoufly  
vnto the deth . In comynge on thus the troians damaged  
gretly their enemyes / and the more be cause many of  
them were not garnyffhid wyth their armes . whyche 10  
were fmyten doun by the gleyues of the troyans / there  
were beten doun labouryng mortally aglowtyng in her  
blood This not wythftondyng how well that the co-  
myng on of the troyans was sharp . and that ylion and  
gammedes approuyd hem self sharply in their werke 15  
Tantalus and his fone pelops recuyellyd her peple  
that wythdrewe hem / aboute her tente & gaderd them  
to geder / and than whan they fonde hem in nombre fuffi-  
fant for to entre in to bataylle / Tantalus cryed ffrygye  
ffrygie / and after he dyde do marche his peple ayenft 20  
the troians that all bete doun to fore hem in the place  
where they were arryuyd / and than began the noyse  
grete / .For on all fides were cryes made and at the  
Ioynnyng the tempefte was horrible that hit femed that  
the world fhold ende in the fame place. 25

**G** Ammedes and pelops encountryd to geder &  
full of grete corages they fought to geder so  
fore and hard that a grete while by the enseyg-  
nes that were seen vpon her heedes and vpon her armes  
they were like that oon to flee that other / and that oon 30  
had flayn that othyr ne had tantalus and ylion haue

ben by / .For tantalus smote vpon gammedes / and ylion  
smote pelops and the troians & frygiens medlid that  
on wyth that other And ther began the slaughter and  
tuycion / And ther was fightyng shewyd as cham-  
5 pions / In shewyng eche man his vertu and his pro-  
wesse so strongly for as moche as they sawe the mone  
go doun and declyne / And yet was not the day comen  
whan they fonde on the morn the place all couerd  
with blode .heedes Armes and of men dede / but the nom-  
10 bre of the frigiens that ther were put to oultrance  
was moche gretter ten agaynst oon than of them of  
troye / What shall I saye alle so longe as the mone gaf  
his light / ther was no faute on that on side ner on that  
other / eche man dide his parte / The mone put hym in a  
15 derk cloude And anon it waxe derk and that the medle  
began to cesse / And the retrayte was cryed the frigiens  
with drewe hem at the crye of tantalus / And the tro-  
ians at the crye of ylion and gammedes / And ther was  
none but had gladly abiden the ende of this skarmuche  
20 and tempeste.

¶ How the kynge Tros chacyd in bataylle the kinge  
tantalus and how the kynge saturdaye cam by see fayl-  
ing to the porte of troyes and how the kynge troos  
receyuyd hym worshipfully.

25 **A**.fter thys forsayd batayll whan Tantalus  
was withdrawen he began to caste his eyen  
vpon his peple whiche were alle on an hill  
for to wete how they were of nombre & how they  
had born hem self / And how moche peple he had lost .

he had loft / and wente all a boutte hem wyth his sone  
 pelops / and hym semed well that his puissance was  
 made lasse than he had hopyd wherof he had in his  
 herte a right grete and sharpe desplayfir / and visityng  
 his oost in this facion the day began to aryse and in the  
 dawning / two thynges apperid and cam to the know-  
 leche of the peple of tantalus / oon was the grete losse  
 of his peple . and that other was the batayll of kynge  
 troos that they sawe from ferre discoverid & approche  
 Certes whan tantalus considerid his euydent domayge  
 and sawe that his enemyes be cause of the focours that  
 came to them were more stronge than he was / he fonde  
 not in the resolucion of his empyse but dispayre and  
 shamefull ende / and all desconsortyd he callyd his  
 sone and his pryncipall frendes and demanded them  
 what was best to doo / They counceyllid hym that he  
 shold entende to saue hym self and sayd to hym / yf he  
 abode and attended the troyans that shold be cause of  
 his destruction and of alle them that were leste of his  
 peple &c.

**W**Han tantalus vnderstode this counceyll and  
 knewe that his prouffyt stood and was in  
 his shamefull ende and flighte / and aboue  
 that / that he ne myght abaysshe and put down the name  
 of troyes / he toke hym self by the berde that was longe  
 by Inpaciencie and sayd smytyng hym self wyth his  
 fist / O curfed enuye / thou promettyst me late to putte  
 troye vnder my ffeet . and hast made me to ryse presump-  
 tuesly ayenst her . Now see I well the contrarye / and  
 that by me troye shall flowre and that more is by my  
 cause her name shall growe and shall be enhaunsid



And that alle kynges shall tremble to fore her in my  
regard and beholding O false trayteresse fortune acur-  
sid be thou that I euer beleuyd on the / These wordes fy-  
nysshid he said to his sone and to other his counsell  
5 and maad his peple to withdrawe a litill and a litill  
finably he comaunded that eche man shold saue hym  
self / and than they put hem all to flight / Ilion and gami-  
nedes toke hede and ran after and chassid hem out of  
the terrytorie of troye wyth grete occision and slaugh-  
10 ter of peple of the frigiens / And after that they had  
chaced hem . they sayd that they had don hem shame  
ynowh And leste werke and retorned and cam a non  
and mette the kynge tros her fader that sued them  
whiche had grete Ioye / whan he sawe that they had  
15 quytte hem so well vpon his enemyes by the good con-  
duyte of his two sones.

**T**He Ioye than that Tros made to ylion and  
Gamedes after the batayll was grete and  
of good loue / Tros brought hem agayn vnto  
20 troye wyth grete worship / the troians men and wo-  
men resseyuyd them worshipfully / And blessed the  
wombe that had born hem And the brestes that yaf  
hem souke / The two noble sones of the kynge of whom  
the names were born in to alle the marches ther abou-  
25 tes wyth so grete a bruyt and noyse that not only the  
neyghbours of troyes cam to make allyance with kyng  
tros and the troians / but ther cam also kynges of ma-  
ny ferre contrees of the estliche whiche coude not magnifye  
ynowh the puissance of the kynge and of the cyte of  
30 Troye &c.

**I**N these dayes whan troyes shewyd the rayes  
of her puffyance & nobleffe by the vnyuersell  
world / Saturn late kynge of crete saylid by  
the sees wyth lityll companye Not as kynge and pos-  
fessour of the royaume . but as bannysshid and despour- 5  
ueyed of alle lande and contrey so clene that he had no  
place to wythdrawe hym to / ner wyfte neuer wheder  
to go but only by desertes and by the abysses of the see  
Whan he had be in this poynt a grete while thynkyng  
wyth out ende how he myght persecute his sone Iupi- 10  
ter / .Fortune brought hym in to the see of hellefpond  
and than beholdyng abowte hym he espyed and sawe  
Troyes whiche was a cyte passyng fayr and ryche  
and of meruaylleus gretenes / And than what for to  
take hym a lityll reste as for to put away his melancoli 15  
and for to reuytayll his shipp and peple he sayled and  
rowed vnto the cyte and descended at the porte Whan  
the troyans had seen the shipp of saturene / that was  
better and more of valu than all the shippes that they  
had euer seen / the maystre of the shippes of troyes . 20  
wente hastely vnto the kynge troos & sayde / sire esioye  
your self and make redy your hous / I assure yow that  
ther is come right now vnto your porte the most riche  
shippe that euer was seen on the see / and me semeth  
this conciderid that in so noble a shipp muste be some 25  
noble or grete erthely lord that cometh vnto yow &c.

**A**None as kynge troos herde these tidynges of  
the mayster maronner he desired to see so fayr  
a shypp / and acompaygnyed wyth his two  
sones went for to see at the porte and to seeste them 30  
of the strange shypp / This kynge troos was courtoys



and honourable / whan he cam vnto the poort he fonde  
that saturdaye made redy his ship & disposid hym for to  
go vnto the cyte / And seying the shipp he meruayllid  
moche .For the vtensilles that were wyth in were ry-  
5 chely made / And furthermore saturdaye & his felawship  
were Armed and had no maronners he behelde her con-  
duyte at his comyng & knewe that they were men of  
warre right well in point / he thought in hym self at be-  
gynnyng for to arme him self & to sende for the troians  
10 But afterward whan he had seen her lityll nombre &  
that no shipp folowid ner sued these estrangers fro no  
coste he chaunged his porpoos & thought And appro-  
chid vnto the shipp and callid saturdaye that mooste best  
was arayed aboue the other & axid him what he fought  
15 he and his felaws and from what nacion they were of  
and cam fro / And saturdaye answerd to hym and sayd  
Syre how well I knowe not at what porte I am ar-  
riuyd / .For as moche as my herte Iugeth me that ye be  
courtoys of your nature / I wole hele ner couere no  
20 thinge touching your enqueste / I was late kynge of  
Crete named saturdaye / now I ne am but saturdaye / for my  
fone hath put me out sorowfully that of alle my ry-  
ches of alle my peple and of alle my goodes temporels  
me is not lefte but this only shipp that ye may see /  
25 wherfore I pray yow and requyre that hit please yow  
to adresse me to som lord of this contre / to the ende  
that I may requyre licence and congie to entre in to  
his lordship and to take that / That shall be necessa-  
rye competently to the lyf of me and of my .Felaw-  
30 shypp &c .



**W**Han kynge troos herd the caas of saturne com-  
 prised in breefwordes he sayd to hym by com-  
 passion / kynge saturne ye be well come in to  
 the hous of troyes / In trouthe I haue grete anoyance in  
 me self of your first anoyance for your glorious reno- 5  
 mee and for the goodenes that is in yow . as ofte tymes  
 I haue herd recountyd but wyth this anoyance two  
 thynges gladeth and Ioyeth myn herte / that oon descen-  
 dyng of thacompliffement of desyr / ffor I haue desired  
 many dayes for to see yow / and this desir is now ac- 10  
 compliffhid in me / and that other procedeth of hope .  
 and in this partie I say to yow that I kynge of this con-  
 tre haue entencion to comforte and to counceylle yow  
 to my power and also to gyue yow so good ayde that  
 ye shall correcte your sone and shall punyshe his per- 15  
 sone in suche wyse as hit shall apperteyne for his  
 offence / Saturne began to fighe and to take a lityll  
 confort of the grete prouffire and good chier that the  
 kynge troos maad to hym / and he thanked hym of so  
 hye and ample offres / and at the goyng out of his 20  
 shippe he beclippid hym in his armes and kyfte his  
 hand / What shall I saye the kyng troos brought hym  
 in his pallays wyth all his men and fested hem as hit  
 apperteyned for the loue of saturne / In like wyse the  
 peple beyng aduertyfed of saturne that it was he that 25  
 founde the maner of labouryng the erthe of meltyng  
 of metals & of sayling and rowyng by the see maad  
 so grete and playn feste at his comyng that they coude  
 no more doo at that tyme / duryng this festoyeng whan  
 saturne felt hym in the grace of the troians / On a day 30  
 he callyd the kyng troos and his two sones / and

adressed his wordes sayng / Lordes of Troye ye haue  
don so moche for me / that I may neuer deserue hit / for  
as I haue sayd to yow . my sone is enhaunsid and lift  
vp aboue me / And hath taken from me my Royame .  
5 I requyre yow as moche as I may that ye wyll coun-  
ceyll me what thing is most conuenient to me / And  
how I shall suffre and bere the Iniurye don to me &c.

10 **M**I broder answerd the kynge troos / This is  
agaynst nature to a sone / hym self to rebelle  
ayenst his fader / the synne and crisme is fowll  
and worthy of reprehension / .For euery sone is boun-  
den by alle lawes to serue . worshippe . drede and obeye  
15 his fader / And it is no reson that ony man shold ap-  
proue or hold with a sone disobeyssant / your sone is  
of this condicion cursid and right euyll / And I am of  
thoppynyon that ye shall not acquytte yow well / but  
yf ye to your power to maystrye & ouercome his euyll  
20 maneres / And to the ende that ye shall not excuse your  
euydent harmes and losses / whan ye wyll I shall dely-  
uere yow my sone gammedes accompanied with . xx .  
thousand troians that shall socoure yow . vnto the deth  
Or they shall sette yow agayn in your ryall trybunall  
25 Saturne was all as recomforted whan he knewe  
the loue that the kynge Troos shewyd to hym / And  
after many thankynges toke conclusion that he wold  
retorne in to crete wyth gammedes / And wold be-  
gynne agayn the pyetous warre of hym and of his  
30 sone / And folowyng this conclusion from than forth  
on / he dyde do Appoynte the shyppying of Troye / : .

the shyping of troye / and alle thynges apperteynyng /  
and gaderd to gyder men of armes wyth grete puyf-  
fance by the Introduction of gammedes / and whan  
alle thassamble had mustryd and were gaderd to gy-  
der / he toke leue of the kynge troos and of ylion / and 5  
wente to the see and shyppe all his meyne and kno-  
wyng the situacions of the contrees by the sees / he ad-  
dressid his oost in to the see of egee / where as was  
egeus sone of tytan the grete pirate whiche durst not  
haue to do wyth hem in no wyse / and fro this see of 10  
egee / he dyde so moche by dyuerse Iournes that he  
cam and arruyd at the first porte and hauen of crete .

¶ How saturne by the ayde of Gammedes and of  
the troians retorned in to crete to fighte agaynst Iupi-  
ter / where he was ouercome and vaynquysht and 15  
Gammedes taken.

A T that our that saturne arruyd in crete the  
sonne was torned in to the west and on the  
heuene began to appere the sterres . saturn knewe  
the porte / and toke londe hoppyng to entre the contrey 20  
secretly and wente a lityll weye / and there logged his  
peple in a place conuenient and dyde hem reste / ete and  
drynke by the space of fyfe oures / and than he awoke  
the oost and made the troians arme them and entre in  
to the royaume but they were not ferre goon / but anon 25  
after the sonne ryfing & approchyng a strait passage  
the espyes and scowrers cam vnto saturne and gam-  
medes hastely / and told them that they had seen the  
kynge Iupiter ryght strongly accompanied whyche  
kept the passage / Vpon this paas hit is to wete that 30  
whan Iupiter was departyd fro danes and fro the



tour darrain and was come in to Crete and desirynge  
to Accomplissh hys promesse anenst danes / he dide do  
Assemble his men of warre / concludynge in hym self  
that faithfully he wold go fecche the fair danes And  
5 brynge her vnto his contre by force of Armes . what  
shall I saye more / his Armee was all redy / And cam  
the same nyght where on the morn he hopyd to haue de-  
partyd / but as he was in his bed that nyght in his cite  
of parthemye tydynges cam to hym of the Arruyng of  
10 the Troians / Wherefore he was constrayned by force  
to change his purpoos / wherof he was right sory and  
passing heuy marueyllously / This notwythstondynge  
sodeinly as thyse tydynges were freshly brought vnto  
hym / he aroos And toke his men of Armes that he  
15 had assemblyd / And hastely brought them vnto the  
strayt wherof aboue is wretton / And there abode hys  
enemyes as wyse and well auysed . And it is not to  
be forgotten that in this Armee amonge his men was  
the kynge of mollose whiche had late founden the In-  
20 dustrye and crafte to tame and breke horses for to be  
ryden . And to ryde them / And was come he and his men  
for to serue the kynge Iupiter for his good renomee ac-  
companyed of an honderd men that ran as the wynde .  
And for this cause they were callyd centaures / And  
25 these Ceentaures were also terrible and cruell that they  
ne doubtid the puissance of kinge ne of non other what  
som euer they were .

30 **F**Or than to retorne to the matere entamed / whan  
saturne knewe that the passage was kept and  
that Iupiter was then aduertisid of his coming  
he dide do tarye his ooste & said vnto them / my children

hit behoueth that this morenyng / ye so doo in crete your  
 deuoyr / not only in mustryng and shewyng your co-  
 rayges / but aboue that / that ye be redoubtyd and drad  
 lyke the thonder / assure your self of our querelle Iupi-  
 ter myn enemy is here where he abydeth our comyng to  
 the batayle ordeynd / yf we wole come to the aboue of  
 our entrepryse / hyt is nede that we drawe theder / see  
 what ye wyll saye / Than thus answerd gammedes  
 we ben comen in to crete for to correte your sone / and  
 to sette yow agayn in your siege . we shall doo that we  
 may doo by our power and furnyshe and fighte frely  
 wyth oute doubtance or feer / and vnto the ende that  
 no reproche be Inposid vnto vs . I shall sende & somone  
 your sone first or ony swerd be drawen or strook smy-  
 ten to thende that he yelde hym vnto your obeyffance  
 And that he come and amende his mesdedes / and than  
 gammedes dide do come his troians by consent of fa-  
 turne & sette hem in ordynance of batayle / and whan  
 he had so doon he sente oon of his auncyent knyghtes a  
 noble man vnto Iupiter and gaf hym charge to make  
 the somacion suche as is sayd to fore / The troyan de-  
 partyd from the oost at comandement of gammedes /  
 and dyd so moche that he was presentyd to fore Iu-  
 piter and sayd to hym / Iupiter thou oughtest knowe /  
 that euery sone oweth obeyffance vnto his fader . thou  
 doost contrarye to these thynges / and shewest that thou  
 art not sone of a kynge . but of perdition . For thou de-  
 spysest thy fader . In stede of reuerence thou hast hym in  
 hate / and thou makest hym warre where thou sholdest  
 holde hym in loue / and thou puttest hym to grete disho-  
 nour and thy self wher thou art holde and bounden to



do hym worshippe / O Iupiter who shall gyue the abso-  
lucion of thy lif dwellyng in venym / who shall excuse  
thy synne / Thou art enemy of thy fader / the caas is so  
greuous that theyr is no mercy ne excufacion / but yf hyt  
5 departe fro the naturell clemence of thy fader / beholde  
Iupiter beholde the ende of thyn Infurrexion / Alle lawe  
posityf And alle lawe wreton condempne the vnto the  
deth And curse and Anathematyse the / hit is grete pyte  
thou art a goodly yong man / knowe that thy regne  
10 may not longe dure / And that thou shalt more shortly  
be punysshid than thou wenest perauenture at this time  
.For gamynedes oon of the soones of Troye is here by in  
the helpe of saturdaye thy fader with . twenty thousand .  
fyghtyng men whiche someneth the by me / that thou re-  
15 torne in to the mercy of thy fader And yeld hym hys  
Royame alle excufacions set a part.

**M**essanger Answerd Iupiter / yf I were such on  
as ye saye / wyth Iuste rayson ye and other  
might gyue sentences and condempnacions vpon  
20 me / me ought here bothe parties . And I trowe yf gamy-  
nedes of whom ye haue spoken / had herd myn excuse he  
wold not be myn enemy . I answer yow that I loue  
my fader saturdaye in as moche as he is my fader . But  
I saye yow on that other part . that he hath often tymes  
25 wyllyd to putte me to deth he shewyng hym self my  
mortell aduersarye and no thyng fader . For euery fa-  
der naturelly loueth his sone . And After that regarde  
I shall kepe me from hym as from myn enemy / And  
wille well that the Troians knowe yf they come and  
30 Assaylle me that I shall defende me wyth alle my  
puyssance &c .



**W**ith this answer retorned the said troian vnto  
saturne and gammedes and said vnto them  
what he had founden/saturne and gammedes  
fware than the deth of Iupiter / and approchid so nyghe  
the strayt that they cam wyth in bowe shotte that oon 5  
nyghe vnto the other / and fro as fer as they sawe  
echon other they made grete cryes & showtes Iupiter  
had sette his puyssance in two wynges / wherof he  
was chyef in the formeft / and yxion & his centaures  
were gouernours of the seconde / whan Iupiter had seen 10  
that ther was no wey but for to medle he sayd he  
wold begynne the batayll / and after that he had en-  
courayged his peple / he pryckyd his hors forth / and  
than happend and befell a meruayllous thyng / .For  
from the hye clowdes aboue cam down an egle vpon his 15  
heed / and after began to flee aboute hym makyng hym  
feste and cheer / and not departyd ner leste hym duryng  
the batayll.

**B**I the fleyng of this egle Iupiter and his peple  
toke in them an hope of good auenture . And 20  
saturne and the troians fille in a feere and  
doubte that coude not come out of theyr confaytes /  
what shal I say more whan Iupiter sawe the cōduyte  
of the egle he had a grete Ioye in his herte / and as a  
man well assured in his body / he entryd among thar- 25  
chers of the troians that shotte thikke on hym / and  
rennyng as tempeste passid by theyr arowes / and  
taryed not for resistence of shotte tyll he cam among  
the men of armes of the troians.

**T**He troians had neuer seen man on hors back 30  
to fore / and whan they sawe Iupiter / they had  
[leaf 73]

went he had ben half man and half hors / and ther were  
some that fled his comyng and som abode and fought  
vailliantly ayenst him . than began the bataylle of þ<sup>e</sup> day  
They of Crete folowed Iupiter with grete Noyse of  
5 Tabours trompes and clarions And began to medle  
with the troians / they dide her deuoirs on bothe sides Iu-  
piter bare to the ground many Troians And well en-  
ployed his hors on whiche he rode / Gamynedes and sa-  
turne on that other side faylled not / Alleway Iupiter  
10 prouyd him self in Armes the as most expert aboue all  
other / And abandoned his body and lif vnto fierste of  
his enemyes and ther was no man that durst haue to  
do with hym or abyde him / But he was slayn and put  
vnder foot by the trenchyng and smytyng of his swerd.

15 **C**Ruell and fiers was this batayll . the Tro-  
ians were with oute fere And dide grete pro-  
wesses and manly by the conduyte of saturne  
And of Gamynedes saturne mette Iupiter often tymes  
as he that fought grete strokes but Iupiter that knewe  
20 hym well / wold neuer abyde him / sayng that he wold  
neuer sette hand on his p<sup>er</sup>son / but fled his deth vnto  
his powrs This notwithstanding he fought the deth  
of his helpars And made no sparyng of theyr harnoyes  
ne Armes of lether / of theyr heedys ne of theyr liues  
25 of yong ne of olde of vayllyant ne of hardy / hit was to  
him al oon he bowed neither to oon side ner to other for  
stroke of gleue / of mace ne of guyfarme / he had ofte re-  
membrance of the fair danes / And desiryng to be quyrt  
of his enemyes for to entende her deliuerance like as he  
30 had promysid vnto her . He smote of heedes and Ar-  
mes . Vnto hym was nothyng Inpossibile At euery

At euery strook he died his glayue wyth newe blood  
and the egle flawe allway aboute hym now lowe  
now hye / wherof the troians had grete despyt in hem  
self &c .

**G** Ammedes the noble troian was of lityll sta- 5  
ture / Allewaye notwythstondyng he was of  
more gretter courayge than ony other / and vi-  
gourously he fought agayn them of crete / as he that en-  
tended nothyng but to gete worshyp and honour /  
what shall I saye they fought thus to gyder in this 10  
poynt from the morowe tyl euen / wythoute that ony  
of bothe partyes obteyned ony wynnyng or losse / and  
than saturne wythdrowe his peple on that oon fyde .  
And Iupiter retorned wyth the kyng yxion and the  
centaures / and yet folowyd hym alleweyd the egle . 15  
and satte vpon his tente / whyche was made of bowes  
and grene rysshis / ffor at that tyme tentes & pauyllons  
of cloyth were not had ne vsid / how be hit the makyng  
of linnen cloth / and of cloth of gold and of silk was  
founde afore this tyme In this nyght they of troye and 20  
theye of crete made grete chere in theyr tentes and logys  
And dysposid them to begynne agayn on the morn the  
labour of armes / hoopyng alle to haue the better and  
victorye / the hurte men were dresid and the harnoys  
broken was made agayn and amended / they spack 25  
ynowe of the prowesses of oon & other / but fouerainli  
they held theyr deuises of the egle / and spack so moche  
of hym that Iupiter that same nyght toke a pece of cre-  
mesin satyn conteynyng a yerd and an half square / and  
made theryn the remembrance of an egle of golde and 30  
sette hit on a spere and made a banyere / sayng that he



wolde bere that banyere in alle bataylles euer after .  
And that he vnderstood by the egle that hit was a to-  
kene to hym that he shold abide victoryous of hys ene-  
myes And that he shold be fouerain kyng of Crete like  
5 as the Egle is kyng of alle fowlys .

**¶** How Iupiter disconfited agayn kyng saturene in ba-  
taylle and how saturene was putte to flight by see .

**S**Vche were the deuyses of kyng Iupiter in this  
nyght / the whiche he passid the mooste loyously  
10 that he coude / And vifityd the hurte men and  
confortyd them And concluded with ixion that the day  
folowyng the Centaures shold haue the bataylle And  
they that had foughten the day afore shold reſte them.  
After this he ſlept on the grene And reſtid hym vnto the  
15 tyme that the Centaures put hem in Aray And wente  
to hors back And ſo dide Iupiter / for he had leuer deyed  
than haue ben ydell At this tyme ſaturene ſlept not / ner  
was no more lacheſſe founde in hym and gamynedes  
than was in Iupiter / they were ſeur that they ſhould be  
20 met with alle and aſſayled of theyr enemyes agayn .  
They adoubid & arayed them the beſte wiſe they couthe  
And aboute the ſonne ryſing they rengyd and wente  
vnto the Ooſt of Iupiter . encouragyng eche other to  
ſmyte and fyghte and aſſaylle theyr mortell enemyes  
25 hardyly for to auenge the blood of theyr ſelaws that  
were dede in the bataylle the day before .

**F**Or to make ſhorte / than the Troians were  
ſtrongly achauſſid by Appetyte of vengeance /  
And were the firſte on the ſelde / wherof they  
30 had grete loye in her hertes And maad a right grete cry

But thys Ioye was anon vnto hem abaysshid and  
doon . For sodeynly as Iupiter and the centaures herd  
theyr crye they toke the banyer wyth the egle of gold  
theyr speres and theyr sheldes / and wyth a Ioyous  
sounne of trompes clarions and tabours prickyd forth 5  
theyr hors whiche redounded in to the ayer and rennyng  
as they that helde not of heuen ne of erthe vpon theyr  
enemyes began to fighte / certes whan the troians sawe  
the centaures mountyd on horsback rennyng as the  
wynde they were so aferd and affrayed that they had 10  
wend neuer to haue seen light day / how wel they  
toke corage and abode them / and the centaures fought  
so myghtily among hem that eche oon of them bare to  
the erthe a troian wyth the poynt of his spere and  
among other gammedes was born down to the erthe 15  
among them / and som were hurte a parte and some  
releuyd of hurtyng / and some wyth oute hurte / whan  
gammedes felte hym self among the hors feet / he was  
in his herte terryble angry / and sayd that he wold be  
shortly auengyd / anon he aroos lightly and tooke his 20  
swerd and seyng the centaure that had smyten hym  
doun doyng merueyllous armes among a grete meyne  
of his folk / that myghtily wythstood his vnmefura-  
ble strookes / he gaf vnto hym so grete a strook as he  
was lenyng on the right side to haue smyten a troian 25  
that he gaf hym a grete wounde / by whyche he was  
so astroyed that he drowe hym down of his hors / and  
he hym self leepe vp in to the sadel / This centaure was  
named Eson and was yonge & was afterward fa-  
der of Iafon that conquerd the golden flees / Whan than 30  
he had receyuyd the strook that gammedes had gyuen

him he made a cry so grete that .x. centaures cam rennyng  
And deffended him fro the presse And castyng down oon  
and other bete down the troians And caste hem down.  
And sparpelid their blood that all the place was died  
5 reed / And that they fond efon and gamynedes that oon  
nyhe that other And seeyng gamynedes that he approu-  
ued hym self to conduyte and gouerne his hors And  
seyng theyr felaw put down from his hors / they were  
passingly supprised with grete yre / And by mortall yre  
10 they ascryed gamynedes vnto deth the troians appro-  
chid / they beyng there fought manly agayn the centau-  
res And the centaures castyng and smytyng on gamy-  
nedes the troians dide theyr power to defende hym And  
put hem self in Iupart of deth for him .For many of them  
15 were slayn And many that were fore hurt \*

**T**Hese centaures were strong huge grete and  
lothly / the troians had more of courage than of  
body In this place gamynedes shewid ynowh  
of prowesse And of valeur And well deffended hym  
20 awhile But in the ende .Fortune was to hym aduerse  
in suche wyse that after he had suffryd many assault  
And that he had seen put and caste to ground mo than  
a thousand troians / he beheld that other side and sawe  
saturne torne at playn desconfiture After he sawe that  
25 his troians lete hym to be put aback and to be put to  
deth wyth oute turnyng or fyghtyng agayn And alle  
breke / And turne the back / Also them that were aboute  
hym gaf hit vp and fledd / And than knowyng this  
disconfiture that he had no remedye ner recowerance .  
30 And that he allone myght not bere ne abide the batayll



put hym self to flight / and fled after the oder and susteynd as wel as he myght the porfuyt that the centaures maad vpon his men / and in the ende he guyded hem vnto the poort where theyr shyppynge was .

**S** Aturne than alle dyspayred entryd in to his shyppe wyth grete losse of troians / and gammedes entryd in to an other / ryght angry and so dysplayfant that I can not reherce / at the entre of the shyppys / oon partye of troians that were left were peryshyd in the see / another partye peryshyd by swerd and that other toke shyppynge / Iupiter and yxion thankyd theyr goddes gretly of this victorie / and concluded to gyder that they wold yet poursuye theyr enemyes by the see . for as moche as they were yet grete in nombre And yxion sayd that hit was expedient to brynge hem to plain vtrance for as moche as they had fortune wyth them / and to the ende that they shold neuer reafsemble agaynst them / Iupiter accorded this poursuyte gretly anoyed for hym semed that he taryed to longe / And yet shold tarye more yf he entryd in to the see that he myght not be wyth danes at the day that he had promysed her / This not wythstondyng hoppyng allewey to excuse hym vnto her he made hym redy hastily to goo to the poursuyt of his enemyes and sent for his maryners and after went in to a temple that was ther by dedyfyed vnto the god Mars.

**¶** How Iupiter after he had sacrefied the egle poursuyd the troians and of the strong batayle that he had ayaynst gammedes .

**I**upiter was not so sone in the temple but the egle entryd also and sette hym on the awter .

whan Iupiter sawe that / after many thoughtes he took  
the egle and maad sacrefice And anon after cam tydin-  
ges that his mariners were redy Than he went out of þ<sup>e</sup>  
temple and recomanded hym vnto god Mars and cam  
5 to his maryners that had made all thyng redy / And so  
wente to see Accompanied with the Centaures And  
of two thousand . of his men of Crete And sayled af-  
ter his enemyes that he desired / .For the troians fledde  
of force and maad all the sayle they couthe / In these  
10 two dayes Iupiter often tymes wysshed hym with the  
fayr danes / And thought that his longe taryeng shold  
be noyous vnto her / whan than the two dayes were  
past / the day folowing at thre of the clock / they of crete  
and they of Troye began to mete to gyders vpon the see  
15 They of troye were in grete sorowe / and they of crete in  
grete Ioye / At this tyme saturne was not with the tro-  
ians as he that durste not retorne with them for his  
shame that was befaller and was all discomfyt in him  
self and in dispayr . And passed by the wawes of the  
20 see drawyng in to the eest / Whan gaminedes had aspied  
the shyppes of Crete fro ferre / he had supposid fyrst  
that hit had be saturne . And taryed a while at Ancre.  
but in proces of tyme whan gamynedes sawe the ship-  
pis comyng by grete force nerre / And sawe the banyere  
25 of kyng Iupiter appere / by whiche he vnderstood vary-  
ly that hyt was Iupiter and hys enemyes And no  
thing saturne that he Abood.

3 **T**Han was gaminedes fore troublid & callid his  
felawship & shewid hem the banyer with the  
golden egle And axid them what was best to do

They answered to hym and sayd that saturne had  
abandonned them and gyuen hit ouer / and that they  
ought not to abyde and tarye / but only euery man to  
saue hym self / Gammedes wold fayn abyden the ba-  
taylle / for to proue / yf they were as fortunat & happy <sup>5</sup>  
on the see as they were a lande / but whan he knewe the  
wyll of the troians / that desired nothyng but reſte /  
made to drawe vp ankres and ſayle forth ſleyng and  
wythdrawyng from them of crete alſo moche as in  
them was poſſible / Iupiter and his centaures than <sup>10</sup>  
ſeyng the troians lyeng at ancre / began to araye and  
doubte them wyth theyr harnoys / and whan they ſawe  
theyr enemyes take vp theyr ankres / they began to  
ſhowte and ſolowe / the purſuyt was ſtrong and du-  
red thre dayes and thre nyghtes / and in the morenyng <sup>15</sup>  
of the fourth day / gaminedes and his felaws aſpyed  
lande / and that was troye that they ſawe / they drewe  
to the porte wyth grete loye / that ſone was entremed-  
led wyth ſorowe / For whan they had taken lande  
they behelde and ſawe that theyr enemyes ſoloweden <sup>20</sup>  
them and cam to the porte all arayd and redy to bata-  
ylle / This ſhame and loſſe ſmote vnto the herte of gam-  
medes in ſuche facion / that he aſcryed and ſayd in  
this wyſe vnto his men .

**M**I brethern and my felaws fortune hath doon <sup>25</sup>  
to vs a grace / by whiche we ben brought and  
conduyt hether / But this grace is to vs lityll  
prouffit as we may playnly conceyue / lo here is the  
kyng Iupiter whyche hath doon to vs ſo grete ſhame  
as for to chaſſe vs vnto our owen terrytorye / and <sup>30</sup>  
what ſhame ſhall be to hym that wyll now flee / and



more ouer who is he that now will not holde the bridell  
by the teth / Now behoueth not to flee / But now hit  
behoueth to fighte . this is force and necessitee for to  
venge his losses and his blood and for to recouuer wor-  
5 ship . We ben in our owen contre / yf we auenge vs not .  
we shall torne in to perpetuell dishonuer . For focours  
we may not fayle / . For now the troians ben vpon the  
walles And gon vp on the hye Edifices of the Cyte .  
that beholde our londyng . And some ther be that make  
10 them redy to well come vs . And who that now is not  
well couragid . neuer fare he well / late euery man en-  
force the vertu of his strength / . For as for me . for to  
be hewen in pieces I shall no more flee . I pray yow  
that ye take courage and abide with me .

15 **T**Wo things happend whiles he spack and she-  
wyd thise remonstrances vnto his felawis .  
the troians were aduertised of the comyng of  
theyr men . And of the descendyng and landyng of  
theyr aduersaries / And disposid them to resiste and  
20 wythstande them / And Iupiter and his men appro-  
chid the port / And with that gamynedes lefte war-  
nyng his felaws And ran vnto the porte holdyng in  
his hande a strong spere / his felawis took exemple in  
his right hye courage and folowed hym / Than began  
25 the bothe parties to make theyr cryes that went vp in  
to the Ayer . Iupiter and his Centaures enforced them  
to take londe / Gamynedes and the troians enforced  
them to deffende and to put hem fro the londe / Grete  
and sore strokes were gyuen / Many of them were  
30 perysshid in the see / And Many ther were that her  
blood was shedde on the lande / But Iupiter that

had no felawe in the place gate lande in a lityll space .  
and susteyned the feetes of the skarmuffhe by helpe  
of some of the centaures / that he made gammedes to  
ressorte aback to his felawshyp / and so exployted  
by the hewyng of his trenchant swerd that he made  
alle his men to take lande / and had lightly put gamme-  
des and his men to outtrance . yf out of troyes ne had co-  
men out the kyng Troos and ylion wyth a grete mul-  
titude of peple that ran vnto the rescouffe and helpe of  
the vayllant gammedes / that for to saue hys men of-  
fred and put his body to Inposible trauayll and  
labour .

**T**He kynge troos and ylion than made theyr  
cours out of troye in right fayr ordenance / and  
exposed them to bere partye of the trauayll of  
theyr blood / Iupiter wyth yxion and the centaures lete  
than them that he esteemed vaynquiffhid and ouercome  
And adressed them ayenst kynge troos and ylion and  
them that solowyd them / how well that they had ben  
feblid by the eyer and beyng on the see whyche lityll  
prouffited them . the centaures were grete & huge / and  
stronge as olifantes hard as lyons and aygre as ty-  
gres at this tyme the weder was fayr and cleer the  
sonne shone fayr whan they began to medle / hit was  
a fayr thyng to see the recountres / and a good noyse to  
here the cryes / ther was many a spere tronchonnyd .  
and many an arowe shotte and many a staffe and  
guyfarme broken / helmes ynowe fruffhid and many  
skynnys of lyons beres and horses smyten and torne  
in to peces / This tros and ylion were right aspre and  
fiers in the rescous of gammedes / Iupiter and yxion

were vayllyant and desirous to gete honour And so  
faught and smote on the troians on the right side and  
on the lefte side that afore them was no resistance ne raye  
holden &c.

5 **T**He banyer of the Egle of gold was all way  
in the moste strength of the batayll / the kynge  
Troos that had neuer seen banyer vsed in bata-  
ylle was gretly ameruayllyd what hit shold signifie.  
And ofte tymes he hardyed hym self to fight agayn  
10 them that helde hit / And wold fayn haue put hit down  
and smyten hit in to pieces / But all wey he sonde there  
so grete strookes and so well sette / that he was fayn  
to go as fer back as he cam nyghe / he was vayllyant  
of his body And well knewe the craft of warre / Iupi-  
15 ter approwued hym many tymes and faught wyth  
hym in many places / And noted hym in hys mynde for  
a notable man / ther was in hym no feer ner drede ne also  
in his sonnes ylion and gamynedes they yelded vnto  
Armes the deuoyrs / They dyde worshippe to theyr bo-  
20 dyes And to theyr puyssance / wyth out ende they  
wrought and fought wyth theyr enemyes makyng  
theyr glayues reed in the blood of the troians / they fo-  
lowed with grete force in suche wyse that they faught  
alle that day other while afore and somtyme behynde .  
25 And hit was soo in the ende that whan the sonne be-  
gan to go down / Gaminedes thenkyng on his grete losse  
and desiryng to recouure his worshippe / took a terrible  
and myghty Axe and enflamed of right noble courage  
faught on the banyer of the Egle of gold where was  
30 the most strengthe & smote down on that oon side & other



so difmeſurabli that his axe changed lightly colour  
and cryed wyth an hye voys troyes troyes .

**I** Vpiter had all way an eye on the banyer /  
whan he herd the crye of gammedes and ſawe  
hys exployt he knewe hym / wherof he had 5  
grete loye / for he fought no man but hym / he gaf ouer  
the place where he was in and Ioiouſly addreſſid hym  
vnto hym and ſayde . O vayllyant troian thou haſt  
ſhewde thy prowefſe all this day / And now thou  
manyfeſteſt and ſhewyſt thy ſelf by grete fetes of ar- 10  
mes and of grete bruyt / Thou arte only he that I ſeche  
amonge the vayllantes of troye / Not only that I pre-  
ſume me more vayllyant in armes than thou / but for as  
moche as thou art he that haſte aſſayllyd crete / and  
that I haue pourſiewed the hether / Thou haſt aſſaillid 15  
and fought wyth me / puyſſance ayenſt puyſſance  
and now late vs fighte body ayenſt body / and he take  
hit that may gete hit .

**G** Ammedes wyth this worde lyfte vp his axe .  
and caſtyng his eyen on Iupiter and of that he 20  
had herd made hym this anſwere / Happy and  
ewreus kyng of crete I knewe now that thou art wor-  
thy to haue grace of fortune and that thou art more  
wyſe than ſtronge / Thou ſeeſt that fortune is wyth  
the / neuerthelaffe thou enhaunſeſt not thy ſelf aboue me 25  
I alowe and preyſe the in as moche as thou doſt wor-  
ſhip and honour to thyn enemye and diſpreyſeſt hym  
not / but ymagyneſt that he hath corage at his hert /  
knewe thou that thou doſte thy ſelf honour and wor-  
ſhype / .For for to meſpryſe and blame another man / 30  
no man ought to auaunce hym ſelf / I wolde that hyt

pleſid the goddes that thy fader ſaturne whiche is be-  
left on the ſee were now here / for it is myn entent that  
by his helpe we ſhold haue reſon of the / And I ſhall  
come ther to yf hit be to me poſſible / for I ſhold be re-  
5 couerid of all my hurtes & loſſes yf I myghte adaunte  
and ouercome the / And wyth oute more wordes gamy-  
nedes late fle his axe and ſmote on Iupiter / Iupiter cou-  
ueryd him with his ſhelde / whiche was ſmyten in two  
pieces by the cutting of his axe / And than Iupiter en-  
10 uertued him ſelf / that all that day had ſouſteyned and  
ſpared the poys and the fetes of Armes . And coman-  
dyd his folk that they ſhold lete hym allone with ga-  
mynedes for as moche as he was allone / In this place  
he approuyd him ſelf ayenſt the Axe of gamynedes / and  
15 employeng the ſteell of his ſwerd the moſt beſt wyſe  
that in hym was poſſible .

**T**Hus began the bataylle of the two champions  
of Crete and of Troies they were bothe right  
expert to do the ſect of Armes / theyr Cryes  
20 were hye and fiers / they ſmote eche other fierly and  
aygerly / the fire ſprange out of their helmes by the  
myght of theyr ſtrokes / but whan fortune was on  
the partye of Iupiter / What myght gamynedes doo .  
Hys ſtrokes were grete And gaf vnto gamynedes  
25 many woundes / And in dede he toke from hym hys  
axe by the mene of a grete wounde that he had in the  
ryght Arme / And myght haue put hym to deth yf he  
had wolde . But for to make ſhort proceſſe / Whan  
he had taken hys wepen from hym he had pytie of hym  
30 And ſauyd hys lyf / And dyde do take hym to ſoure

hym to foure centaures . and anon after hit began wexe  
derke / for the nyght toke from the day his light / wher-  
fore hit behoued hem to take reſte and leue the ſeete of ar-  
mes / And ſo the troians wythdrewẽ them in to theyr  
cyte and they of crete vnto the porte of the ſee . 5

¶ How the kynge troos and ylion his ſone made grete  
ſorowe for gammedes for they wyſte not wher he  
was becomen / And how Iupiter wente to the ſee for  
to goo to arges .

W Han troos and ylion were wythdrawen / they 10  
abode at yate vnto the tyme that all the troians  
were comen agayn in to the cyte / as they that  
knewe not where gammedes was becomen / whome  
they ſore deſired for to haue founden / all they that were  
in the bataylle of troians were entrid And ther was 15  
no man that cowde telle the kynge tros where his ſone  
gammedes was / or whether he was a lyue or ded /  
And whan he ſawe that he had no mo men leſte in the  
felde he retorned in to his pallays ſorowyng & gretely  
anoyed / and ſente for them that were comen agayn 20  
fro crete / And enqyred of them of all the tydynges .  
And what they had don wyth his ſone / As touchyng  
his ſone they anſwerd that in the euenyng he was in  
the prees amonge hys enemyes but they wyſt not  
what was comen of hym / And as touchyng of the 25  
tydynges of crete they told hym / how they had ſped in  
theyr Iourne ayenſt them and how the egle appered  
vnto Iupiter / And how they were ouercomen by the  
ſtrength of the centaures / And how they wyſte not  
where ſaturne was becomen. 30

THEſe tydynges gaf vnto the kynge troos ſorow



vpon forow and to ylion also . And the teres fill down  
fro theyr eyes / And in especyall ylion wept fore be-  
wayling his broder in this manyre . Alas my broder  
alas gaminedes / where is belefte the glorie of troyes by  
5 the maleureus & vnhappy saturdaye / whiche hath sayled  
the in thy nede At the leste yf thou haddeft comen agayn  
we to geder shold haue put vs in deuoir to haue auenged  
thy losse . we shold haue assayed our bodyes by fra-  
ternall loue for to haue recouered thyn honour / how is  
10 it Art thou perissid by parell what harde doleance and  
forow is the befall / for to saye all / thy mesadventure  
and myshap is to preiudiciable vnto the hous of Tro-  
ye / Ilion sayr sone answerd Troos for oon aduersite  
hit behoueth not to be abassid in the warre for non ad-  
15 uenture but to haue ferme courage / warre gyueth this  
day victorie to oon and on the morn taketh hit away  
and gyueth hit to a nother And so putteth eche out .  
A vertuous and a manly man vnto his singuler deth  
ought not to be effrayed / yf gamynedes be ded in the  
20 bataylle or yf he be taken / what remedie / hit is than ex-  
yedient eyther to avenge his deth or to focoure hym .  
but oure enemyes ben in lityll nombre / we shall to  
morn fyght with them agayn And late the goddes do  
theyr wylles of vs / And I shall not discorage me  
25 otherwyse.

**I** Lyon And the nobles of Troye comforted them  
in the wordes of kynge Troos / and conformed  
his will for to go on the morn to assaile theyr  
enemyes / whiles these thinges were in comenyng in the

cyte / Iupiter was in the felde and made grete chyere  
wyth yxion and the centaures and beyng sette at foper  
vpon the ground alle aboute a grete stoon . Iupiter sente  
for to fecche gammedes / And made hym to soupe wyth  
them . Gammedes was fore meuyd and had in his herte 5  
grete troble / how wel he toke lightly refection wyth  
them / .For he felte ryght grete ache and smerte in his  
woundes / And there recomanded Iupiter hym sayng  
that he was the vayllyantyft man that euer was seen  
among the moſte vayllyanft of Troyes / and for as 10  
moche as he is in my mercy / and that it is he / that late  
wyth my fader defcended in crete / where he had gladly  
planted his name in worſhip yf fortune wold haue  
fouffryd hym I ſhalle no more warre to fore troyes /  
but I ſhal entre agayn to morn in to the ſee / and I will 15  
goo and putte in execucion a thyng that lyeth me now  
fore at the herte / And wyll well that ye knowe that I  
haue entencion to go vnto the royame of arges vnto  
the tour of darrain / for to deliuere acording to my pro-  
meſſe out of the ſame tour the fayr danes / whom the 20  
kyng acryſius holdeth faſt ſhytte in wyth oute any  
rayſon / This concluſion pleſid to kyng yxion and to  
the centaures for as moche as they had herd ſpoken of  
the ſtrength of the tour darrain / And they thought  
wel that the argyens myghte not holde agayn theyr 25  
ſtrength / whan than they had eten / they entred in to  
theyr ſhippis / And thought among other thynges on  
the woundes of them that were hurte / and alſo of gam-  
medes / and than afterward they leyd hem down on the  
ſtrawe to ſlepe & aboute two oures to fore day they 30  
difancred them & departyd ſo ſecretly that the troians

had no knowleche therof And on the morn betymes  
whan kyng tros and ylion yssued out of troyes to ba-  
taylle rengid in good ordenance they sonde no man to  
haue a doo with alle / ner they coude not see ner parceyue  
5 theyr enemyes on no coste of the see / they had so fer say-  
lid fro the port by that tyme that they were out of sight  
Thus they had grete sorow meruayllously / And cam  
vnto the place where the batayll had ben and buried  
the dede men / but now I will tarye of them and of Iupi-  
10 ter And will retorne vnto the historie of danes.

¶ How the kyng acrisius whan he sawe his doughter  
danes grete with chylde he sente her in to exyle and put  
her in a lityll vessell in the see at the aduerture of  
fortune &c .

15 **T**He noble damoyfelle danes abode with childe  
of the seed of Iupiter as it is said to fore After  
that Iupiter was returned in to his contre she  
abood passing longe in hoope þ<sup>t</sup> he shold retorne to  
by strengthe of peple and shold lede her in to his roiaume  
20 as he vnto her had promised / In this hope she mounted  
ofte tymes vnto the hye wyndowes of the tour / And  
castyng her eyen now hether and now theder vpon the  
mountaygues weyes and stretes for to awayte yf he  
came or myght see his men of armes and his peple of  
25 warre / And with oute ende she had alway her eres  
open to herken yf she might here the trompes tabours or  
clarions / This hope duryd longe vnto the last day that  
Iupiter had promised & fore she complayned in this tyme  
his abiding & said vnto her self that he wold come / but



But certes whan euen was comen of the day that he had  
sette / and he was not comen ner herd no tydyng of  
hym / And whan she sawe that he cam not / and that the  
fruyt of her bely apperyd she wente down fro the wyn-  
dowe of the hys tour / And alle rauysfhyd of dyspayr . 5  
entryd allone in to her chambre / And ther she began  
to beholde her bely / and sayde a poure bely I may no  
lenger hyde the / I haue couerd the vnto this tyme ho-  
pyng the comyng of Iupiter / the day is come and past  
that he shold haue comen / ther is no tydyng of hym . 10  
Alas and he hath also forgotten me . where art thou Iu-  
piter . Arte thou ded or a liue . yf thou be ded speke to  
me in spyryte in excusing the of thy defaute / Telle me  
what I shall do wyth thy seed . And yf thou be a lyue  
what ryght euyl auenture holdeth the / art thou wery 15  
of me . of danes of her that thou enforcest by reynyng  
golde . of her that thou so moche desiredest . Alas thou  
promysist me thy loue and gauyst hit vnto me And I  
receyued the yest in good / and gaf vnto the myn herte  
in like caas and yet more than thou weneest . And what 20  
shall this be Iupiter my loue and frende . art thou of the  
nature of false men as ypocrites that payne them to  
deceyue poure women and late them in dishonour Alas  
thou art oon verayly / thou hast brought me in pardura-  
ble shame and hast abandonned and gyuen me ouer . 25  
O malewreus man . O fals liar be thou cursid with  
thy rycheffes / And acursid be the our that euer I sawe  
the / I am euer by the putte to shame / And by the myn  
ende approacheth I may no lenger hyde thy werkes .  
where shall my childe become / euery man shall see and 30  
knowe my trespaas . Alas my fader shall put me to

deth I may not faylle of hit / for as for deth hit shall  
not greue / saue for the fruyt that I bere / yet shall I kepe  
hit as well as my self at all auenture come what may  
come therof &c .

5 **I**N thyse and femblable wordes danes passid  
ouer this nyght with oute slepyng or reſte / fro  
then forth on ſhe began to be alle melancolious  
And toke this ſo fore to herte that ſhe ſyll in to a right  
greuous maladye whan the maydens that no thyng  
10 knewe of this caas ſawe her ſo euyl diſpoſid / they  
ſigneſſid hit vnto the kynge Acrifius / And than cam  
the kynge to viſite his doughter / And betoke her vnto  
the Cure of his fiſicians and medicines / And demanded  
them what maladye ſhe had / They anſwerd hym in the  
15 preſence of danes that ſhe was grete with childe / and  
that in ſhort tyme ſhe ſhold be deliuerd / Danes an-  
werd that they ſayllyd to ſaye the trouthe / And that  
ſhe had neuer knowen man And denyed her caas as  
moche as in her was poſſible hoping alwey to liue .  
20 .For ſhe knewe well that her fader wold dampne  
her to deth / yf he knewe that ſhe were with childe / and  
of this alle the maydens of the hous ſtryued agaynſt the  
maiſters ſayng that they had well and ſeurlly kept the  
tour that no man ſaue the kynge had ſpoken to her / but  
25 yf he were come Inuyſible / Syn that they had receuyd  
her in to her gouernance . wheroſ the kinge was gretly  
abaffhid and fore wondryd .

**W**Han the kynge herd theſe debates and ſawe  
the ſtate of his doughter he was fore troublid.

.For by experyence he sawe well And semed that da-  
nes was wyth chylde / he trowed and beleuyd better  
the fificiens / than the excufacions of the maydens and of  
his doughter / And for to knowe the trouthe he sente  
alle the maydens of the place in to prifon to arges / and  
betoke danes in kepyng to other women / And coman-  
ded them vpon payn of deth that they fhuld telle hym  
yf she were or happend to be delyueryd of chylde or nay  
wyth in certayn tyme / whan danes sawe her in thefe  
termes she began to falle in to wepyng / the kynge ac-  
crifius fro this day forth cam euery day to knowe  
how she dyde / she wept wyth oute cefling / she fpack  
not but vnto her herte / And she bewayled her loue and  
complayned on fortune forowfully / But whan she  
had labouryd longe in thefe wepynges and that her  
fayr eyen were maad grete and reed aboute . xv . dayes  
to fore the tyme of her chyldyng she began remembre  
the caufe why she was put in to the tour / And that  
the goddes had prenoftykyd that she fhould haue a fone  
that fhould be kynge of arges in this remembrance she  
was confortyd a lityll / and whan the tyme cam of .  
ix . monethis she brought forth a paffing fayr fone  
whiche the ladyes and women receyuyd and named  
hym perfeus / And after that fignefied hit vnto the  
kynge / but at burthe of this chylde she excufid and  
put oute of blame alle the damoyfelles / and fayde that  
they were alle Innocentes of hir caas .

**A**None than as the kynge acrifius knewe the  
veryte of his doughter / And that she had a  
fayr fone / he had in his herte more of forowe  
than of ioye / And condempned her to deth in dede .



and comanded to two of his marouners . that they shold  
take the moder & her child And put hem in a lityll boot  
them bothe allone And that they shuld carye them fer in  
to the hie see / that after shuld neuer man see them ner  
5 haue knowleche of them / The marouners durste not re-  
fuse the comandement of the kinge / But by his coman-  
dement they wente vnto the tour darrain and toke da-  
nes & her sone perseus And saide vnto the damoyfel all  
that / that they had charge to do / praing her humbly that  
10 she wold pardone them / and this was aboute midnyght  
Whan danes vnderstood that she shold be caste in to  
the see & her sone with her / she had hope for to escape  
fro thys paryll by the mene of the fortune of her sone /  
this notwythstondyng the teeres ran down from her eyen  
15 And wepyng tenderly she toke leue of the ladyes & da-  
moyfelles that had her in keping / And lete her be caryed  
vpon the see making complainte & pietous bewaylinges

**W**Han the marouners had brought her vpon the see  
thew leste her in a litill boote & put in her lappe per-  
20 seus her fayr sone / And as hastely as they mighte they  
conduyte her in to the hye see with oute mete or drynke &  
with oute steer or gouernail & gafe her ouer to al wyn-  
des / Than was ther many a teer wepte among the ma-  
rouners & danes & perse<sup>9</sup> the yong childe the maroners  
25 bewailed by verray cōpassion þ<sup>t</sup> they had to see suche a  
damoyfel abandouned to parill of deth danes wepte in  
cōceyuing the rigour of her fader / and þ<sup>e</sup> fawte þ<sup>t</sup> Iupiter  
had don to her / and also for the perill whiche she might  
not resiste / and p<sup>r</sup>seus wepte for þ<sup>e</sup> blowing of the winde  
30 and for þ<sup>e</sup> grosse aier of þ<sup>e</sup> see / that his tendrenes might  
not well suffre to endure In this facōn the marouners

retorned to arges / and the right disconfortyd damoy-  
felle danes wente forth vpon the wawes of the see at  
the gree and wylle of the wyndes / the wawes were  
right ferfull & leste hem in to the ayer as montaygues  
the wyndes blewe by grete stormes / the lityl boot was 5  
born and caste vpon the wawes / And often tymes  
danes wente and supposid to haue perysshid / but she  
had alwey hope in fortune . And so well hit happend  
that in this aduersite she was caste in to the see of apu-  
lye or naples / And there she was founden by auenture 10  
of a fisshar / that for pyte and charyte toke her in to  
his shippe and her sone and brought her a londe for as  
moche as hit was grete nede.

**A**T this tyme the noble danes was as a dede  
body And half goon / whan the maronner had 15  
brought her a lande she toke a ryng of gold  
that she bare on her finger and gaf hit to the good man  
prayng hym that he wold brynge her in to some hous  
where she myghte warme and chauffe her wyth her  
chylde for he was nyhe ded for cold and was all in a 20  
traunce . The maronner toke the gold ryng & broughte  
the damoyfelle and the lityll chylde in to his hous /  
and made to them a good fire and broughte hem mete  
and drynke / Assone as perseus felte the ayer of the fire  
his herte cam to hym agayn and began to lawhe on his 25  
moder / whan she sawe that / alle her sorowes torned  
to nought & she toke hope to her fortune she adoubid  
and arayed her sone her colour cam agayn she ete and  
dranke . what shall I saye the fisshar behelde her . and  
than seeyng in her so moche beawte that like to her he 30  
sawe neuer noon / he wente hym vnto the court of the



kyng of naples / and tolde him his aduenture / preifing  
fo certainly her beaute that the kinge sente haftely for to  
fecche her / This kinge was named pilonnus and was  
fone to the Auncient Iupiter / And whan danes was  
5 come to fore hym fodaynly he waxe Amorous of her .  
And demanded her name / her contre and the caufe why  
that fhe was aduentured on the fee / At begynnynge fhe  
excufid her felf of alle thefe thinges to telle / And began  
to wepe / whan the kinge fawe that he confortid her  
10 and faid to her that he wold take her to his wif for  
her beaute / And fpak fo fayr to her and fo graciously .  
That fhe tolde hym all her lif / how fhe was doughter of  
the kinge Acrifius / and how fhe was fhette in the tour  
And how Iupiter had deceyuyd her / and how her fader  
15 had putte her in the fee / what fhall I faye more / whan  
the kinge pylonnus herd alle thefe fortunes / of the da-  
moyfell / he had pytye of her And wedded her wyth  
grete honnour And dide do noryffhe perfeus / And gate  
on her a fone whiche was named danus / but of this  
20 mater I will tarye and torne agayn to the hiftorie of  
Iupiter &c .

**C** How Iupiter retornyng fro troyes by fee encountrid  
the grete theef Egeon whiche he fought with and ouer-  
came and of the tydinges that he had of danes wherof  
25 he was paffing forowfull.

**W** Han Iupiter was departid fro troyes as afore  
is fayd he made his marouners to faylle and  
rowe with alle diligence for to withdrawe fro  
the porte And for to approuche crete / for he knewe wel  
30 that þ<sup>e</sup> time of his promeffe made to danes was expired  
And þ<sup>i</sup> displefid him gretly that he might not amende hit



his marouners than dyde alle that they coude do by the  
 space of a day naturel but that day past / ther roos a  
 tempest in the see so terrible and out of mesure that  
 hit bare many shyppys wyth theyr apparayll vnder  
 water brake theyr sternes and helmes / and drowned <sup>5</sup>  
 alle the shyppys referuyd only that shyppe wher Iupi-  
 ter was in / wherfore he wepte outragiously / Thys  
 tempeste duryd two dayes and two nyghtes / they  
 sawe not that tyme on the heuen sonne ne mone ne ster-  
 res / Iupiter and they that were wyth hym wende ne- <sup>10</sup>  
 uer better haue dyed how well they escaped the deth .  
 And toke lande on the thyrde day whan the tempest  
 was cessid no thyng in crete ner in the see of Europe .  
 But in the oceane so ferre that they knewe not the lan-  
 gage of them that enhabyted the porte where they cam <sup>15</sup>  
 to Ancre .

**W**Han Iupiter and his peple sawe the dyuersite  
 of the peple dwellyng in this porte and theyr  
 manner of lyuyng they knewe that they were  
 fer from theyr regyon and than was Iupiter disconfor- <sup>20</sup>  
 tyd in fuche wyse / that he wysshed that he had not be  
 there ner come on the see for as moche as he knewe  
 wel that he myght not accomplishe his promesse  
 made vnto danes his loue / he made many grete beway-  
 linges touchyng this mater and more than I can faye / <sup>25</sup>  
 And also complayned his men that he had lost in the  
 storme and tormente as well as he complayned the  
 defeaute of his promesse / how well whan his felaws  
 that is to wete yxion and the centaures and gammedes  
 had refresht them and vytaylled them and had well <sup>30</sup>  
 putte all thynges in poynt and had taken all thynges

necessarie for theyr shippe / they disancred and departid  
fro this porte and toke theyr waye in to the eeste / And  
so employted day by day and moneth vpon moneth  
that they entryd in to the see Egee / but they had not  
5 longe sayled whan egeon the grete thief and rouare .  
whiche helde at his will alle this see / disancred fro the  
porte of the yle of deserte / And acompanyed with fixe  
galeyes and with a thousand men of Armes cam to  
fore Iupiter apparayllyng them to bataylle in Intencion  
10 for to haue destroyed them .

WHan Iupiter and the Centaures sawe the con-  
duyte of the thief / they knewelightly that they  
myght not faylle of bataylle / And sayng eche  
to other that they shold defende them vnto the deth / they  
15 had not longe hold parlament amonge them but they  
garnysshed them with theyr armes and they displayed  
the banyer with the egle of gold And in the displaing  
they made a grete Ioye as they had ben in paradis At  
this tyme Gamynedes had his wounde heled / whan he  
20 sawe that eche man adoubed hym to fighte sauf he  
whiche was prissonner / he cam And kneled down on  
his knees to fore Iupiter and requyred hym right hum-  
bly that he wold comande to deliuere hym his harnoys  
for to helpe to his worship and also to defende his lif  
25 promittyng to do his trewe deuoyr / Iupiter toke vp ga-  
mynedes whan he sawe hym so meke hym self / And  
began to sette his loue on hym in suche wyse that hit  
endured vnto the deth / And that more he made that his  
harnoys and Armes were yolden to him / sayng that fro  
30 than forth they shall be brethern and felawis in Armes

and gammedes answerd to hym that he wolde alway  
abyde and dwelle his seruaut .

**A** Monge these deuyses Egeon and his gallees  
aborded the shippe of Iupiter and escryed them  
to deth Egeon was in the fronte afore as capi- 5  
tayne / Iupiter behelde hym and knewe hym by his ar-  
mes that he bare / and yet er ony strook was smy-  
ten he escryed hym and sayd Theef and veray rouare  
and pyrate how darst thou escrye to deth hym that  
made the tremble and fle to fore hym at the bataylle of 10  
Crete vnder the regarde of his swerde dyed and made  
reed wyth the blood of the vnhappy tytannoys / beholde  
and see me I am Iupiter the mortal enemye of alle thy  
lignage / Thou in lyke wyse art myn enemy / and now  
arte come to bataylle ayenst me / hit may be well sayd 15  
that we shall renne eche vpon other by grete felonnye  
And that this recountre shall be right damageable for  
the or for me / And late the goddes doo theyr playfir .

**W** Han egeon vnderstode that Iupiter had sayd  
to hym / And that he was the destroyar of his 20  
lignage / he had the herte so furmountyd ofyre  
and Inpacience that he coude not answere oon word  
And grynnyng wyth the teth he began to smyte so harde  
toward Iupiter / that yf the strook of the axe that he  
helde had ben adressed / ther had neuer be remedye of his 25  
lyf / but Iupiter knewe the feet of the warre / and whan  
he sawe the strook come / he auoyded hit / And haunfid  
his glaiue and charged hit vpon egeon so seurlly that he  
coude not auoyde the strook that was so peyfant / That  
he was so astonyed that he made hym falle down vpon 30  
the planks of the galeye / Than made the pirates and



theues a grete crye and fille vpon Iupiter & his felawis  
Gamynedes helde his axe in his handes and was not  
than ydle / he dyde and wrought vayllyantly after his  
puyffance / And so dide the Centaures the skarmuffhe  
5 was grete / And many were dede / not of the partye of  
Iupiter / But of the partye of the pyrates / And so la-  
boured the centaures that they died theyr galayes with  
the blood of theyr enemyes / And that the pyrates how  
well they were . x . ayenst oon coude not ner myght not  
10 abide to fore them &c .

**T**Hus began the mortell batayll of the pyrates  
and of the Centaures / whan that oon galeye  
had fought as longe as they myght / Another  
came on / Thus Iupiter and Gamynedes had ynowh to  
15 doo to fighte / And they faylled not . for the more they  
smote the more displayfir had the pyrates / Eche of  
theyr strokes was the deth of a pyrate / In proceffe of  
tyme egeon came a gayn to the medle dismayed and  
fulfild with Inpaciencie / he put hym in prees to fight in  
20 the moſte ſtrength . alle diſpayred to wyne alle or to  
loſe all . At this point the bataylle was ſo terrible and  
ſo mortall that all the galeyes cloſid the ſhippe of Iupi-  
ter . And ſmote on hit / but this was to her vnhapp and  
ylfare for the moſte parte of them were ſlayn And than  
25 gamynedes and Iupiter entrid in to the galeye of kinge  
Egeon . where they foughte ſo fore on that oon ſide and  
that other of enuie who ſhold do beſte / That of all them  
that were with in / was not leſte oon man but he was  
ſlain or caſt in to the ſee Reſeruyd only Egeon whiche  
30 Iupiter toke with his hand & bonde him with an hon-  
dred chaynes of yron &c .

**O**f these chaynes of yron egeon had a custome  
 for to bynde his prysonners vnto the tyme they  
 had doon his wyll / whan the pyrates sawe  
 the myschyeft that ran vpon them / And that her maystre  
 was ouercomen and bounden wyth the chaynes that  
 he was wonte to tormente his prysonners wyth all /  
 they entended to saue them self / And wythdrowe hem  
 from the shippe of Iupiter / sayng that they had fought  
 wyth all / were no men but deuyllis / and that they were  
 vnhappy that cam vnto her handes / Iupiter had but oon  
 shippe the pirates sparklid abrood oon here & another  
 there / And whan the centaures sawe that they sayde to  
 Iupiter that hit ought to suffyse to haue this victorie  
 and his enemye / And that hit was no nede to make  
 pourfuyt after the vnhappy theuys / Iupiter accorded the  
 same and entryd agayn in to his shippe wyth gamme-  
 des and egeon / and after made his maryners to take her  
 cours agayn / And alleway he had in his memorie da-  
 nes / hit nedeth not to make longe deuyses of these be-  
 waylinges and Iournes & other auentures / he was  
 a yere long sayling by the see / And in the ende of the  
 yere he arryued in his royame & ther fonde foure hon-  
 derd hors whyche they of crete presentyd hym to his  
 byen venue .

**T**He quene Iuno his wyf made hym grete chiere  
 for she louyd hym wyth all her herte / she fes-  
 tyd hym and them that presented to hym the  
 horsen / And he put in pryson egeon / And lete gamme-  
 des goo fre where he wold they louyd than to gyder  
 euer after as two brethern . whan Iupiter had ben there  
 thre dayes he toke fourehonderd of his men of the moſte



puyffant / And made them noble / And after made hem  
knyghtes gyuyng to eche of them oon of hys horfes .  
And taughte them and enformed them the feet of Ar-  
mes after the discipline of yxion and of the Centaures  
5 And than whan he had don this he assemblid a thou-  
sand pietons or fotemen and two hounderd Archers .  
And in the compaygnye of them of the Centaures And  
of the knyghtes he departyd fro Crete syften dayes af-  
ter his retorn / And sente not for pluto ne for neptune .  
10 And toke his waye vnto the cyte of Arges in entencion  
to haue rauysshid the fayr Danes / But he had not fer  
goon whan he encountrid and mette oon of the citezeins  
of Arges a noble man And a worshipfull that recoun-  
ted and told to hym all the lif of Danes for as moche  
15 as he demanded hym tidynges / And assured hym on his  
lif that the kynge Acrisius had caste her on the see / .For  
as moche as she had brought forth a litill sone ayenst  
his comandement .

20 **W**Han Iupiter herde the Caas and the Infortune  
of Danes / he began to sorowe and sighe fore .  
Theswete cam into his visage And the teres in  
to his eyen he callyd Gamynedes and yxion And tolde  
hem that his viage was broken And that the kynge  
Acrisius had caste her in to the see for whom he made  
25 this Armee / Gamynedes and yxion comforted hym the  
best wyse they coude And brought hym agayn to Crete  
he helde hym there solitaryly a while And laye by his  
wif Iuno / And Iuno and her aunte seres made him  
good chere often tymes And so ofte came seres that  
30 ones she axid the cause of hys sorowe / He behelde  
the beaute of her / And that she was allone dyde so



dyde so moche to her that he had to doo wyth her / and  
 knewe her flesshly / and that she conceyuyd of his seed  
 a doughter / and after he determyned in his wyll that he  
 wold goo in to secylle and conquerre the contre wyl-  
 ling alwey to ocupie hym self in ony exercitees and toke 5  
 leue of the kynge yxion and of the centaures / his shyp-  
 pyng was redy he wente to the see & cam in to secylle  
 and conquerd hit wyth the yle of lennos / And whan  
 he had so doon he wente in to ytalye / And descended in  
 to the hous of kynge Ianus / whyche receyuyd hym 10  
 and made hym grete chyer / and told hym that his fader  
 saturdaye was come newly for to dwelle therby / And  
 that he was fouerainly louyd of alle the peple for as  
 moche as he taughte hem to laboure the vynes & cornes

**A**lle the blode changed in Iupiter whan he herde 15  
 that Ianus spak to hym of his fader saturdaye .  
 how well he wente for to see hym / and sawe  
 hym and fonde his fader makynge and foundynge a  
 newe cyte in the place where now stante the capytale  
 of rome / And in suche wyse he submytted hym to his 20  
 fader / that saturdaye toke hym to his grace / and made  
 pees wyth hym / And also accorded to hym that he shold  
 enioye fro than forth on hys royame of crete at the  
 acorde and makynge of this pees were the kynge Ianus  
 and the kynge euander / and they dwellyd that on nyght 25  
 that other / that is to wete Ianus in a cyte callyd lau-  
 rence / And euander in a cyte beyng nyght the mount.  
 auentyn And so was the kynge ytalus of cyracuse  
 that made in this tyme a newe cyte named albe vpon  
 the ryuer of tybre / Alle thys kynges made grete chiere 30  
 of the pees of the fader and the sone / And thus Iupiter

abidyng there / he acqueynted hym with the wif of kinge  
 euander named Nychostrate for as moche as she was  
 right experte in the science of nygromancie and in char-  
 mes and fortes / And so he lernyd this science / Iupiter  
 5 after this toke leue of her and of his fader saturne and  
 of his neyheours / And lefte there saturne / that was  
 there maryed agayn vnto a woman callid philiris of  
 whom he had a sone callid picus that was fader of  
 kynges famus husbonde of the quene fatua of whom  
 10 hercules was Amorous as hit shall be said in the se-  
 cond book / And retorned in to Crete And ther fond  
 that his wif was deliuryd of his sone vulcan / And  
 that his acqueyntyd amite feres was deliuryd of hys  
 doughter named proserpine / wherof Iuno was ryght  
 15 euyll plesid and contente / And complayned to Iupiter  
 of the dishonour that he had don to her / but Iupiter sette  
 nought ther by but laughed / And was more Ioyous  
 of his doughter than of hys sone / .For hys doughter  
 was meruayllously fayr and wlcen his sone was  
 20 foull and courbbackyd / how well for to liue in pees  
 with Iuno he maryed feres vnto a noble man named  
 ficcam and gaf to hem the Royame of secylle and the  
 Cyte of siracuse / And sente hem for to dwelle there  
 with proserpina / And hit was not longe after that  
 25 he sente his sone wlcen in to the yle of lennos / whome  
 he betoke to gouerne to thre men callyd berroutes sce-  
 ropes and pyragmon / And thyse thre men kept hym  
 so well that he cam to eage and that he was a man  
 of ryght enhauncyd courage and lerned alle sciences  
 30 in especial nygromancie Geomancie and promancie .

And made many meruayllous thynges that be not for  
to beleue wherfore I wyll tarye now of hym and of  
Iupiter / And I wyll trete of his sone perfeus for as  
moche as of hym cam Alcumena.

¶ How the quene Meduse cam to Athenes to wor- 5  
shyp in the temple the goddesse pallas / And how the  
kyng neptunus wax Amerous of her and how she  
deceyuyd hym.

I N this tyme whan Iupiter dwellyd pefibly  
kyng of crete / and that his sone vican waxed 10  
and lerned the craft of nygromancie / In the  
lande of esperye / passid out of this world a kyng na-  
med porcus a man of right grete enterpryse / whyche  
the esperiens callyd god of the see of spaygne Auncy-  
ently named esperye as sayd is / This kyng leste thre 15  
doughtres that had not but oon eye as the poetes saye .  
that is to saye that her pryncipall charge was vnto  
the vanytees of the world / And therfore they were  
callyd gorgonnes that is to saye cultyuereffes or la-  
bourers of the erthe for as moche as they entended 20  
vnto vyces that behelde erthely thynges Of thyse dought-  
tres oon was named meduse that other ewryale and  
the thyrde scenno / Meduse that was the eldest of that  
other succeded in thempyre and in the royame . And  
the poetes saye that she had hede of a serpent / gyuyng 25  
by this to vnderstande that she was fouuerainly wyse  
and subtyl / After the deth of kyng porcus this me-  
duse gouerned hyely her royame and held pyrates  
and men of warre / And in her begynnyng she toke  
and hauntyd the see of ewrope in feet and wyth right 30  
grete tryumphe descended on aday at the porte of



Attenes / and sente vnto the kynge Neptune to requyre  
him that he wold graunte vnto her that she might entre  
in to his cyte for to worshippe in the temple the goddesse  
pallas / whiche was newly maad Neptune dide grete  
5 honour vnto the messangers of meduse / and Accorded  
vnto her that she shold entre in to his cite & in to the tem-  
ple / .Forseen that she shold haue none with her saue her  
damoysselles / whan meduse herde the answere of kynge  
Neptune / she concluded that she wold go in to the tem-  
10 ple / wherof was a grete renomee & was acompanyed  
with many damoisselles so richely arayed that hit was  
a tryumphe for to see / she entryd in to the temple and in  
to the cyte And ther she torned in to stones not only  
the men that behelde her but Also the women & among  
15 all other specially a quene that was named yde.

**B**I this hit is to vnderstande that this meduse  
was so of excellent beaute and was so pas-  
sing ryche . that all they that behelde her / gafe  
hem self ouer perfittly to couoyte her beaute and her ry-  
20 cheffes / And therefore wryte the poetes that they were  
torned in to stones . .For they that dispose them and  
gyue them to the delices of this world ben lykned and  
compared vnto hard stones / wherof may no good come  
Thus than meduse entryng in to Athenes conuertyd  
25 and torned many men in to stones in so moche that  
Neptunus herd these tydynges And desiryng to see  
this quene he wente hym in to the temple where she  
was in contemplacion / And he had not longe behelde  
her / whan he felte hym so couoytous of her and of her  
30 loue that he said to hym self that she shold be his wif .  
And that she shold neuer escape hym.

**T**His meduse was longe space in contemplacion  
this duryng neptūne desired her beaulte more  
and more / and his herte Iuged in hym that he  
sholde come to his entencion / but anon after that his  
herte had made this Iugement / he a lityll debated confi- 5  
deryng the excellence of her another Iugement trauerfid  
and fourded in his entendement that constraynd hym  
to saye these wordes that folowe / alas in what matyer  
in what forow & in what right grete and enflamyng  
payne ben they that ben brennyng in loue by longe space 10  
of tyme / that I that now begynne / fynde me in so  
many fighes and payne / that I wote neuer how I may  
in tyme come vnto this lady for to requyre her to be my  
wyf / she is shynyng in all beaulte and in right haboun-  
daunt rycheffes / this is that me lackyth / she beholdeth 15  
me amonge other whiles in her prayers / hit may hap-  
pen well that loue may torne her herte for to make  
thaliance of her and me / and what is this / men saye  
that loue hurteth no man / but yf hit be be his eyen / yf  
the eyen be not made for to see / I shal saye that my desire 20  
shall happe well / where am I / wher I am I put me oute  
where is my herte where is my desir / I wote neuer  
what I thynke / And my thought may be abusyon And  
myn abuse / may well be reuerfid / Myn eyen perauen-  
ture wene to see that they see not / Myn eres ymagyne 25  
to here and yet they ben deaf / I finde my self in a grete  
playne & vayne ataynt / and yet more in a superfluous  
errour more than ony man may haue / For whan I see  
this lady more excellent than the other in beaute and  
richeffes / reson telleth me that she is not comen hether 30  
for me / And whan I beholde that she is allone wyth



oute men in my cyte who shall agayn saye my will .  
I shall requyre her to be my wif after that she hath don  
her deuocion / And yf she accorde to my requeste my  
werke shal doo well And yf she gaynfaye and with-  
5 stande hit than I muste vse force and auctorite royall .

**T**Hus whan Neptune cam to thys conclucion  
Meduse aroos fro her contemplacion And  
lokyd right fayr Neptune wente to her And  
dide her reuerence / And after prayd her that she wold  
10 goo to his ryall palays for to refreshe her Meduse  
thankyd hym of his curtoisie And saide that she mighte  
not well tarye there at that tyme / whan neptune vnder-  
stood that she was in wyll to retorne wyth oute to  
Areste her in his hows ne in his cyte he was fore dis-  
15 playfid in his herte / Alleway he held manyer And  
drewe her a parte and said vnto her changyng colour .  
Madame I am sory that ye reffuse to take pacience in  
my hows / I am kinge of this cyte / The goddes haue not  
gyuen to me so moche happe / that I haue yet ony wif  
20 ony lady or damoyfell / hit is so now happend that the  
goddes and fortune hath enspyred yow to come hether  
Certes hit is so now that your right hye beaute that  
perissid the eye of my herte / And hath made me so co-  
uoytous of yow that I gyue vnto yow . herte . body . and  
25 goodes / And alle that a loue may gyue vnto his loue  
and lady or ony king may gyue / wherfore I pray yow  
that ye will descende vnto my palays / to the ende that  
I may haue comynycacion more secretly there / And telle  
vnto yow the right grete loue that I haue in yow .



**A** None as Meduse vnderstood the requestes of  
 the kynge she began to frowne and not wyl-  
 lyng to be other wyse / she answerd to hym .  
 Syre kynge yf hit were soo that myn herte desired ac-  
 queyntance and cōmynycacion of oon man more than 5  
 of an other in trouthe yf I so fonde me / I shold holde  
 my self right happy findyng my self in the grace of your  
 eyen / but the mater goth wyth me all otherwyse / I loue  
 the men as moche oon as an other / I haue entencion to  
 abyde and contynue in my virginite / ye be a kynge ye 10  
 haue gyuen to me sauconduyt to achyeue my pylgry-  
 mage I requyre yow that ye holde yow plesid and that  
 ye doo in suche wyse as ye had neuer seen me / Dame  
 sayde neptune how shall I doo that ye saye / whan my  
 herte is all gyuen vnto yow / Syre answerd Meduse 15  
 hyt behoueth fyrst to knowe and after that to loue  
 I haue told yow hyer that I haue entencion to abyde a  
 virgyne / what may hit prouffite yow to saye that ye  
 haue gyuen me your herte / thys ben but loste wordes.  
 Dame sayd neptune the dyamond shyneth not tyl hit 20  
 be pollisshyd / ye were neuer perauenture desired ne re-  
 quyred of loue more than now / wherfore ye haue no  
 more loue in oon man than in an other / wherfore ye  
 muste vnderstand that the hauntyse maketh loue / And  
 yf ye come wyth me I make no doubtes and sojourne 25  
 that your wyll shall change And that ye shall take  
 alyance wyth me Syre answerd Meduse my wyll  
 is vnchangeable / notwythstondyng sayd neptune  
 hit muste change / And abaysshe yow not . Syre an-  
 swerd . Meduse I see no thyng that yeuyth me cause 30  
 of enbaysshemment . For I sele my herte ferme and

stable in his operacions / ye be a kynge and haue gyuen  
me saufconduyt for to furnysh my deuocion at the tem-  
ple of the goddesse of your cyte / Rayson and honour  
shold gouerne your corage / Dame said neptune yf  
5 your beaute surmounted not the beaute of other wo-  
men I shold consente anon your retorne / but whan I con-  
ceyue yow formed in so hye degre of nature / that no-  
thing lackyth in yow / And further whan I see that the  
grete goddesse pallas hath enspyred yow to thys my  
10 cyte / Rayson may haue no place And how hit be by  
loue or by force / ye shall be my wif / For I had leuer  
dye And renne in to alle the deshonours of the world  
Than for to faylle to haue your Allyance.

15 **W**Han Meduse that was wise had vnderstand  
the wordes of Neptune and sawe well that  
he was outragiously achauffid of her Amo-  
rous desire / and that she might not ascape his puyffance  
for her beaute / but yf hit were by ony auenture / Than  
she changed her heer in to couleures / that is to saye that  
20 where force regned she wrought by subtilte And said  
vnto the kynge / Syre I knowe that ye be a grete and  
puyffant lord / and that loue hath meuyd yow by force  
to take me to your wif / Syn your playfir is fuche I am  
cōtente to do all in fuche wyse as ye haue demanded / and  
25 that this same day be maad the maryage of yow and  
me / but for more solempnly to halowe the feste of our  
espoufailles I requyre yow of two thinges .First that I  
may retorne vnto the porte to my peple for to aray and  
dresse me with my triūphant riches / for I ne may em-  
30 ploye to more grete & glorie than this day of my mariage

And secondly that ye wyll do araye and adresse the  
ladyes of this cyte for to receyue me as hit apperteyneth  
.For I wyll well that ye knowe that in alle the reme-  
nant of ladyes of the world / ye shall not finde ony  
that haue more meuable goodes ne richesfes than I haue 5

**N**Eptune was than as oon alle rauysshid in  
Ioye whan he herde this answer of meduse / he  
thankyd her of her fwete wordes And agreed  
to her to do in suche wyse as she had deuysed / And  
anon sente agayn this Meduse vnto her galleyes ho- 10  
pyng that she wold retorne agayn to be his wyf / but  
whan she by the subtylte of her wytte was rendred  
agayn at the porte / where neptune had no puyffance  
In stede for to retorne to the cyte / she dyde do difancre all  
her shippis And lete sayle falle and in all haste wyth- 15  
drewe hem fro the porte And in stede to araye her in ves-  
tements nupciall she toke her armes and made all her  
men to arme them / And thus she ascapyd fro neptune  
whiche was in grete sorow merueyllously / And in  
grete Anger sayde that she had hede of a serpent / And 20  
that her heres were torned in to coleuures to the ende to  
hyde more graciously the malice of her and the manyer  
how she had deceyuyd and begyled hym &c .

**T**Hus than ascaped meduse the handes of nep-  
tune by the meen of her hede serpentyne / And 25  
neptune abood conuertyd and tornyd in to  
stoone / that is to saye in erthely affections of richesfes  
of meduse / And wente not after her for as moche as  
her puyffance surmountyd moche alle the puyffance  
of atthenes / Of this thyng ran the renomee thurgh all 30  
grece / And the beaute of meduse was so recomanded .



that of the parties wente all daye many knightes auen-  
turyng theyr liues / And many of them were torned in  
to stones and many losse theyr trefors innumerable / en-  
forcyng them by Armes to conquere this lady / whiche  
5 withstood alle way here assaultes and assayllyng .  
And all way abode vainquereffe of them / Meduse sette  
nowht by kynge ne prince that wold haue her to wyf  
She was alle sette to gete and gader the trefors of the  
world / yf her fader had ben strongly coueytous / yet  
10 was she more couetous / And she comen agayn fro athe-  
nes in to her royame After she had put vnder in subiec-  
tion the grekes that exposed them ayenst her as said is .  
she so mountid in to the depe swalowe of couetyse and  
auarice that she made warre vnto alle her nyghebour .  
15 And dauntyd hem / and constraind them to paye her  
yerly grete tributes / wherby her astate and name aroos  
and was so greet / that the bruyt therof ran in to many  
ferre regions / And amonge other in to the cyte of naples  
where regned the kyng pilonne as afore is said .

20 **I**N this tyme that the renomee of meduse was  
in his bruyt . Perseus sone of danes and of Iu-  
piter was in the verdour of his begynnyng and  
tempryen strength / And dayly requyred his moder and  
the kinge that they wold gyue hym leue to serche hys  
25 Auentures / Whan than pylonnes herde speke of the  
haultesse of Meduse of her rapines and of her aua-  
rice / he behelde that his sone in lawe shold do a ver-  
tuous werk / yf he myght correcte her / told to perseus  
that he wold sende hym theder Perseus thankyd hym  
30 and sayd he wold employe therto all his puyssance

Than the kynge pylonne fente for men of Armes and  
made redy thretty galeyes for thexercyte of perfeus /  
whan all was redy / he callyd to hym on a day perfeus .  
And dubbyd hym knyght for the ordre of cheuallrye  
began that tyme to be vſid in all the world hit was 5  
ordonned that that ſame day perfeus ſhold go to the  
ſee / ¶ And whan the kynge had accompliſhed all the  
ſerymonye to the caas requyred in the paynems wyſe  
Perfeus toke leue of the kynge pylonne And of his  
moder danes & of the damoyſelles And right Ioyouſly 10  
entryd in to his galeye / After they dyſancered and de-  
partyd fro the port of naples wyth grete bruyt of ta-  
bours & trompes / And wyth banyer ſplayed ſaylyd  
in to the hye ſee / hit was a good and a fayr ſight to  
ſee his departement ther was many a teer wept / euery 15  
body loued perfeus for ſo moche as he was humble  
and debonayr / The Apulyens departyd neuer as longe  
as they myghte ſee hym / And than after they retorned  
home prayng vnto the goddes that good and right  
happy myght be the fortune of perfeus / And the noble 20  
knyght wente by the ſee and by the portes wyth oute  
auenture / what ſhall I ſaye / he ſo employed that he  
cam in to affrike that was named lybye at that tyme /  
And there wolde haue refreſhid hym at a port beſide  
the ſtrayt of gybalter / where as was kynge Athlas 25  
the grete aſtrologyen / but this kynge put hym fro lan-  
dyng at this porte / And cam in armes ayenſt hym and  
ſhewyd fro ferre ſigne that he wolde kepe his contre  
wyth the ſwerde / Than perfeus whyche wold not  
there employe his Armee wythdrewe hym fro the 30  
porte en entencion to auenge hym another tyme of

that rudeſſe yf fortune wold helpe hym / he paſſid the  
ſtrayte and fought ſo longe the royame of meduſe / that  
anone after he fonde hit and had veray tydings by cer-  
tain marchantes / that he fonde labouryng on the ſee .  
5 that told hym that ſhe and her ſuſters ſoiourned in a  
cyte whiche ſtode on the ryuage .

**G** Rete was the Ioye of perſeus whan he vnder-  
ſtood theſe tydings / his folk had grete nede of  
vitayll / he callid hem all & ſaide that they ſhold  
10 make hem redy and Arme them / for they were nyhe the  
place that they foughte / and than as they ſaylid alway  
forth aboute thre owres to fore the euen they ſawe the  
Cyte where meduſe was Inne / And more ouer they  
ſawe meduſe and her ſuſters with grete nombre of  
15 men of warre that renged them on the porte ſo richely  
arayed and in poynt that hit was meruaylle to ſee .  
whan perſeus ſawe this he dyuydyd his Arme in thre  
egale bataylles / eche of ten galeyes and ordeyned and  
put in capitaynes of warre . And wyſely enformed  
20 hem how to nyhe and approche the porte . And after he  
put hym ſelf in the firſt batayll And the poetes ſaye  
that the goddeſſe pallas gaf to hym than a ſhelde of criſ-  
tall / that is to vnderſtande that he approuchyd right  
wyſely the porte that was vpon the grete ſee of ſpayne  
25 And that he conduyted hym ſelf by ſuche prudence .  
That is likenyd to criſtall / That he cam and fought  
hand of hand the puyſſance of meduſe . And that ſhy-  
nyng the ryght clere ſhelde of hys prudence in recey-  
uyng and yeuyng Infynyte ſtrokes he gate lande and  
30 conſtrayned meduſe to retorne in to her cyte by force



by force of armes and by prowesse / and wyth grete  
discipline and fightyng of his sowyours / At that  
tyme the hede of serpent of meduse myght notwyth-  
stande his firste fortunes . . For she that was acusto-  
med to put vnder foot and ouercome alle them that ex- 5  
posed them in armes ayenst her . At this tyme was put  
to theextremyte / where she had put other to .

¶ How perseus vaynquysshed in bataylle the quene  
Meduse and she fledde in to her cyte .

S Vche was the entre of the warre that was 10  
betwene perseus and meduse where the gor-  
gonnes fortunat . whiche meduse had cheryf-  
shed in right hye degree / fille down fro the whele of for-  
tune / whiche whele had consented that the prudence  
of perseus sholde be cause of her humylieng & mekyng / 15  
This notwythstandyng meduse took corage in her self  
and reentryd in to her cyte / And gaf charge to oon of  
her men to go vnto her enemyes and to enquire of them  
who was chief and captayn of hem / And what thinge  
he foughte in her cowntre / The hisperryen at comandement 20  
of Meduse departyd fro the cyte And cam to the ooste  
of the Apuliens that entended for to logge them that  
myght / he did so moche that he cam to perseus that toke  
his refection vpon a table that he had maad of a grete  
stoon of marbell and sayde to hym in this wyse . Syre 25  
the vaynquereffe of men hath sente me to thee for to en-  
quire what thyng thou wylt doo in her contre to the ende  
that she may knowe what she hath to do / Messanger  
answerd perseus I haue entencion to fraunchise and  
make fre the men fro the seruytude that thy maystresse 30  
holdeth hem in / And to make her that hath but oon eye /

that she conuerte & torne men no more in to stones And  
that her riches shall be no more the causes of the losse  
and pdicion of knyghtes whiche wold haue her in ma-  
riage / .For ayenst her malice of the serpente I shall be  
5 armed with prudence / and will wel p<sup>t</sup> she knowe that  
to morn with oute lenger delaye I shal gyue assault vn-  
to her cyte / In caas she come not agaynst me in batayll .

10 **W** Ith this Answer the esperien retorned vnto  
Meduse and recountyd vnto her all that he  
had herd / Meduse assemblid than alle hermen  
of warre and said to them / hit is not meruaylle though  
I haue myn herte anguysshous whan after that I haue  
vaynquysshyd grete companyes of men of Armes that  
I see that shamefully we ben goon a back and withdra-  
15 wen in to this Cyte by the prowesse of an handfull of  
men / O what Anguysshe is this to them that haue ben in  
custome to ouercome and to tryumphe in alle maner  
warres / where ben the hye enterprises by whiche we  
haue made alle the sees occidentall to fere and drede vs .  
20 Where ben the glayues that had ben yolden to vs of the  
kynges our trybutaryes / where ben the Armes and  
strengthes that hath made to tremble the mountaygnes  
and roches of libye where be they that this day haue ta-  
ken feer for prowesse / drede for hardynes dishonour for  
25 honour At leste sin this thinge is so gouerned / hit beho-  
ueth to passe the best wise we may / but now hit beho-  
ueth also that euery man corage and vertue hym self .  
And that to morn hyt be recoueryd that by vs thys  
day is losse / The enemyes of thys Cyte haue don vs  
30 to vnderstonde and knowe that to morn they wyll  
gyue vs assault / If we ne furnyssh them of bataylle .

And how hit be also that they ben trauayllyd of the  
 ayer of the see / hit is moche better that we furnyssh  
 them of bataylle at this tyme than we sholde abyde len-  
 ger Oure enemyes ben straungers . here lieth our triūphe  
 or our mortall myfaduenture / yf we ouercome them 5  
 hit shall be a memorye of vs ferre and nyghe in all ho-  
 nour / yf the caas goo contrarye we shall renne wyth  
 the losse of our lyues in to derision and mocquerye of  
 alle peples / And what is this shall the blood be spred  
 a brood of them / that haue made the ground rede of the 10  
 blood of other . shalle the honour be wastyd and losse  
 And also the name that we haue gotten wyth so grete  
 labour / Alle the world taketh courage and hope / these  
 two thynges ben also couenable in warre / as the armes  
 And wyth oute them shall neuer man attayne to the 15  
 crowne of victorye / A than take herte to yow / and dis-  
 pose your harnoys and armes / to morn shall be the day  
 that ye muste nede do shyne your dedes the beste wyse ye  
 may and for to kepe your renomees and your tytles  
 of honourable prowesse . 20

**D** Ame answerd oon of ther capitayns it is grete  
 damage / that ye ne were a man / .For yf hit had  
 be so / hit is so apparant that ye shold haue sub-  
 iuged and put vnder alle the monarchye of men / As  
 ye saye / we muste nedes kepe oure renome / yf fortune 25  
 hath ben to vs this day froward / to morn she shal torn  
 to prouffyt / the woundes and hurtes that ben made  
 in our worship and blood we moſte bere hit and take  
 hit in gree . And our prowesse and honour shall to  
 morn putte vs to fore the shame / we shall esuertue vs 30  
 Conne not ye ryse so erly that we myght be on the



fronte of hem well arayed & apparaylid for to laboure  
for the prospite of your requeste / whan meduse herde the  
good wille of her capitayne / to whom consentid alle the  
other / she was right Ioyous / and concluded with them  
5 that she with all her puissance shold bespringe and af-  
sayll her enemies at midnyght in hope to come vpon them  
vnwares This cōclucion thought good vnto alle / And  
eche man withdrewe for to take her reste & for to make  
redy his harnoys Meduse slepte not moche this night  
10 as she that had the herte alway grete / and fore chargid  
with appetite of vengeance / And at midnyght than she  
fowned to armes / and made hem to be redy & adoubed .  
she toke her banyers p<sup>t</sup> were right riche / her men weredi-  
ligent Inowh to arme them for of that crafte they were  
15 well enduced / And whan they were redy & assemblid  
to fore p<sup>e</sup> palais riall / Meduse & her susters yssuid oute  
of the gate in riche astate / and gyuyng good morow to  
her folk / with as litill noyse as she myght she deuidyd  
hem in two companyes / wherof she made oon companye  
20 to departe by oon of the yates of the cyte / and she her self  
cōduyted that other by the gate p<sup>t</sup> was ayenste the porte  
or hauen &c .

25 **A**T this tyme the ayer was pure and net / And  
the sterres twinklid / And the mone shone and  
put away the derknes of the nyght acordyng  
to her celestyall offyce / Whan meduse was in the fel-  
des she wente after the ryuage of the see / And supposid  
to haue taken perseus and his folke but she faylled .  
For as sone as she yssuyd out of her cyte / hit was  
30 parceyuyd of the wacchemen of the ooste of perseus.

And they signefied theyr comyng to perſeus and hys  
 men that ſlept in her harnoys And thus whan ſhe ap-  
 prochid vnto her enemyes / and had ſuppoſid to haue  
 diſtreſſid them / ſhe ſonde them arayed and renged in  
 good ordenance of bataylle / wherof ther aroos a right 5  
 grete crye of bothe parties / And wyth this crye ther  
 engendryd a grete ſcarmuche / ſo eygre and fiers / that  
 hit was nede vnto alle / to put forth her prowefſes and  
 theyr ſtrengthes / there was many man caſt down dede  
 vpon the ſande / ther was many a ſwerd dyed reed 10  
 wyth blood / there cam on the ſeconde bataylle of me-  
 duſe makyng grete bruyt in Ioynnyng of the bataylle .  
 And than had they of naples ſtronge partye for to  
 mayſtrye &c .

**I**N this tempeſte perſeus gaſe hym to no reſte . 15  
 he had alway his eyen open / his eeres bent to  
 here / his armes enhaunſed to ſmyte / he was  
 quyk and in hys grene yougthe / his ſwerde trenchid  
 and cutted diſpairly / he ſmote no man ne ſhelde but he  
 al to fruſſhid hit and ſlewe down right / Meduſe that 20  
 alway put her in the moſt ſtrength and frayes / and  
 moſte prees by myghty grete corage / for to entretene &  
 to holde to geder her men / ſecyng often tymes the apper-  
 tiſements and the noble fetes of armes of her enemy  
 perſeus / had grete ſorowe / .For his only conduyte helde 25  
 the apuliens in eſtate and aray / And ther was none  
 that myghte reſiſte his ſtrength / or at leſte that had  
 myght for to reſiſte hym / This thinge torned to grete  
 diſplayſir to meduſe / Alleway ſhe bare this diſplayſir  
 and vſid her prowefſe the beſte wyſe ſhe myghte / ſhe 30  
 dyde grete damage to her enemyes / And ſmote down here

and there so vaylliantly that she semed moche better to  
be a man than a woman / And better became her to brand-  
dissh a swerde than to spyne or torne a spyndell .

¶ How perseus in this bataylle slewe the myghty suf-  
5 ter of meduse and venquysshid the bataylle .

**T**His scarmuche than dured longe with grete  
betyng doun of men of Armes and of knyghtes  
Thenuye that meduse had of well doying of per-  
seus gaf to her Armes more force and strength that na-  
10 ture had gyuen her / she was full of malice / And she  
coude kepe her well fro the swerd of perseus / And all  
way she was enuyronned of the best men she had .  
what shall I make longe counte they fought in this fa-  
cion vnto the day with oute that ony wyfte to whom  
15 me shold gyue the victorie / but than like as the sonne  
began to sprede and shewe his bemes and rayes / In sem-  
blable wise perseus began to shewe the rayes of his  
prudence / And braundisshid his swerd And seeyng on  
that oon side the banyer royall / he smote in to the prees .  
20 And drewe that to parte castyng men doun dede on the  
sandis moo than an honderd / This banyer was square  
four foot made of cremesin satin / And in the myddes  
was an ymage paintyd wherof the body was a fi-  
gure and facion of a woman and the hede was of a  
25 serpente &c .

**M**eduse was neuer ferre fro thys banyer / for as  
moche as she drewe her allwey theder to for-  
refuse / Whan perseus was comen theder with  
grete fute of hys folk he cryed perseus perseus .



After lifyng his fwerd that was temprid with blood  
from on ende to that other / hit happend that the first  
strook that he gaf in this place fille vpon oon of the suf-  
ters of meduse so terribly that she confounded ded wyth  
a grete wounde begynnyng on her heed down to her sto- 5  
mack / than they of naples smote on the hesperys with  
alle her puyffance / Tho smote perseus endlong and  
ouerthwart on the right side and on the leste side / his stro-  
kes were so mortall that they affrayed not only the  
most feble of his enemyes but alle the most strengest 10  
and also the assured meduse .

**G** Rete was the occision / In this point meduse en-  
forced her power to wythstonde the grete force  
of perseus / This notwythstandyng she that a-  
fore tymes had ouercomen the men was than ouerco- 15  
men / And hauyng late the corage lifte vp and the herte  
more fiers than ony man / she was veynquysshid of def-  
payr / for the only cheuaulrous conduyte of perseus  
that had broken her banyer / that had smyten her men in  
pieces partye slayn wyth his fwerd and partye fled . 20  
And that he had not only made reed his fwerd and  
right hand wyth her blood / but the see by smale goters  
was made rede of the warm blood / in whiche meduse  
lost her ferocyte / Alle her presumpcion alle her strength  
and alle her vigour so euyl wente and alle the werke 25  
on her side . that whan she had seen her banyer destroyed /  
Whan she had seen the moste victoryous of her knightes  
confounded by tempest of deth / whan she sawe her men  
of Armes leue the bataylle and flee to fore perseus as  
to fore the ymage of deth / .Fynably she sawe alle her 30  
puyffance torne in to destruction generall / wherof the

ende was that eche man gaf hit ouer / And euery man  
that myght saue hym self sau'd hym by caues And bus-  
shes / here oon and there an other so fore affrayed that  
hit was a pietous thing to here theyr cryes And many  
5 sau'd them in the cyte and many were slayn in the fle-  
yng / of perseus and his men .

¶ How perseus conquerd meduse and her cyte And  
smote of her hede And how he wente to fyghte ayenst  
the kynge Athlas of septe a myghty and puyssant  
10 geant &c .

**P**erseus at thys disconfiture pourfued meduse  
fleyng in to her cyte and entryd in with her  
and the moſte parte of his peple with hym .

That faylid hym neuer to put to deth alle the men defen-

15 ſable that they ſonde to thende that no inſurrection ſhold  
be ayenſt them / but they ſpared the blood of women  
And lityll children by the comandement of perseus .

And amonge the other as perseus had ſounde meduse  
that was put in a ciſterne / he had pytye of her / how be

20 hit he ſmote of her hede / in ſuche ſacion that the blood  
that yſſuyd out engendrid pegafus the fleyng hors .

by the hede that perseus ſmote of / of meduse is vnderſtond  
that he toke from her / her royame And depriu'd her of  
hit / And bannyſſhid her poure and nakyd / And by

25 the fleyng hors that was engendrid of þ<sup>e</sup> blood / yſſued  
fro her hede / is vnderſtande that of her richesſes Iſſuyng

of that royame he founded and made a ſhippe named  
pegafe / that is as moche to ſaye / as good renomee And  
this ſhippe was likened vnto an hors fleyng / .For as

30 moche as the good renomee of perseus was than born  
fro region to region / in ſuche wiſe / as vpon an hors fleyng

And for as moche as perfeus wente in this shippe in dyuerce contrees where he gate hym a grete name .

**B**I this facion than perfeus conquerd the hede of Medufe / and did do make pegafe the most fwyft shippe that was in alle the world And <sup>5</sup> abode there certayn nombre of dayes seekyng and ferching the trefours of medufe & the rycheffes in whiche she and her fusters had sette her entencion and her herte There fonde perfeus stoncs precyous and thinges meruayllous / whan his shippe was made he filde hit with <sup>10</sup> precyous bagues and Iuellis And leuyng in this cyte men for to gouerne hit and conduyte / he wente to the see and toke for his armes / the armes of medufe / And reftyd not tyll he cam to the poort of the cyte / where regned athlas / sayng that he wold put hym vnder and <sup>15</sup> fubiugue hym afore er he retorned in to his contre .

**T**Hys cyte had to name septe / athlas knewe well the armes of medufe and fro as fer as he sawe pegafe the shippe he knewe the armes that were therin / than he thought that medufe had be veyn- <sup>20</sup> quysshid of these strangyers and doubtyd fore theyr comyng / this notwythstondyng he dide putte his men in Armes / And bewayled moche phylotes his brother otherwyse named esperus that kept the gardyn wyth apples of gold with his doughtres whan his folk were <sup>25</sup> armed he rengyd hem vpon the porte in good ordenance And anon after cam to the porte & there liuerd assaulte full of dyuerce and sharp fierstees / Athlas was yong . strong of body and puyssant of peple / he defended hym vayliantly And kepte the porte wyth the poynte of <sup>30</sup> hys swerd so well that by thys assaulte / Perfeus



conquerd no thing on him in two dayes that the assault  
dured / but that was more by the stronge nature of the  
porte than by the strength of the swerd of kinge athlas

5 **T**Han whan perseus sawe that he had not folk  
ynow for to take this porte / he withdrewe him  
in to hye see & sente in to naples vnto the kinge  
pilonnus half the trefors of Meduse signefieng to hym  
his hye aduenture / And requyryng hym that he wold  
fende hym a thousand sowdyours / the kyng and Da-  
10 nes had grete Ioye of these tydynges / And at the re-  
queste of perseus assemblid fyften honderd fyghtyng  
men whiche they sente in to libye with theyr propre  
sone danus whom they ordeyned chyef and capitayne  
of that Armee / Whan perseus sawe come thyse fyften  
15 honderd fyghtyng men / fro as fer as he had aspied them  
in the see he knewe that hit was his focoure that cam to  
hym . and took hys hors volant / And wente to mete  
hem / And fonde there danus his broder / to whom he  
made the moste grete chyer of the world / And entrid  
20 in to his shippe / And there abode all that day festyng  
him / And after whan hit cam to the nyght he comanded  
his maryners that they shold rowe and sayle toward  
septe / and they saide to hym that on the morn they wold  
deliuere hym at the porte / with that / the marouners put  
25 hem in deuoyr to do theyr craft so well that after the  
nyght was past aboute the sonne ryfing they shewid  
to perseus the hauen and porte of septe .

30 **T**Han was Perseus full of grete gladnesse and  
callyd danus and sayd to hym my broder / We  
ben now comen to the porte where thou shalt  
gete this day honour & worship / yf hit plesse the goddes .

.For yf the good auenture helpe vs / the honour shall  
 appertayne vnto thee to fore me / that durst not enbrafe  
 allone by my puyffance / A than in the name of alle our  
 goddes late vs employe here the hede of meduse / hit is  
 myn aduys at this tyme that she shall do torne in to  
 stones alle them of this regyon / That is to vnderstonde  
 that by the & thy men that by the mene of the rycheffes  
 of meduse be comen hether / they of this cyte sette to fore  
 vs / shall be constrayned to abandone and gyue ouer  
 theyr poort / And flee betwene the walles of stones of  
 theyr cyte / My broder Answerd danus I haue good  
 hoope and truste in fortune that she shall be thy helpe /  
 but for the honour and worship of this werk hit shall  
 not torne to my prouffit / but vnto thyn that arte sechar  
 of so honourable a werk / And I desire no thyng in this  
 partye but the name of a fouldiour .For at thy fouldrees  
 enuyronned only of the loue of our fraternyte I come  
 for to serue the / and yf the rycheffes of meduse had not  
 comen in to naples / wyth thy right good fame these  
 warryours had not comen in to libye / than for conclu-  
 sion hit is to conceyue / yf in this werke be honour that  
 hit torne in to thy glorye and loenge / but this notwyth-  
 stondyng I shall not fayle the / but for thy loue & wor-  
 shyp I shall expose to the assault all that I may and  
 hold of nature And I praye the to dubbe and make me  
 knyght.

**W**ith this word Perseus drewe out his swerd  
 and aftergaf to danus the ordre of knyghthode  
 and sin comanded that ech man shold garnyshe  
 hym of his armures / And than made dysplaye banyers  
 standares & penons / and other recognyffances and

knowlechinges / After dide do fowne his trompettes  
 Clarions and tabours And than after renged alle his  
 galeyes / And them sette in right fayr and good orde-  
 nance dide so moche that he cam to the poort / whiche  
 5 was all full and enuyronned wyth libyens that  
 were redy to caste on them speres dartes and stones .  
 .For they of that contre were right experyent of the  
 warre / And also to aborde this poort ther was a right  
 grete bruyt And a right greuous assemble / Perseus  
 10 was in pegase and assayllyd the libyens at on ende .  
 And danus was in another galeye and assayllyd  
 them in like wise / And they putte hem bothe in the moste  
 daunger of the assault / they had grete sheldes and large  
 where with they coueryd hem / They dredde no strook  
 15 of glayue ne fwerde ne of stoones they put hem self in to  
 the myddes of the porte / And there they gaf the assault  
 where many were dede on that oon partye and on that  
 other plente of fightars in suche wyse that at thentree  
 ther were many apuliens confounded and put a back .  
 20 .For they were than hooted and aspre but after thys  
 whan they had gotten land / Perseus and danus began  
 to smyte so dismeasurably vpon þ<sup>e</sup> libyens that they bete  
 hem down with oute remedye now here now there at  
 right side and at lifte side alle made rede with theyr  
 25 blood / Also Perseus gaf so grete a strook wyth hys  
 glayue vnto athlas / that purposid to haue come broken  
 the passage / that neuer after athlas had no hope / ne  
 durst not come amonge the strokes / how well that he  
 was grete strong and puyssant .



**S**O moche coueytous of victorye were perſeus &  
danus and they of naples / the libyens had not  
be accuſtomed to finde ſo fiers and mortall ar-  
mes as them of perſeus / the kynge Athlas wyſt not  
what to ſaye he encouraged his peple the beſte wyſe he  
couthe / this notwithstanding he ſawe hem beten down  
of his enemyes wyth oute nombre and wyth oute me-  
ſure / and ſawe forther that they of naples wan alway  
And whan he had ſeen all this / and alſo behelde that  
theſe men had vaynquyſhid the quene meduſe / he Iuged  
in hym ſelf that he was not puyſſant ynowh to reſiſte  
theyr ſtrength / and the hardnes of this bataylle ſhuld  
be to hym more domageous than vayllable / ſo ſowned  
he the retrayt & fled not in to his cyte / but in to a right  
hye montaygne that was therby / And therfore ſaye the  
poetes that athlas by the ſight of the hede of meduſe  
was torned in to a mountayn / And fro than forth on  
was this hille callyd athlas and yet endureth the name  
vnto this day / And for as moche as athlas ſauyd hym  
there among the ſtones / he founded ſyn a caſtell where  
he dwellyd vnto the tyme of hercules .

**¶** How Perſeus torned the kynge athlas in to a ſtone  
And how the quene auria wyf of kynge pricus wax  
amerous of the knyght belleforon that reſſufed her .  
wherof after he had moche payne .

**W**Han perſeus and danus ſawe athlas and alle  
his folk put to flight . Firſt he chaced hem vnto  
the mountayn / where they were torned in to  
ſtones / dyeng with theyr blood caues / buſſhouſ weyes  
and pathes And ſecondly whan he had put hem vnto vt-  
terance / as moche as they cowde they drewe to the cyte

wherof the yates were not shette ner kepte with noman  
And entryng therin they ne fonde but a litill nombre of  
matrones and yong children whiche made a terryble  
grete forowe / Alle the yong men and women were  
5 fledd vnto the feldes and had abandonned theyr cyte  
with theyr folk and goodes / Whan perseus and danus  
were with in / and sawe that hit was all abandonned  
to hem and her peple / Alle that they fonde / they passid  
that night with grete Ioye and gladnesse and makyng  
10 grete chier thankyng theyr goddes of theyr victorie That  
they had gyuen to them . And on the morn perseus made  
to bete down the gates of this cyte . After he comanded  
that euery man shold take his butin And whan they  
were laden with alle . Perseus and danus wente to  
15 the see in to her galeyeyes . And so sayllyd forth leuyng  
athlas in the montaygne where he gafe hym vnto the  
studie of the science of astronomie.

**I**N this tyme Iupiter made aliance with kynge  
troos by þ<sup>e</sup> moyen of gaminedes And in signe of  
20 loue and frendshyp he gaf vnto ylion a vigne of  
gold whiche was sette in þ<sup>e</sup> palais of ylion as hit shal  
be said in the thirde book / and hit was not longe after þ<sup>t</sup>  
kynge troos consumed the cours & ende of his regne / and  
his obsequie was halowed & made solempnly at troye in  
25 grete haboūdance of teres / and than ylion was crowned  
kinge of this cyte / where he liued peasibly in āpliacion &  
encrefing of feygnourye and lordship / and wedded a no-  
ble lady of the cyte of whom he receyuyd a sone named  
laomedon / And for as moche as I finde not þ<sup>t</sup> ylion dide  
30 ony thing after his coronacōn ner made other thing saue  
þ<sup>t</sup> he achieued & made his palais of ylion / I shall speke

henfforth of laomedon his fone that regned after hym .  
And here I fhall leue the faytes of this ylion / and yet er  
I wryte of laomedon I fhall pourfiewe my matere of per-  
feus / and for to come therto I fhall racounte an hiftorie  
that fyll after that perfeus had torned kynge athlas 5  
in to a mountaygyne.

**I**N this tyme than that perfeus began to gyue his lyf  
vnto righte digne oeuvres and werkes of noble fame .  
Accrifius belefader of this perfeus and naturell fader  
of danes / was put out of his kyngdome and royame & 10  
of alle the feynourye of arges by a confpiracion that  
Pricus his broder made ayenft hym And ther was left  
vnto acrifius of alle his royame no more but only the  
tour of darayn wherto he fledde for refuge / This acri-  
fius and pricus were naturell fones of abas lawfull 15  
fone of linceus that was only lefte a lyue of the fifty  
fones of egiftus by the mercy of his wyf ypermefta  
doughter of danaus.

**P**Ricus than hauyng vfurpyd fro his broder  
Acrifius the feignourye of the royame of Arges 20  
had a wyf named aurea / that was fo noriffhid  
That of custome gaf no charge but to habounde in dely-  
ces / and on a day fhe behelde amonge her feruauntes oon  
fo well accompliffhid a knyght that nature had no  
thyng forgoten in hym touchyng his body / of whom 25  
fhe was enamoured / fhe was yong And her hufbond  
pricus was auntyent in his werkes and condycions  
And moche laffe desired the carnall defirs than his wif  
did / how well they were bothe right nyhe of oon cage /  
This knyght thus belouyd had to name bellorophon . 30  
whan Aurea had put her studye to loue this knyght / fhe



solicited hym with her eyen & of semblauntes drawing  
him to delite & voluptuosite / but þ<sup>e</sup> trewe knight that had  
his herte ferme and stable whiche parceyuyd well her  
countenance / dissimilid & fayned that he was blinde in  
5 this partye And in the ende whan the lady sawe that by  
semblant ne signe Amerous that she shewid / he employ-  
ed him not ones for to plesse her / but fled her compaynie  
The moste euill wyfe that she myghte she entended to  
torne her loue in to hate / and her sayr countenances in to  
10 fierste / so enuyned that for to make hym dye / she accus-  
sid him to fore her husbonde the kynge pricus / sayng that  
he wold haue enforced her & requyred iustice Instantly .

15 **A**T this accusacion maad / bellorophon was pre-  
sent And fore abasshid & surprisid at the begyn-  
nyng / but in heering the lady speke at longe he af-  
fewrid him self & excusid him / saing madame neuer plesse  
hit vnto the goddes / that for to couere myn honour / I do  
discouere the disworship & fawlte of another / late neuer  
man aduance him self to deffame another / this knowing  
20 I shall saye the trouthe & yf ther be ony man that wor-  
thely may proue þ<sup>t</sup> ayenst me / and ouercome the litill no-  
bleffe of my herte I shall remette in Iugement of alle no-  
ble men þ<sup>e</sup> residue of my dayes Alas lady & fro whens is  
comen this abusion for to impose on me that I shold haue  
25 willed to enforce you / whan or in what place was this  
don or where ben þ<sup>e</sup> withnesses of the cry þ<sup>t</sup> yemade at the  
afray where ben þ<sup>e</sup> proues that shal saye that euer in my  
lif I was with you allone / hit gyueth me meruaylle fro  
what herte departed this dishonour þ<sup>t</sup> ye note in me / & for  
30 what cause hit is ymagined aienst me for I wil wel þ<sup>t</sup>  
al þ<sup>e</sup> world knowe / þ<sup>t</sup> I haue seruid you trewly & loially

And that I neuer thoughte dishonour vnto yow ne vnto  
the kynge / to whome I praye that he wille take and  
make Informacion vpon my liuyng & to vnderstonde  
in like wyse youris And yf hit can be prouyd and ap-  
pere that I haue trespaced that I may be punysshid . but I  
praye also that yf I be founde Innocent / that I may haue  
light absolucion .

**S**Ire sayd the lady that strongly was obstynat  
in her errour / I make me party ayenst hym / yf  
than I accuse hym hit is trouthe / hit oughte not  
to demande wytnessis of his folye / In this caas I am  
worth two wytnessis / .For alle the worlde knoweth  
that whan ony ylle man wille dishonour a woman he  
callyd no wytnesses ne no proues therto / and doth his  
damnable will the moste secretly that in hym is possible  
And so wende bellorophon to haue don wyth me whe-  
rof I requyre sentence and Iugement of hym / wyth this  
word Pricus assemblid his counceyll / And hit was  
Iuged that the lady shuld be beleuyd and that belloro-  
phon shuld be culpable of deth / Than spack pricus to bel-  
lorophon and sayd / .Fayr sone thou knowest & felest  
that I haue louyd and norissid the louyngly thou vn-  
derstandest the accusacion of thy lady / the caas is so  
foull / that hit may not be purged by denyeng / .For yf  
hit were so the euyl boyes and garsons shold aldaye  
dyshonoure as many of our women as they coude finde /  
In this caas the ladyes haue a prerogatyfe for to be be-  
leuyd / And nede not to brynge forth wytnessis / And  
for as moche as thy maystresse hath vaynquysshid the  
and requyred Iugement of thy trespaas / thou art con-  
dempnyd to dye / but for as moche as a fore this tyme



I haue had grete loue vnto the And that I knowe the a  
vaylliant man of thy body / I shall relece and attempere  
thys sentence in this wyse / that thou shalt goo fighte  
aienste the chymere of secille And yf thou maist adaunte  
5 her and maistrie / I geue the thylif and gyue the plain ab-  
solucion of all / moienant that neuer after thou replicque  
ne reherce this trespaas .

**S**Ire answerd bellorophon sin that fortune con-  
sente that I be attainte of ony infelicite / And that  
10 the preuelage of the ladies domyne and go aboue  
refon I had moche leuer to be vainquysshid by wrong  
cause & euill / than by luste and good cause And thanke  
you of the moderacion of your Iugement . And make  
vowe here in your presence that in all haste I shall goo in  
15 to secille to proue me ayenste the chymere And shall see  
yf fortune shall helpe me to gete again the lif whiche  
she had made me lose by your Iugement / Than the noble  
knyght departyd and toke leue of the kynge / of ladyes  
and damoysselles / Toke also his armures And goodes  
20 And made couenant and bargayned with certain ma-  
ronners to bringe hym to scecyll / whan they were acor-  
ded he wente to the see with litill compaygnye / And he  
was euyll at ease at his herte whan he sawe that for-  
tune was to hym so diuerse / how well he comforted  
25 hym self in his good quarell / And sayllyng on a day on  
the see of helespont his maronners lokid in to the weste  
And sawe come a right grete flote of shippes of warre  
whiche dysconforted them so sorowfully that it was  
wonder / And they awoke bellorophon that / that tyme  
30 slepte / And sayd that they were ded and loste .



**B**ellorophon confortyd his maronners the best  
 wyse he cowde / And told hem that disconforte  
 cowde not helpe hem / and thus spekyng a galeye  
 of auantage wente oute afore his felaws and fleeyng  
 on the see like vnto a byrde adressed her vnto the shippe 5  
 where in was bellorophon And aborded hit . and who  
 that wylle demande what the name was of the galeye .  
 And what men were ther Inne / I shall saye hym that  
 this was pegase and that perseus was therwythinne  
 Seeyng that he myght speke to the maronners that 10  
 caryed bellorophon to secylle / Axed and demaunded  
 them what they were and in to what regyon they wold  
 goo / whan bellorophon herde perseus speke / he behelde  
 his mayntene and countenance and Iuged in hym self  
 that he was of a good hous / and sayde to hym / Certes 15  
 sire I haue moche grete Ioye of that I see that the shyppe  
 and maronners ben so well adressed and in so good  
 recountre as youre is / .For ye seme well a knyght of no-  
 ble fettes / And so I shall yow saye my caas after that  
 ye haue made your axynge / At first poynt than where ye 20  
 haue enquired what we bee / knowe ye that in arges we  
 haue take our birthe / And as to the seconde I answere  
 yow that we haue entencion to go strait in to secylle / to  
 the whiche I am constrayned by the rygour of a mortal  
 Iugement caste vpon me at thynstance of a lady callyd 25  
 Aurea that Iniustely and vntrewly hath complaynd  
 vpon me saynge that I wold haue enforced her / This  
 lady that I speke of is wyf to the kynge pricus / whiche  
 newly and fresshely hath bannysshid and excylled  
 his broder Acrisius out of his royame / And this kynge 30  
 for to plesse and satysfye the accusacion of his wyf .

hath condempned me to deth / relecyng allway an hope .  
.For the good and the agreable seruices that I haue don  
to him he had acorded me to lyue / yf so be hit pleseth the god-  
des that I may by possibilite vaynquyssh & ouercome  
5 a chymere that is in secylle / vnto the whiche I go for to  
assaye me / so I praye yow that in owr Infortune we be  
not lette by yow neyther by non of your compaygnye .

10 **V** Aylyant knyght answerd perfeus as hit is  
trewe that the herte of a noble man taketh pyte  
and compascion in the dystresse and passion of  
his semblable / the recorde of your caas hath percyd myn  
herte of a charitable mysericord & pyte / by whiche ye  
may searly vnderstande not to haue by vs ony enpesche-  
ment vpon your Infortunat lif / and for as moche as the  
15 hertes of them that wold be enduced at callyng to the  
crafte of Armes / singulierly deliten them in auentures of  
grete poys and weyghte to enhauncethem / I shall accom-  
panye yow for two causes / the first is to expose my self  
to the dissipacion and destruction of the chymere yf hit  
20 happen that ye adaunte hernot / whiche I not presuppse.  
And the seconde is for after the chymere vaynquysshid  
I may be guyded by yow vnto the royaume of Arges .  
.For fro now forth I wyll be enemye vnto the kynge  
pricus in the fauour of the fader of my moder the kynge  
25 Acrisius / And for to late yow haue more gretter know-  
leche of this matere / I telle yow that I am sone of danes  
That same properly þ<sup>t</sup> she conceyuyd in the tour darrain  
of the seed of Iupiter / and that same in þ<sup>s</sup>one that kinge  
Acrisius made caste in to þ<sup>e</sup> see / but this notwithstanding

I shall take no vengeance on his demerites / but for the  
honour of the blood and of the wombe of whome I am  
yffued / I shall do hym focours and ayde / And praye  
yow that ye wyll be my felaw and broder of Armes .  
And that ye will come in to my galeye / And sende 5  
home agayn your maronniers in to her contres yf hit  
plese yow .

**W**Han bellorophon herde the good wordes and  
Answer of perseus he made alyances wyth  
hym and entrid in to his galeye And gaf leue 10  
to his maroniers and acompanyed hym wyth perseus  
and danus that for loue of hym toke theyr waye vnto  
Secyllle where they arryued by space of tyme & toke  
lande / And that same day bellorophon Armed hym de-  
siring to finde the chymere and toke leue of perseus in 15  
suche wyse as he that putte hym in paryll of deth / The  
poetes write þ<sup>t</sup> this chymere had þ<sup>e</sup> hede of a lion wombe  
of a chieure and taylle of a serpent / but for trouthe hit  
was a mountayne Inhabitable that had in his heyghte  
aboue a passing grete caue of lyons / and in the myddell 20  
of the hill hit was full of chieures And at the fote be-  
nethe hit was aduyronned and sette round aboute  
wyth serpentis / These lyons and serpentes were pas-  
sing damageable and noyous vnto the contre aboute  
and nyghe / whan bellorophon than sawe the moūtayne 25  
he wente thider / and perseus and danus folowed hym  
they had not longe marchid / whan they sawe and be-  
helde mo than a thousand lityll serpentes wyth many  
grete dragons / of whom some arestyd aboute belloro-  
phon and caste out of theyr venym / and the other passid 30  
forth and come rennyng vpon perseus and danus /



whiche had promysid to bellorophon that they shold  
there doo no feet ne entreprise of Armes / but yf hit were  
by constraynt and in defending theyr bodyes .

5 **A** None as these thre vayllyant knyghtes sawe  
these cursed bestes / they toke theyr swerdes and  
smote vpon and many beheded of them / but with  
this they had grete payne and traueylle . For these bestes  
were cruell and full of orgueyll And hardyed them  
cygrely to hem / And yf they had not ben well garnys-  
10 shid with abillementis of warre / they had ther sonner  
haue found deth than lyf / bellorophon went alleway a  
fore And smote down right and heded and smote in to  
peces many / Perseus ne his broder danus fought not  
but to the bestes only that cam vpon them / whan belloro-  
15 phon had a litill holden the stour and the bataylle ayenst  
this vermyne and that he had founden more aspre and  
more byting / .For the point and the egghe of his swerd  
was made terribly blont and smote ayenst her hard sca-  
les and skynnes / Than lepe down and out of her hooles  
20 the chieures and the lions and cam down for tassaylle  
the knyghte in so grete nombre that he was all enuyron-  
ned with them &c .

25 **S** Ome of these bestes escapid fro him & cam to pse-  
us and gaf hym new ocupacion for to employe  
his strength and prowesse / the lions lepe aboute  
the necke of bellorophon som tyme in suche nombre that  
in no parte he myght be seen / Alleway by hys abilite he  
coude well saue hym self / but he had neuer ascapid ther  
cam so moche vermyn vpon him there & bestaill & on pse<sup>9</sup>

and danus whiche rachid and assayllyd them / yf he  
had not wonne a roche vpon whiche he gate vp with  
grete payne and right grete swete of his body for to go  
vpon this roche / ther was but oon strayt waye / than  
siewed hym the lyons and wyth hem the other bestes / 5  
And helde hem on the way of the roche and at the fote  
roryng and makyng grete noyse aboute hym so terribly  
that perseus & danus had non other hope for the knyght  
but that hit had ben his laste daye / .For he had so many  
bestes aboute hym that hit was likly that the egghe 10  
and cuttyng of his swerd myght not longe dure with  
oute hit had ben worn or broken / than the lions that  
myght not touche his bodye / boot the stones And ara-  
chid them wyth theyr clawes / the serpentes flewe vp  
in to the Ayer / And liste vp theyr bodyes vpon theyr ta- 15  
ylles and caste fire and smoke oute of theyr throtes vnto  
the roche / And the moste hardiest of the lions oon after  
that other rengyd them in bataylle ayenst hym and  
shewid her teth receyuyng his strokes fore sette / And  
they fled not but abode as bestes famylier and fore co- 20  
ueytous of mannes blood in whome regned fouerayn  
fierste as moche as in ony wylde beste of the world at  
that tyme .

**H**Arde and meruayllous was this bataylle / as  
perseus and danus behelde & thoughte in what 25  
facion they myght socoure bellorophon / the no-  
ble knyght defended hym to his power / And beheld  
how he myghte saue hym fro this paryll / he caste his  
eyen vpon a grete stoon that henge ouer the weye of the  
roche wher vpon he was moūtid / and than he thoughte 30  
yf he myghte make that stone to falle down that he shuld

flee the moſte parte of theſe beſtes than he began a lityll  
and a lityll to wagge the ſton and to ſeke the Ioyntu-  
res that helde hit / and ſo moche labourid that in the ende  
he made hit to falle vpon the lions ſerpentes and chieu-  
5 res in ſuche wyſe that in the falling he made alle the ro-  
che to tremble and ferid in generall theſe vnhappy beſtes  
that they were there forfruffhed like as the thonder had  
ronne vpon them / And yet that more is of the tombling  
doun / hit made the roche that bellorophon ſtood on ſo  
10 ſhake that he tumblid doun thereon / And was ſo aſto-  
nyed that he wiſte neuer whether hit were day or night.

**T**He ſtone was grete / And brought doun many  
ſtones with hym / Perſeus and danus at the be-  
gynnyng wende that alle the mountayne had  
15 tumblid doun / And were not well aſſured in hem ſelf.  
This notwithstanding they beheld playnly the ende .  
And ſeyng after the noyſe and tempeſte that theyr fe-  
lawe laye vpright reuerſid vpon the toppe of the roche  
They had ſuppoſid that he had ben ded / Than they made  
20 grete ſorowe And were diſplayſant And approuchid  
the roche / where they fonde the beſtes liyng vnder the  
ſtones ded And they wente vp on the mountain / And  
than knewe that bellorophon was not ded / wherof  
they recouerid grete Ioye And ceſſyng theyr ſorow .  
25 They toke the knyght betwene theyr armes And per-  
ſeus demanded hym how hit ſtood with hym and how  
he felte hym ſelf &c .

**¶** How perſeus vaynquyſſhid the monſtre of the ſee.  
And expoſid hym ſelf agayn hym for the loue of An-  
30 dromeda &c .



Perfeus and danus awayted gladly the answer of bellorophon / And they helde hym for the most beste accompliffid knyght that euer they sawe / what shall I make longe processe of this matere Perfeus & danus ferchid this mountayn / And wente  
5 in to the caues of the bestes / but they fonde none / And alway fatte bellorophon vpon the roche .For he myght not goo for the fruffhyng and bruyfing of his foote / And than as the two knyghtes had circuyd and goon aboute the hille / they retourned to bellorophon and than  
10 perfeus sayd to hym / My broder o how well arte thou now worthy to haue of me preysing and loenge / thou haste this day don a good and an holy werk by thy worthy conduyte / thou hast gotten vnto thy name the crowne of glorious fame Thou haste passid the straye  
15 waye and passage of Infortune fro whens thou art yffued cler as the sonne / And not only thou hast laboured for thy wele and vtilite / but for the wele & prouffit of this regyon / .For thou hast slayn the wardes of the serpentes and the portyers of the lions that kepte this  
20 contre Inhabitable / whiche shall fro hens forward be enhabited and ocupied wyth peple / Bellorophon was all a shamed whan he herde the glorie that perfeus gaf vnto hym by mekenes and humylite that was in hym And answerd yf ther be ony worship in this werke  
25 that hit shall torne as well vnto hem as to hym / And they began to preyse echon other / and they ete vpon this hille that same nyght after they had made sacrifice vnto theyr goddes / And thedir cam alle the Apuliens where they made grete chiere / Syn they toke alle the skynnes  
30 of the lions / and the heedes of the serpentes that were

ded in signe of victorie and charged them in theyr gale-  
yes And they bare with hem in to theyr galeye belloro-  
phon whiche myght not goo And finably they wente  
vnto the see And sayllyd & rowed toward the poort  
5 of Athames whiche was nyghe by / but whan they  
wende to haue drawen vnto this porte / sodaynly ther  
roos a tempeste on the see so grete and hidouse / that they  
were constrayned to abandonne hem vnto the winde .  
and passid forth by the hauen and theyr fortune was  
10 suche that they were brought in to sirie / vpon the see of  
palestyne . And brought hem in to the porte and hauen  
of Ioppen / Where regned Amon and in palestyne regned  
cephus and phyneus &c .

15 **T**He same tyme that perseus arriued ther by this  
tempeste / the poort was so ful of men & women  
and children / that hit semed that all the world  
had be assemblid / perseus cam theder allone for his folk  
were disparklid vpon the see / some here and some there  
in theyr galeyes / whan the siriens sawe hym arryue by  
20 force of the winde / they assemblid a grete nombre aboute  
his hors volant / And the kinge Amon seeyng that hit  
was chargid with the hedes of lions / he was fore  
abasshid And for to knowe fro whens was that ga-  
leye comen he enquired who was the maistre / at whiche  
25 Inquisicion answerd perseus / And demanded of the  
kinge courtoysly in what contre he was arryued / the  
kynge tolde hym that he was in sirye / And that the  
Royame apperteyned to him whan perseus knewe that  
he spack to the kynge / he sayde / Syre I am descended

vnto this poort by the disposicion of fortune / Also my  
 men ben fore trauayllyd by the tempeste of the see / that  
 hath ben longe troublous vnto them / I requyre and praye  
 the that thou be contente / that I and they may come a  
 londe here for to refreshe vs / And yf hit happen in tyme 5  
 comyng that thou or ony of thyne haue to do of sembla-  
 ble courtosie in naples whiche is the place of our domy-  
 nacion / I promyse the by the parolle and word of a no-  
 ble man / that the meryte and thanke shall be rendryd  
 vnto the / the kynge answerd / noble knyght ther ben so 10  
 many exploratours now adayes sayllyng by the reg-  
 nes and contrees / that a man may not well knowe to  
 whom he maye affye and truste / this notwythstondyng  
 I see well by your facion / that I trowe that ye wyll  
 not gyue vs to vnderstande other thyng than trouthe / I 15  
 Abandoune to yow alle my contre / And pray yow .  
 that ye wyll come and take pacience in my hows /  
 And furthermore I counceylle yow / that ye departe and  
 come out of your shippe / .For yf ye abyde there longe ye  
 shall be in grete peryll / .For as moche as we knowe 20  
 certaynly / that in to this poort shall come anone a mon-  
 stre of the see that shall deuoure a right fayr virgyne  
 and mayde / whiche is here by / bounden vpon a stoon  
 for the cryme of her moder and by my sentence / And  
 yf ye tarye here tyll his comyng / hit is to doubte that 25  
 hit shall be the wors for yow / Bocace in the genealo-  
 gye of the goddes ne toucheth otherwyse the cause why  
 this mayde was thus exposed to the monstre / wherfore  
 I passe ouer and who demandeth the name of this mayde  
 Bocace sayth that she was named Andromadas . 30

W<sup>H</sup>an perseus had vnderstonden that there was

[leaf 107]



bounden this mayde / he desired to see her / for the meruail-  
 lous Iugement that was giuen vpon her / and arayde him  
 with riche vestementes and clothes / and sin yssued out  
 of the galeye / And tooke out also bellorophon whiche  
 5 myghte not yet sustene him self / and after he wente vnto  
 Andromeda / There were her parentes & cosins in grete  
 nombre whiche laboured in sorow and grete plente of  
 teres / whan perseus sawe this maiden that was passing  
 fayr in her degre / whiche neuer sawe her like ne pareille  
 10 he had pite of her and sayd to himself that yf he mighte  
 he wolde deliuere her fro this peryll . Than he callyd her  
 frendes and sayd vnto them in the presence of Amon / I  
 haue certainly grete pyte and compassion of this so fair  
 a damoyfelle / And also am esbayed how the goddes  
 15 suffre and endure that she is so fortunèd in her tendre  
 yeres / yf hit so happend that she myght finde ony knight  
 or noble man / that wolde vnbynde her And for charyte  
 expose his body agaynst the monstre for the loue of her  
 shold she be quyte / They answerd ye / A than sayde per-  
 20 seus yf I wolde for her sake aduenture my self in this  
 werke / And yf hit so fortunèd that I had the grace to  
 ouercome and surmounte the monstre and for to putte  
 hym to vtterance / shall ye be contente that the mayde be  
 my wyf / They answerd yet ye / And I promyse yow  
 25 sayd perseus and swere / That she hath founden in me a  
 knyght that shall putte his body and lif in Ieopardye  
 for her &c .

With this worde perseus sente to feche his Armes .  
 And after wente to the damoyfelle and vnbonde

her frō the stone / And deliueryd her to her frendes and  
kynnesmen / Saynt Augustin in the boke of the cite of  
god reherceth that yet in the same poort is the stone that  
Andromeda was bounden vpon / that they of Ioppen  
kepe for a signe and memorye of the victorie that per- 5  
seus had of the monstre / Alle they that were there mer-  
uaylled gretly of the entrepryse of the knyght / and kno-  
wyng the monstre / they Iugged hym ded / alowyng his  
hardynes that they femed that hit was to grete / Oon  
and other spack of this matere / Perseus Armed hym 10  
Ioyously / whan he was armed he cam to Andromeda  
and kyfte her takyng leue of her / and faide fayr mayde  
Praye ye vnto the goddes for your champion / that for  
your loue submytteth hym self vnto the peryll of deth  
To the ende that by your oonly suffragies I may come 15  
vnto the right stok of loue / And that we to gyder in  
Ioye be Ioyned in mariage whiche I bye at the prys of  
my lyf / Noble knyght answerd the mayde / I am more  
beholden to yow / than to all my kennesmen and frendes  
knowe ye that yf my suffrages maye obteyne anenfte 20  
the goddes / ye shall retorne faulf fro this entrepryse .  
Than perseus went hym to fore the stoon / And Andro-  
meda kneled wyth grete humylite wyth bothe her  
knees vpon the erthe in prouokying her goddes vnto the  
helpe of her champion / And ther were many matrones 25  
vpon the bancke of the see that for compassion put hem  
with her in contemplacion / and by this example of them  
all the siryens began to praye for the prosperite of the  
knyght / referuyd only the kyng phineus which pray-  
ed for his deth / And that for this cause for as moche 30  
as to fore the Iugement gyuen on Andromeda / he had

fianced and trouthplight her / so had he well willyd  
 that the monstre had deuoured perseus to the ende that  
 the mariage of hym and of her myght haue ben ended  
 what shall I saye more whan perseus had so put hym  
 5 self forth by the stone / he behelde toward the see and held  
 in his hand a good glayue and passing stronge / and he  
 ne had not longe seen the situacion and taken leyzer to  
 see the place / whan ther sprange out of a swolowe or an  
 abisme of the see a monstre so grete and so horrible / and  
 10 so dredfull that hit semed that he had be made for to def-  
 troye alle the world / he was rowhe & went on foure  
 feet like a beste / And his fourme was so disfigured that  
 none wiste wherto he myght be likened / whan than the  
 siriens sawe hym put oute his heed of the swolowe .  
 15 Ther was none so well assured but he ne tremblid for  
 fere . And many were so afrayed that they fledde in to  
 theyr howses and reentred in to theyr cyte . This not-  
 withstandyng perseus as sone as he sawe hym soudre .  
 He ran to hym as hardy and right well assewryd  
 20 and smote hym with the point of his glayue so apoint  
 vpon the right eye that on that side he made hym blinde .  
 Wherof the monstre felte so grete payne that he cam out  
 of the see with open mowth and wende to haue swalo-  
 wed perseus / And perseus wente aback a litill / And  
 25 put his glayue betwene his Iawes in to his throte so  
 fer forth / That he coude not drawe hit out agayn / And  
 so of force hit abode in his throte more than foure foot .

AT the second strook þ<sup>e</sup> monstre made a meruaillo<sup>9</sup>  
 crye listyng vp his heed & wenyng to haue caste out  
 30 the tronchon of the glaue whiche abood in his throte .



But hit wold not bee / Alwey the monstre assayllyd  
perfeus and wende to haue swalowed hym in to his  
throate / And perfeus alwey roof at hym wyth his  
swerde and put hym at defence and smote alweye at  
his throate and aboute nyghe his other eye / And so well <sup>5</sup>  
entended the werke that after he had gyuen hym many  
woundes he made hym on the lifte eye like as he dyde of  
the righte eye / And than as the monstre wente here and  
there / And made many wentes wyth oute seeyng and  
knowing where he wente pourfiewyng his aduventure <sup>10</sup>  
Perfeus gaf hym many woundes / ferchyng his herte .  
And at laste he fonde hit / And fynably he adresshid  
so that he perfed the herte of whiche strook he made  
hym to falle down ded .

¶ How phyneus wold haue had Andromeda / And <sup>15</sup>  
how Perfeus answerd hym that she shold be his wif

P Affing Ioyous and esbayed were the firyens  
whan they sawe the good fortune of perfeus .  
And saiden oon to another that suche a knyght  
ought be preyfed aboute all other men The kinge Amon <sup>20</sup>  
toke grete playfir to see his conduyte / And seeyng the  
monstre labouryng in his deth he wente down to hym en-  
braising hym and sayde / Syre the goddes gouerne thy  
fortune / And syn they haue receyuyd the in her fauour  
and grace ther is none that may anoye the / In a good <sup>25</sup>  
oure were thou here arryued demande what thou wylte  
And I shall do the haue hit / Syre answerd perfeus / I  
haue preferuyd fro deth the damoyfelle / I desir none  
other thinge but her / O vaylliant knyght sayd phineus  
that was there awayting thou thinkest to gloryfie thy <sup>30</sup>  
self for to haue goten in an half day more honour / than an

other knyght shall gete in an honderd yere / And gretly  
thou oughtest be recomanded / .Forfeen that the beaulte  
of this mayde deceyue the not / knowe thou that I haue  
trouthplighte her / and by right she ought to be my wif  
5 Many dayes ben goon and exspired that in the presence  
of our biffhop we promised to take eche other in ma-  
riage / This infortune is after comen to her / Thou haste  
releuyd her / And wolst therfore haue her / The begyn-  
nyng is fayr / but the ende is fowle And yf hit so happe  
10 that thou do me wronge / I late the wete that I shall not  
suffre hit .For in this contre I am a kinge and haue grete  
puyffance Alle the glorie that thou haste gotten / shall be  
quenched / wherfore I praye the / that thou forbere in  
this caas / And that thou suffre me to take that is myn .  
15 And take thou that / that longeth to the .

**D**Vring these wordes perseus behelde toward  
the see and sawe fro fer his galeyes comyng that  
oon after that other adressing them toward this  
poort / wherof he had right grete Ioye . And saide vnto  
20 phyneus . kynge I make no doute that thy power be  
grete in this contre . but knowe thou right well that I  
knowe no man liuyng that shall cause me to leue that  
longeth to me / whan I was comen hether I fonde this  
mayde condempnyd vnto deth / At that tyme she was  
25 alle abandonned to the deth I haue sauyd her / I faye to  
the that she is myn / and thou oughtest to haue no regarde  
to ony promesse that she hath made to the or to ony  
other / and so I haue entencion that she shall be my wif  
And yf thou wylt debate and fighte for her assemble  
30 thy power and make the redy in thy bataylle / Loo here  
come my galeyes redy for to receyue the . And yf I haue

not peple I now / yet I haue in my cofres the moſte parte  
of the treſours of meduſe for to ſende for men of Armes  
in alle places where I may gete hem .

**W**Han phineus conſiderid this anſwere & knewe  
that he was the knyght that had vaynquyſſhid 5  
meduſe / wherof that the renomewas grete and  
ronne thorough oute the world / he coude none otherwiſe  
anſwere to perſeus but that he myght do his playſir .  
Alle the kynnyſmen of Andromeda were angry with  
phineus for his folie And made him ſo aſhamed that he 10  
departyd thens / And wente in to the cyte / After they  
wente to beholde the monſtre / And than cam faillyng  
and rowing the apuliens vnto the poort / And they co-  
men brought perſeus & Andromeda in to Ioppen with  
grete triumphe / and yet that more is / perſeus and Andro- 15  
meda eſpouſid eche other that ſame day and laye to ge-  
der And the ſolempnyte duryd of theyr weddyng . xv .  
dayes / during this tyme the ſiriens cam to the poort daily  
for to ſee and beholde this monſtre / Plumus rehercith  
that of this monſtre was born to rome a boon of . xl . 20  
foot longe alſo grete as an oliphant / late them than that  
rede this hyſtorye ſerche how grete and huge this mon-  
ſtre was / whan only oon of his bones was ſo grete / the  
romayns for a grete meruaylle haue and kepe that bone  
What ſhall I ſaye more at the ende and expiracion of 25  
this feſte of the weddyng of perſeus and Andromeda .  
Perſeus toke leue of the ſiryens / And garnyſſhyd his  
galeyes with vitaylles departid fro Ioppen And wente  
to the ſee ledyng with hym his wif Andromeda / And  
fortune was to hym ſo good that in a litill tyme he paſ- 30  
ſid the ſees of ſyrie / And cam to lande at the poort and



hauene of thebes / where he was receyuyd courtoysly of  
kynge Creon that than regned a yong chylde .

**C** How perseus restablisshid in his royame the kynge  
Acrisius And how he slowe þ<sup>e</sup> kynge by euyll auenture .

5 **I**N thebes refresshid hem these Apuliens & made  
allyance with the kynge After they departid fro  
thens . And toke theyr waye by lande toward  
Arges vnder and by the conduyte of bellorophon that  
than was hooll and helid of his foot whiche knewe  
10 well the contre / whan bellorophon had guyded hem so  
nyhe Arges that in an hour they myght renne to fore the  
gates He signefied hit vnto perseus And than perseus  
made his oost to tarye in a valeye And sente danus vnto  
the kynge prycus to somene hym that he shold yelde the  
15 royame vnto kynge Acrisius Danus wente to Arges .  
And accomplished the somacion . The kynge pricus  
answerd to hym that he was kynge And that he wold  
holde that he helde . And manaced perseus vnto the deth  
yf he departe not fro the Contrey hastely / Danus retor-  
20 ned vnto the Oost of perseus with this Answer and  
made to hym the reporte / Perseus than hoped that kynge  
prycus wold come to hym and gyue hym bataylle and  
had therof right grete Ioye and playfir / For he desired  
nothing in the world more than to be in Armes And for  
25 to entende and take hede vnto his werkes / He ordeyned  
that nyght that he shold departe his bataylle in three .  
Wherof he gaf charge of the first batayll to bellorophon  
Whiche requyred & desired of hym the vawarde with  
ryght grete Instance / And he hym self helde the seconde  
30 bataylle / And to Danus he betoke the thyrde / And

And thus whan he began to sette forth bellorophon on  
his waye / he had not ferre gon whan he sawe fro fer the  
kyng pricus that knewe of theyr comyng by his espyes  
And had sette his batayll arengid by good ordenance .

**B**ellorophon had with hym but two thousand  
fightyng men / whan the kyng pricus sawe him  
come with so lityll a companye / he supposed  
that hit had be perceus / And wende to haue had all  
wonne afore the hand by auantage / And maad his pe-  
ple to meue agaynst hem of whiche hastely began a cru-  
ell and hard bataylle / And of this batayll was pricus  
right Ioyous at thassamble / And well employed hys  
Armes and his swerde and dyde meruaylles / but at  
that tyme that he supposed by force to haue abiden victo-  
rious and vainquer of his enemyes / he caste his eyen to-  
ward thebes and sawe perseus and his bataylle that  
descouerd and shewyd hem self / wherof his fortune  
was sliche / that in the beholdyng the hede of meduse  
whiche he bare payntyd in his shelde of cristall / that he  
and alle his folk in a moment were torned in to stones  
That is to saye that he and all his meyne had lost theyr  
strengthes and corages / And that they myght no more  
liste theyr swerdes than myght statues or ymages And  
than pricus fledde And alle they that flee myghte / some  
in to the cyte and some in to the felde at all auenture .  
Perseus dayned not to folowe the chaffe be cause of  
theyr poure conduyte / And thus pricus escaped the deth  
And abandonned and gaf ouer the contre / And wente  
with hem that fledde in to calidonie / where he was after-  
ward put to deth by hercules / And perseus wente in to  
the cyte of Arges / wherof the yates were open / And

With oute any men that made any deffence whan he  
was in the Cyte he made an edicte vpon capitayll payne  
that none be so hardy to do any force ne violence / After  
that he sente to feke his geant fader Acrifius . And told  
5 to hym who he was And so deliuerd to hym agayn his  
Cyte and his royame &c .

**O**.F this courtoysye Acrifius helde hym self gretly  
beholden vnto perseus and axid hym and enqy-  
red of his doughter danes and of theyr aduen-  
10 tures . Perseus told hym alle that he knewe . And than  
Acrifius was right fore desplayfant of that rudenes that  
he had doon And for to amende all He adoptyd perseus  
in to his sone . And gaf hym the full power to gouerne  
the Cyte And he hym self withdrewe hym in to the tour  
15 of darrayn / And than sente agayn vnto naples danus  
his broder / with whom wente bellorophon And he gaf  
vnto hem and to theyr companye grete tresors at theyr  
departement . Perseus sente many Argyens in to licye .  
And made them to enhabite the contrey . And thus abode  
20 perseus in Arges with his wyf Andromeda of whom  
he gate many Children That is to wete scelenus . blache  
Demon Erictreus and Gorgophon Whiche alle becam  
men . And took wyues / yet regnyng the kynge Acrifius  
And amonge alle other gorgophon had oon wyf / Of  
25 whom he had two sonnes Alceus and Electrion Alceus  
engendryd Amphitrion And electrion engendryd Alcu-  
mena of whom cam hercules / What shall I make longe  
proceffe of the faytes and of the generacions of this  
Perseus / He gouerned passing well the Royame .  
30 And loued moche the kynge Acrifius / But ther fille an



hard fortune vnto hym in the ende / .For as he wente on  
a nyght allone vnto the tour of darrain in wille to visite  
the kynge / The gardes and kepars of the tour knewe  
hym not and fille vpon hym & hurte hym / whan he felte  
hym smyten / he put hym self to deffence / The noyse waxe  
grete / the kinge herde the bruyt and cam rennyng down for  
to departe the medle / And threstid in to the prees in fu-  
che wyse that perfeus knewe hym not / And wyth his  
glayue so smote hym that he slewe hym and alle the por-  
ters with hym And anone after whan he cam in And  
fonde hym ded / he remembrid and thought he had put  
hym to deth after the prenostication of the goddes . And  
made grete sorow / And dyde do ordeyne his obsequye  
right solempnly / And at this obsequye happend for to  
be there Iupiter and his sone vulcan / whiche at that  
tyme practiqued to geder the science of magike and ny-  
gromancye &c .

**A**T this tyme vulcan forged and smote the thon-  
ders vnto Iupiter / That is to saye that he meuyd  
him self by smytyng and tempestieng by fire and  
swerd the royames of theyr neyghbours And the poetes  
saye and make many fables of hym / wherof nedeth to  
make no mencion at this tyme . Perfeus than dyde grete  
honour and worship vnto his fader Iupiter And in like  
wyse dyde Iupiter vnto perfeus / And eche told other  
and reherced of theyr aduentures / but whan thobsequye  
was doon of kynge Acrisius . And Iupiter beheld and  
sawe perfeus so heuy that he coude haue no Ioye / he retor-  
ned in to crete vnto his wif Iuno And ther he exercysed  
hym self in the science of magique . And than whan per-  
feus fonde hym self allone in Arges and sawe that he

myght recouer there no Ioye / he departed fro thens and  
wente vnto the cyte of micenes but he regned there not  
long for as moche as the deth of Acifius renewyd all  
weye & coude not put hit out of his mynde And so depar-  
5 ted thens and withdrewe hym with a grete oofte in to  
Oryent / where he gate and conquerd by Armes a grete  
contre whiche he named perfe after his name And there  
founded the cyte callid persepelis after that he had vain-  
quysshid and put to deth liber pater whiche made hym  
10 warre And than whan he had so doon he pourueyed for  
his children in fuche wyse that his two sonnes Alceus  
and electrion with Amphitrion and Alcumena dwelde  
in thebes / and bachedemon regnid in perce Erecteus vpon  
the reed see and scelenus in micenes / But of alle them I  
15 will tarye at this tyme And shall speke only of Amphi-  
trion & Alcumena that loued so well to geder That they  
toke day that oon to wedde that other / And the cause p<sup>r</sup>  
meued me to wryte of this . ij . Is for as moche as of Alcu-  
mena cam hercules whiche first destroyed Troye &c .

20 ¶ How Iupiter laye with Alcumena And how quene  
Iuno sente two serpentes for to flee hercules / And how  
hercules stranglid the two serpentes .

25 I N this tyme whan Iupiter cam again in to crete. And p<sup>r</sup>  
he with vulcan his sone & Iuno practiqued by theyr stu-  
dy the science of magike after that / that vulcan had for-  
ged p<sup>r</sup> thondres of Iupiter Amphitrion wedded the fayr  
Alcumena in the cyte of thebes with grete honour & also  
with a grete cōpaignye of kinges quenes & of ladyes / the  
feste of these espoufaillies was grete / Iupiter p<sup>r</sup> kinge of  
30 crete / and the quene Iuno were there duryng the feste / Iu-  
piter contynuelly behelde alcumena for her grete beawte



Alcumena was the most fayr woman that euer was  
 seen Alle his delectacion / and all his besy cure was in be-  
 holdyng the ladyes / he desired nothinge but for to be all-  
 way amonge the ladies And all way had the eye vpon  
 them / but in effect he behelde Alcumena moste in especial 5  
 In whom he had a souerain playfir / In the grete habon-  
 dance of his sight And so fore fixed his eyen in her excel-  
 lence / that his herte began to medle in suche wyse that  
 he was Amorous and couetous of her loue / In this co-  
 uoytise and desire he lete passe the solempnyte of the wed- 10  
 ding And retourned in to crete / but he had not longe so-  
 iourned there whan the said couoytise meued so certainly  
 in hym / That on a day he began to speke of Alcumena in  
 the presence of Iuno . And sayde vnto gamynedes his  
 squyer . Gamynedes what semeth yow of the beaute of 15  
 Alcumena . Syre sayd the squyer me thinketh she shy-  
 neth in alle maner excellence of a lady . And that for to  
 comprise alle her vertues / ther is no kynge so grete / but  
 that he might well seme to be of Allyance of oon that is  
 of lasse beaulte than she is . 20

**W**Han the quene Iuno vnderstood þat Iupiter helde  
 his deuises of Alcumena / At that sametyme she  
 was fore meuyd with newe Ialousye . For she  
 had often tymes ben Ialous of Iupiter . And thought in  
 her self that yf she myght she wold do sle and put to 25  
 deth Alcumena After these deuises Iupiter felte hym self  
 fore susprised and surmounted of the couetyse of loue .  
 And for to ouer maister hit and to late hit passe he toke  
 his bowe and his arowes in entencion to goo to the  
 woode for to slee som wylde beste And wente forth ac- 30  
 compaygnyed only of gamynedes / but assone as he was



yffued out of the gate / ther cam and recountryd hym  
 oon of the knyghtes of thebes / that dyd reuerence vn-  
 to the kynge and fayd to hym / that the kynge Creon  
 of thebes sente hym vnto hym and requyred hym that  
 5 he wold Ayde and helpe hym to warre agaynst the  
 kynge of Thelleboye / That had trespaced agayn hym  
 Whan the kynge Iupiter had herde the message of the  
 knyght he was ryght Ioyous of the requeste of the  
 kynge of Thebes / And toke the knyght by the hand  
 10 and brought hym to his palays / And ther feested  
 hym and made hym good chere / And after he sayd  
 that with right good herte and will he wold so-  
 coure and helpe the kynge Creon in his warre / The  
 knyght of thebes wyth this Answer toke leue of  
 15 kynge Iupiter / And retorned vnto thebes / Where  
 thapparayll and ordenance was maad to goo vnto  
 thelleboye / Hit was not longe after that the kynge  
 Iupiter made his armye And hasted hym as moche  
 as he myght / that shortly he myght come to the hows  
 20 of thebes where he hoped to fynde Alcumena / Whan  
 all thyng was redy he toke his waye And so spedde  
 hym in his Iourney that he cam to thebes where he  
 was ryght honourably and worshipfully receyuyd  
 of the kynge the quene and of the ladies The kynge  
 25 Iupiter at his comyng forgate not to loke / yf he myght  
 see Alcumena / But he sawe her not / wher of he was  
 in grete payne / And wyfte not what to do And he  
 loked after Amphitryon / But he coude nowher see  
 hym / wherof he was more abasshyd than he was  
 30 afore In this abasshement he approchyd to kynge Cre-  
 on And demanded of hym where Amphytrion was

the kinge creon answered him that he should hastily come  
 and that he assembled his men of armes at the castell  
 of arciancie whiche he had gyuen him This castell stood  
 betwene thebes and atthenes vpon the ryuer And was  
 a passing fayr place and stronge Anon as Iupiter had 5  
 vnderstonde that kinge creon had gyuen Arciancie to Am-  
 phitrion / he ymagined sone that Alcumena was in that  
 place / And was in will to haue goon to that place / ne  
 had ben that he dredd the talkyng of the peple And also  
 he fered to make amphitrion Ielous / This confiderid 10  
 the kynge Iupiter & abode in thebes not well plesid for  
 as moche as he myght not see Alcumena / And passid  
 there the tyme the best wife he cowde till Amphitrion .  
 and other were comen Than departid fro thebes the king  
 creon And wente for to laye siege to þ<sup>e</sup> cyte of thelleboye 15  
 Accompanied with kyng Iupiter and many other . du-  
 ring the siege they of the cyte assayllyd ofte tyme by ba-  
 taylle agayn theyr enemyes / but they of Thebes had all  
 way so good fortune That in the ende they of thelleboye  
 yelded hem of all poyntes in the wille of kynge creon . 20  
 and thus whan the kinge of thebes had ouercomen and  
 subiugued the cyte he returned vnto his contre wyth  
 grete Ioye &c .

**W**Han Amphitrion sawe that her enemyes were  
 ouercomen And that ther was no more peryll . 25  
 He had grete desir to goo see his wif Alcumena  
 And for to dispose hym the more sonner to be with her  
 He departid fro the oost wyth leue of the kynge accom-  
 paynyed of a squyer only / whan kynge Iupiter sawe  
 amphitrion so departe vpon his waye / he began to thinke 30  
 and auyse hym of a grete subtylte for to come to hys



entente / And he departyd fro the Oofte wyth gamy-  
nedes only / And as sone as he was in the felde on the  
way they two to geder / Iupiter entryd in to deuyses  
with gamynedes / And sayd to hym Gamynedes I haue  
5 grete affiance in yow and more than in ony man that ly-  
ueth wherfore I shall telle yow priuely a thyng secrete  
Whiche I shall accompliffh as me semeth / whiche ye  
muste holde & kepe secrete Trouthe it is that I am Amo-  
rous terryibly of dame Alcumena / By no maner in the  
10 world I may not forgate her ne put her fro my desyre.  
how wel she knoweth not the payne that for her loue ha-  
bouideth in me/for I neuer was so hardy to discouer to her  
my caas / ner neuer durste shewe hit her /for as moche as  
I knowe her wife chaste and vertuous / this confideryd  
15 thynking on this thyng & werk/I fynde me ful of abusyon  
And confesse my folie / how wel I am in a maner dispair  
now/for I had supposid to haue fouiden the fayt of loue in  
Alcumena/ne had ben the sodayn deptyng of amphitriton  
Whiche yet gyueth me in maneran hope/.Forat thetyme  
20 that I sawe hym departe fro þ<sup>e</sup> oost for to go see his wyf  
in the companye of his squyer/I ymaged that inall hast  
I wold goo vnto Arciancie by a more ner & shorter way  
.For I knowe the passage longe syn . And that I wold  
transfigure my self in the forme of amphitriton And yow  
25 in the forme of his squyer for to goo vnto alcumena / and  
to make her vnderstond that I were Amphitriton /Gamy-  
nedes vpon this entencionand purpoos/I amcomenonthe  
way to go theder wyth yow / we muste nedes wyne  
vpon Amphitriton on this way a nyght and a day / and  
30 therfore late vs go nowe meryly / Me thynketh that  
loue shall helpe me / And whan Alcumena shall



see me transfused in to the forme of Amphitryon / And  
yow as his squire she shall not be so wyse to perceyue  
myn enchaunement .

**G** Amynedes herkened right diligently the wyll  
and purpoos of Iupiter and promysid hym that 5  
he shall employe hym in this werke as moche  
as in hym is possible And so they rood with good wil  
and grete desire the more short waye / and in ridyng and  
goynge Iupiter disposed hym in his enchantemens / he  
sped hym so that he arriued in an euenyng at the castell 10  
of arciencie / whan he was there arriued / he transfigured  
hym self and gamynedes in suche wise as he had afore  
purposid / And than at the same oure that Alcumena  
slept / And that eche man was abedde they came to the  
castell and so knockyd at the yate that they awoke the 15  
porter / The porter cam to the wyndowe . And loked down  
bynethe and sawe Iupiter and gamynedes by the mone  
lighte / hym thoughte and femed that hit was Amphy-  
trion and his squire / wherfore he opend the gate and  
receyued them in suche wyse as he shold haue doon his 20  
lord Amphitryon / After broughte hym vnto the dore of  
the chambre where Alcumena slepte / And awoke her .  
saying that her lord was comen / After he retorned to  
kepe the gate by comandement of Iupiter And alcumena  
opend her chambre vnto Iupiter / whiche entrid in with 25  
grete Ioye And at thentre in to this chambre / Iupiter and  
Alcumena toke eche other in Armes and kyssid / we-  
nyng Alcumena that hit had ben Amphitryon / and whan  
they were so beclipt eche in others Armes Alcumena de-  
manded hym fro whens he cam Iupiter answerd and 30  
sayd he cam fro thellehoie / and that after the yeuyng

ouer of the town and yeldyng of theyr enemyes / he departed  
 fro the Oost for the loue of her accompanied only of  
 his squyer / to come the hastelier to her / Than Alcumena  
 was well contente of the wordes of Iupiter And axed  
 5 hym yf he wold ete or drynke / Iupiter answerd that he  
 wold no thyng but go to bedde with here / what shall I  
 faye more he laye with her and had that he desired / The  
 kynge Iupiter had neuer so grete Ioye in hym self / And go-  
 yng to bedward bad gamynedes that he shold go to the  
 10 chambre dore and abide there withoute and so gamyne-  
 des departid fro the chambre / and Iupiter approuchid to  
 Alcumena by grete loue And so complaysid her in loue in  
 as moche as his power myght extende In this wise and  
 by this facion cam Iupiter vnto the secretes and Ioye of  
 15 loue In deduyfing hym self with this lady . That hym se-  
 med expedyent for to enchaunte alle them that were in  
 the place And than he slepte with Alcumena And after  
 he aroos / And cam to gamynedes whiche kepte the  
 wacche at the dore . And told hym that for to conduyte  
 20 this werke secretly he muste enchante alle them of that  
 place in fuche wyse that they shold not awake vnto the  
 comyng of Amphitrion . And he wold that he shold go  
 to the gate to awayte yf Amphitrion cam And yf hit hap-  
 pen he sayd that he cam by day light . I shall deliuere to  
 25 yow a pouldre that ye shall caste in the ayer ayenst hym .  
 and this pouldre hath fuche vertu that shall kepe amphi-  
 trion fro approchyng this place also longe as the day en-  
 dureth And than whan hit is nyght And he knocke at  
 the gate . ye shall come to me And than we shall opene  
 30 the gate and brynge hym to his wyf / And after that  
 we shall retorne fro hens &c .



**T**He Kynge Iupiter with these wordes wrought  
 in his science and made his charmes and fortes  
 in fuche wyfe that all they that were in þ<sup>e</sup> place  
 myghte not awake / with oute deffetyng of his chante-  
 ment / whan he had fo do he tranfumed gamynedes in to 5  
 the liknes of the porter and comysed hym to kepe the  
 yate / After he retorned in to the chambre of Alcumena  
 And fhette fafte the wyndowes. that no light might co-  
 me in. And after he wente to bedde and laye wyth the  
 lady and awoke her and there made alle the refidue of 10  
 the nyght & alle the day folowyng takyng his playfir  
 with her / fo acertainly that he engendrid on her a right  
 fayr fone conceyuyd vnder the regne of the beſte conſtel-  
 lacion of heuen / In the ende whan kynge Iupiter had be  
 with her a nyght and a day / aboute the hour whan the 15  
 ſonne goth down in to the occident / And that hym ſemed  
 that Amphitriſion ſhold come / he made by his ſcience Al-  
 cumena for to ſlepe. After he roos vp & made hym ſelf  
 in the forme of oon of the ſeruantes of the place / And he  
 had not longe taryed after / That Amphitriſion and his 20  
 ſquyer cam knocke at the gate / hit was than nyght.  
 Whan gamynedes herde hym knocke / he cam to the gate  
 and opend hit / Amphitriſion wende that hit had ben his  
 porter He ſalued hym And he demanded him wher his  
 wif was / The vaylliant porter ſayde to hym that ſhe 25  
 ſlepte / And ſo brought hym vnto her chambre / And Iu-  
 piter ſo goyng charmed hym that he had no deſire to ete  
 ne to drinke / Whan he was comen in to the chambre he  
 awoke Alcumena / That was alle abaſſhid whan ſhe  
 ſawe Amphitriſion. ſhe had ſuppoſid for trouthe that 30  
 ſhe had ſeen hym a good while to fore / and ſhe groped



aboute her in the bedde : And wende she had dremed  
And whan she had groped and tasted aboute her  
in the bedde And that she fonde no pson there / than  
was she more abasshyd than she was afore / Not-  
5 withstondyng she aroos and cam vnto Amphitryon  
sayng to her self that she had supposid to haue seen  
hym afore / And that he was comen / how well she  
made grete chyere to her husbond sayng to hym that  
she had alle the nyght dremed of his comyng / After  
10 they deuysed of many thynges. .Fynably he wente to  
bedde wyth her / And he laye with her that same hour .  
of whom Alcumena conceyuyd yet a sone of Amphi-  
tryon / Iupiter and Gamynedes departid than fro the  
castell / And there leste alle them slepyng that were  
15 wyth in the place / that none awoke till hit was on  
the morn . they had wende that they had slept but oon  
nyght . But they slept a day and two nyghtes . And  
this werke was achieued so secretly that neuer per-  
sone coude espye hyt / By this maner the sayre Alcu-  
20 mena conceyued two sones that oon of Iupiter & that  
other of Amphitryon / By space of tyme the fruyt of  
her wombe began to appere þ<sup>e</sup> tidynges were born all  
aboute And also in to Crete and cam to the eeres of  
kyng Iupiter and of Quene Iuno The kyng Iupiter  
25 this heeryng Was passing Ioyous & glad in the pre-  
sence of Iuno He behelde gamynedes & began to waxe  
reed And after shewid right a good semblant and  
gaf preyfing to the goddes for the conception of Alcu-  
mena And spak moche good of her That the Ialou-  
30 fyes of this olde quene / Renewid and fresshid and plan-  
tid in her herte a right mortall enuye vpon Alcumena .

**W**ith the renewyng of this enuy the quene Iuno  
 concluded in her corage medlid with the multe-  
 plyance of Ialoufye that she wold fle and do  
 dye Alcumena by enchantement of forcerye . For in that  
 crafte she was an experiente maistresse / O olde curfid 5  
 woman / she helde her than musing in her herte her curfid  
 Ialous thought And leyde her eeres to here Iupiter speke  
 of Alcumena with oute any thinge to repleye agayn .  
 But finably whan she knewe that the tyme of childing  
 of Alcumena approuchid / she departid fro crete secretly 10  
 all allone and sayd to Iupiter and dyde hym to vnder-  
 stonde that she wold go disguysed in certayn secrete pil-  
 gremages And wente her forth vnto Arciancie / where  
 was a temple standyng right nyghe the castell and  
 was made in the remembrance of the goddesse dyane . 15  
 This olde quene than entrid in to this temple no thing  
 for deuocion that was in her / but for to espye yf any per-  
 sone cam fro the castell for tenquere of the state of Alcu-  
 mena / she was disfigured by her crafte / This crafte vsid  
 after symon magus in the tyme of faynt peter / And of 20  
 themperour Nero / whan she had ben there a lityll . Ga-  
 lantyfe that gouerned Alcumena was there longe in  
 oroysons and prayers to fore the representacion of the  
 goddesse / At thende whan she had don / she aroos fro her  
 contemplacion / And wende to haue retorned . But thys 25  
 olde quene cam ayenst her and saluyed her . And for to  
 come vnto her purpoos she sayde to her fayntly dame  
 I am all abasshid / wherfore Answerd galantyfe / for  
 as moche sayd she as I am not in certayn where I am.  
 loue sayd galantife ye be at the castell of Arciancie . For 30  
 this temple is of the Appertenantes of the castell and



standeth betwene thebes and Athenes Dame sayd the  
olde Iuno I trowe that this is the place that Amphitri-  
on and dame Alcumena dwelle / ye saye trouth sayd ga-  
lantyse And how fare they sayd Iuno / right well sayd  
5 galantyse my lord Amphitri- on is in good poynt / and my  
lady Alcumena is redy to brynge forth a childe / she aby-  
deth ner awayteth lenger daye ne terme / And therfore I  
may no lenger tarye hit is tyme that I retorne to her / to  
the goddes I commytte yow .

10 **G** Alantys with this worde wente her to Alcume-  
na whiche began to trauaylle and fele the payne  
of childing And the false olde quene abode in the  
temple in entencion to do dye and flee Alcumena in suche  
wyse as she had purposed Than in the stede of sayng of  
15 oryson / she began to make certayn fendly & deuclissh  
werkes / this don she made her legges to crosse on ouer  
that other And satte in that wyse / and than the same mo-  
ment & tyme þ<sup>t</sup> she had so doo Alcumena by the strength  
of the forcerie began the same wyse her legges to crosse  
20 onouer þ<sup>t</sup> other & sat in the same manere as the olde Iuno  
dide / In suche wise þ<sup>t</sup> ther was no man ne woman that  
might make her do otherwyse The poure alcumena felte  
than þ<sup>e</sup> most aspre & sharpe throwes of the world .For  
her fruyt wold come out And she might not in no wise  
25 for as moche as her legges & thyes were so crossed on  
ouer that other / she cried & playned pietously / and was  
in right greuous martirdom The mydwyues coude no re-  
medye / she was thre dayes holden in this poynt all way  
her legges crossed on ouer an other / Duryng these thre  
30 dayes galantys . And the ladyes and women on after  
an other cam in to the temple of dyane for to praye



praye for the deliuerance of Alcumena / And alleway  
 they fonde there the olde quene sitte with her legges crof-  
 fid and oonouer an other / but they fonde her neuer in oon  
 semblance and likenes / .For at eche a tyme she tranf-  
 figured her in diuerfe liknes and figures of beftes or of wo- 5  
 men to thende that they fhould not perceyue her ner her  
 craft / how well ſhe coude not ſo tranfforme her ſelf but  
 that galantys that ofte cam in to the temple toke hede of  
 her / whiche fonde allwaye there a beſte or a woman  
 ſitte in the maniere that Alcumena ſat in her chambre . 10  
 Alcumena had ben than thre dayes in payne / At the forth  
 daye whan than galantys waxe melancolious and an-  
 gry of that ſhe ſawe in the temple ſhe aſſemblid the wo-  
 men and ſayd to them . Certayn fayr dames hit muſte  
 nedes be þ<sup>t</sup> the payne that my lady Alcumena ſuffreth co- 15  
 meth of ſom forcerye and wycche craft / for all the payne  
 that ſhe hath cometh of that / that ſhe may not departe  
 her legges and vnfolde hem / This is myn ymaginacion .  
 And I am of auys to pourueye ſone for hit / .For I haue  
 ſeen in the temple at all tymes that I haue bentheremore 20  
 than thre dayes a woman or a beſte with legges crof-  
 fed or folden as my lady hath heres / me ſemeth for  
 trouth that hit is ſom euyll creature / whiche willeth  
 euyll wyll to my lady and that by her fortes conſtray-  
 neth her to ſitte ſo as ſhe doth / yf hit be ſo I ſhall deceyue 25  
 her / .For oon of yow and I ſhall go in to the temple fay-  
 nyng right Ioyous and glad chere / And ſhall thanke  
 the goddeſſe dyane ſaynge all a hyghe that my lady is  
 deliuerd of a fayr ſone And than whan that creature  
 that allway is there & changeth her in diuerſe formes 30  
 haue herd our preyſing / yf hit be ſo that ſhe wyll ony

ylle to my lady . I doute not but she shall lese contenance  
And that alle troublid she shall departe wenyng to  
haue saylled of her chantement/and than yf hit be trouth  
that I suppose . My lady may haue some maner of alle-  
5 geance of her payne &c .

**T**He women duryng these wordes remembryd  
hem what they had seen in the temple the wo-  
man & bestes that galantis spack of / And were  
of oppynyon that galantis shold do like as she had pur-  
10 posed / Than galantis and oon of the women departed  
fro the chambre and wente to the temple And entryng  
therin they sawe on the oon side where þ<sup>e</sup> false olde quene  
satte as she was wonte to doo and had transformed  
her in to the guyse and forme of a cowe / They passed  
15 forth by / well assured with oute makynge of ony sem-  
blant of sorowe or other thinge saauf only of Ioye / and  
whan they were comen to fore the Awter they kneled  
doun and Ioyned her handes to gyder and sayde . Dyane  
fouerayn goddesse thy name be preysed in heuen and in  
20 erthe .For thou haste gyuen this our to my lady Alcume-  
na and suffryd her to brynge forth in to this world the  
moste fayrest childe of the world / with these wordes  
they roose vp and retorned agayn . And as they wente  
they sawe the cowe sodainly departe out of the temple  
25 and ran vpon the feldes/And in the same tyme & Instant  
Alcumena aroos/ and was deliuerid of . ij . fayr sones / er  
galantis and her felawe were comen in to the Chambre .

**W**Han galantis was comen vnto Alcumena and  
fondether .ij. fayr sones whiche she had brought  
30 forth/she was full of Ioye of that/that she had  
begyled and deceyued the false olde Iuno/she tolde than

vnto the ladies and to Alcumena how she had seen the  
cowe And how she was departid fro the temple / And  
asseuryd them that hit was som euyll persone / And  
that she had holde alcumena in this daunger by forcerye  
The ladies sente after to espye the cowe / but they herde 5  
neuer after tydings of her how well alleway they lo-  
yed in the natyuyte of these two fones / of these tweyne  
that oon of them was grete and right fayr by grete ex-  
cellence And that other was lityll and feble The grete  
chylde was the first that was born and was named 10  
hercules And that other had to name ypecleus / Hercu-  
les as some saye was the sonne of Iupiter and well re-  
semblid and was lyke vnto hym . And ypecleus was  
the sonne of Amphitryon / the tydings of this natyuyte  
anon ran all aboute / and all they that herde speke ther of 15  
made Ioye and were glad therof / referuyd Iuno / .For  
she had neuer Ioye in her herte after that she herde in the  
temple that Alcumena had made and brought forth a  
sone / she departid than fro the temple as sayd is in  
forme of a cowe / dispityng in her herte the goddesse diane 20  
And was so troubyld that she had neyther witte ne  
vnderstondyng And thus sorowynge whan she was a  
lytill withdrawen fro the temple she toke agayn her  
owne forme of a woman . And wente vpon the moun-  
tayne of Olympus / ther she waxe pensif And began to 25  
thinke her aduenture after she smote her self on þ<sup>e</sup> breste  
with her fyfte and sayd / what a vaylleth me to be born  
of the ryall blood of saturne / what auaylleth me my  
patrymonye of the world of golde / what auaylleth me  
the dyademe of crete / ne what auayllen me the sciences 30  
of the worlde that I haue lerned by grete studie & laboure



whan the goddeffes ben agaynst and contrarye vnto me  
 in alle thing . The kynge my husbonde rekketh not / ner  
 setteth nought by me / no more in myn olde dayes than he  
 dyde in my yougthe He hath every day a newe lady / O  
 5 what destinye / fortune wilte thou neuer torne thy whele  
 Shall I alleway suffre my tribulacions & this payne .  
 Certes whan thou fauourist me not And that I beholde  
 that of all my desires . Ther is not oon that may attayne  
 to effeete / Alle shame and vergoyne redowblith in me .  
 10 And that I am so put in despair / That myn Infortune  
 muste nedes be cause of shorting and lassing the naturell  
 cours of my dayes / with these wordes she behelde the  
 erthe & not the heuen / And thoughte a while And after  
 that sayde And am I not well Infortunat and born in  
 15 an euyl hour My crafte and sorte auaylleth not ayenst  
 myn enemye Alcumena I haue faylled anenst her / but cer-  
 tes I shall proue my self agaynst her sone / to thende that  
 his moder may be my felawe and holde me companye to  
 make sorowe . For I shall do flee her sone . And by this  
 20 mene for that she is a woman and moder I shall gyue  
 her cause of Anger Anoye / and displayfance .

A Curfid olde vyrago conspyryng than agaynst  
 the poure Innocent Imagyned that she sholde  
 take two serpentes charmed and coniured in  
 25 the deth of the sone of her enemye / and that she wold  
 som nyght put in to her chambre to the ende that they  
 shold estrangle hym / with this conclusion . she departyd  
 fro the mountayn And retorned in to crete There beyng  
 she so laboured by her scyence . That she dyde do assam-  
 30 ble on a day secretly alle the serpentes of the contrey .

she was allone and well vnderstood and knewe this  
marchandyse / Whan she had assemblid them alle / she  
chasse two the most felonst and moſte enuenemyd / and  
put hem in her lappe and bare hem home / and after away-  
ted aday whan kynge Iupiter was goon in a ferre vo- 5  
yage / and than faynyng yet that she wolde goo on some  
pilgremage / she departid allone fro crete / And dyde ſo  
moche that in diſguysed figure she cam in to the caſtell  
of Arcyancye / The kyng Egeus of Athenes and the  
kyng Eriſteus of Athique were at that tyme comen in 10  
the caſtell to make good chere / hit was in the euenyng  
whan Iuno entryd / whan she was with in she made  
her ſelf Inuiſible by her craft / And ſoughte faſt aboute  
to finde the chambre where as was the ſone of alcume-  
na / she ſought ſo longe that she came to the dore of the 15  
chambre / where ther was a wyndowe open / ſhe wente  
to the wyndow and loked in / And in the beholdyng ſhe  
ſawe two noryces and two ſones / wherof ſhe was  
all abaffhid and began to thenke . Thus as ſhe was  
penſif . Alcumena cam for to ſee her ſones . And feſtyd 20  
hem in ſuche facion that the olde Iuno conceyuyd and  
knewe that bothe two were her ſones / wherof ſhe had  
grete Ioye / .For ſhe concluded in her fals and euyll co-  
rage that ſhe wolde do ſtrangle bothe two by the ſer-  
pentes &c . 25

**A**lcumena departyd fro the chambre by ſpace  
of tyme . And Iuno lete the nyghte wexe derke .  
The norices leyde the children in her cradels to  
ſlepe . and they ſlepte And after they leyde hem ſelf down  
and ſlepte leuyng a lampe brennyng in her chambre . 30  
Than whan they were a ſlepe at that tyme that Iuno

wold accompliffh her werke / ſhe opend her lappe and  
 made to lepe oute the two ſerpentes charmed & enchan-  
 ted in þ<sup>e</sup> deth of the .ij. chyl dren & put hem by an hole in to  
 the chambre / whan the venemo<sup>9</sup> beſtes were wythynne  
 5 they lyfte vp theyr heedes / and ſmellyng þ<sup>e</sup> two children  
 adreſſid them vnto them yeuyng the firſte aſſault vnto  
 ypecleus in ſuche wyſe that they ſtranglid hym & there  
 murtherd hym / After the deth of ypecleus theſe two ſer-  
 pentes cam vnto the cradell of hercules þ<sup>t</sup> was awaked  
 10 that ſame tyme / whan the ſerpentes were comen to the  
 cradell / they put hem / oon on that oon ſyde & that other on  
 that other ſyde / And mounted vpon the cradell but this  
 was to theyr euyll caſe / .For as ſone as they went vp  
 hercules perceyued them and was a ſerde be cauſe they  
 15 were fiers and dredefull He than eſuertued hym ſelf and  
 toke out his armes in ſuche myghte and puyſſance that  
 he brak the bondes in whiche he was wrapped and  
 ſwaded in and ſo dyde that he had his Armes and his  
 handes at large / And than whan the ſerpentes ran vpon  
 20 hym . He put hem a backe by naturell ſtrength and force  
 many tymes / And fought wyth hem wyth his fyſtes  
 ryght longe but fynably whan hercules ſawe that the  
 ſerpentes oppreſſyd hym more and more and ceſſid not  
 to aſſaylle hym / He toke in eche hand oon makyng a  
 25 grete Crye / And helde hem ſo faſte and fore / that he  
 ſtranglid bothe two &c .

**T**He noryces awoke at the Crye that hercules made  
 And aroos vp haſtely & wente to the cradels for to  
 ſee theyr chyl dren / And they fonde ypycleus ded .



and they fonde that hercules helde yet the two serpentes  
in his handes / fodeinly as they sawe that meruayll they  
cryed pyetoufly / with that Iuno the false wycche and  
forcereffe that alle had seen fledde her way fore trow-  
bled and terrible angry of that / that the serpentes had 5  
not wrought and achieued her purpoos as well in  
hercules as they had doon in ypicleus And Amphitriton  
with Alcumena awoke & cam in to the chambre where  
the noryces were whiche made forowfull and pietous  
cryes And entryng therin they sawe hercules at oon side 10  
yet holdyng the serpentes / And at that other side they  
behelde ypicleus alle swollen of venym and ded / Than  
the parfonde forowes cam and ran to the botom of her  
hertes / Alcumena began to crye and wepe by naturell  
pytye / Amphitriton was all afrayed / many damoyfel- 15  
les and other folk cam in to the chambre whiche alle  
were aserd to take away the serpentes fro fere of An-  
guyllhe . And ther was none so hardy that durste ap-  
proche to hercules for the serpentis that he held in his  
handes whiche were swollen of the venym Alle waye 20  
hercules made no heuy ner werse chiere / but lawhed to  
oon and other And was there in this state so longe that  
the medicynes and furgions camen . and by theyr science  
toke fro his handes these venemous bestes / whan Am-  
phitriton sawe hercules deliuaryd fro the serpentis / He 25  
recomforted alcumena that was nyghe ded for forowe  
And made do brenne and burye ypicleus Alle they that  
were there had passing grete meruaille of the puiffance  
and strengthe of hercules that was so yong a chylde .  
And that he had foughten ayenst the serpentes / and by 30  
exceffiue strengthe and myght had strangled them .

He nyght passed in the facion and manyer that  
I haue reherced / on the morn by tyme amphitri-  
on wold shewe and manyfeste this meruayllous  
and glorious victorie / he dide do take hercules and made  
5 hym to be born to Atthenes in to the temple of the god  
Mars with the two serpentes / and he in persone wente  
accompanied of kynge Eristeus / The false olde wicche  
Iuno folowid a ferre after in a dissimyled figure & state .  
Whan Amphitri-  
on was comen in to the temple he sente  
10 for kynge Egeus And asssemblyd the peple And after  
he toke hercules presentyng hym vnto the god Mars .  
Thankyng hym of the victorie that he had sente to hercu-  
les agaynst the serpentes . After this he lifte hym vp and  
shewed hercules vnto the peple recountyng and tel-  
15 ling to hem his meruayllous aduenture . And than thus  
whan hercules was shewyd and put in the Comyn  
regard and sight of the peple / And that euery man  
gaf hym lawde and preysyng / The false old Iuno be-  
yng in the prees wyth other / After that she had longe  
20 seen the noble chylde / That in all his membres he resem-  
blyd and was lyke to kynge Iupiter for to putte am-  
phitri-  
on in Ialousye of his wyf And for to make hym  
to haue hercules in suspecion / she sayde vnto them that  
were aboute her / Certes Amphitri-  
on is a veray fooll  
25 whan he weneth and thynketh that hercules be his sone  
Beholde the membres of kynge Iupiter / And the mem-  
bres of this childe / ye shall fynde no difference / This  
child and Iupiter ben bothe of oon semblance / And  
haue lyke figures & shappe / what that ony man saith  
30 This childe is the sone of Iupiter and of non other .  
whan this olde Iuno had sownen this cursid wordes .



she withdrewe her aparte oute of the prees and toke an  
 other figure / to thende that she sholde not be knowen.  
 And than these wordes were sowne a brood and tolde  
 forth of them that herde hem in suche wyse / that a grete  
 murmure souted and aroos vpon Amphitryon / And <sup>5</sup>  
 hit was reported to hym / that men sayde that hercules  
 was sonne of kynge Iupiter for trouthe and eche man  
 sayd so by aduertisement of the olde Iuno / Whan Am-  
 phitryon herde these newe tidings / he began to beholde the  
 childe . And in the beholding hym thoughte veryly that <sup>10</sup>  
 this childe had hooly the veray semblance and liknes of  
 kynge Iupiter . And than began to entre in to his herte a  
 right grete dolence and sorowe and thus after entryd  
 in to Ialousye . Alleway he helde manyere and made as  
 good countenance as he myghte and cowde / .For to <sup>15</sup>  
 eschewe the sklaundre . And anon after that the peple  
 were withdrawen he callyd the kynge Eristeus and  
 prayd hym that he wold do norysshe hercules / sayng  
 that neuer after he wolde see hym And that he beleuyd  
 fermly that he was the sonne of Iupiter Eristeus confor- <sup>20</sup>  
 ted Amphitryon the beste wyse he coude / wenyng to him  
 to haue put this Ialousye oute of his mynde / but he coude  
 not / what shall I make longe reherfaylle Eristeus em-  
 prised to kepe and norysshe hercules / and made hym to  
 be born in to his hous Amphitryon retorned vnto Arcian- <sup>25</sup>  
 cye where he fonde Alcumena fore discomforted for  
 these tydings which she had receyuyd / And moche  
 excused her ayenst Amphitryon / and the false olde quene  
 Iuno wente vnto crete / of whom I shall tarye and shal  
 come to speke of the first aduentures of hercules . <sup>30</sup>



¶ How hercules began to Olympades and how he  
waxe ameraus of Megea the doughter of the kyng  
of Thebes And how he shewid his strength in alle ma-  
ner of games And apertyses.

5 **T**Hese tydynges of this firste Auenture of hercu-  
les was anon spredde by alle the prouynces of  
grece / Some sayden he was a bastard and the  
sone of Iupiter / And so recounted plaute in his firste  
Comodye / And other susteyne that he was the verray  
10 sone of amphitrion And so recoūteth bocace in his booke  
of the genealogye of goddes / how well / whos sone  
that euer he was / Eristeus had him in kepyng And dide  
hym to be nourishid hardly and not tenderly with oute  
the cyte of Attycque / For the kynges and the Citezeins  
15 and dwellars in townes / In this tyme made her children  
for to be nourishid oute of good townes / And made  
hem for to lye vpon the bare erthe all nakyd for to be  
more stronge with oute entryng in to Cytees vnto the  
tyme that they had puyssance & strength to haunte armes  
20 Ligurgis had ordeyned this lawe and many other that  
solowe .First he ordeyned that the peple shold obeye to  
theyr prince And that the prince shold be ferme in Iustice  
and lyue sobrely And that marchaūtes shold doo theyr  
marchandyse yeuyng oon ware for an other with oute  
25 ony monoye / And that eche man shold auenge hym  
openly / And that a yong man shold haue in a yer but  
oon gowne / and that oon man shold not be more galant  
ner queynte than an other / and þ<sup>t</sup> no man sholde renewe  
wronge passid And that men of armes shold haue no  
30 wyues to thende that they myght be more sharpe & fiers  
in the warre And for to contente her fragylite humanyn .

he ordeyned that nyghe the oftes sholde be certayn wo-  
 men comune in places called fornyces / wherof cometh  
 fornicacion These were the lawes that the grekes vsed  
 in the tyme of the begynnyng and vp comyng of hercules  
 .For than to come agayn to my purpoos / hercules was 5  
 norysshid in an hous that stood in the playn feldes / and  
 was often tymes put oute in to the rayn and wynde .  
 And laye the moſte parte of that tyme vpon the erthe  
 wyth<sup>\*</sup>oute ony other bedde / he laye often ſo than vpon  
 heye or dreyd ſtrawe In this nouryſſhing he waxe and 10  
 grewe in alle beawte . ſtrengthe . and prudence / he was  
 humble . courtoys and gentill Alle good manyeres be-  
 gan to growe and ſhyne in hym / he was ſober in etyng  
 and in drynkyng / he ſlepte gladly on the feldes / he ſhotte  
 and drewe the bowe dayly / Whan the kynge Egeus of 15  
 Athenes had herd ſpoken of him he made to be noryſſhid  
 wyth hym his ſonne that was named theſeus / Hercu-  
 les and Theſeus were bothe of oon Age And louyd  
 right well to gyder Theſeus was ſtrong and myghty  
 and a fayr child and had witte ynowh / But hercules 20  
 paſſyd And ſhone as ferre aboue hym as the ſonne ſhy-  
 neth aboue the ſterres whan he was ſeuen yer old he ex-  
 cerſiced wraſteling and ouerthrewe And caſte the gret-  
 teſt and the ſtrengtheſt that cam to hym . Not oon and oon  
 at ones / but . v . or . vi . or as many as he myght ſette on 25  
 hiſhandes And dyde ſo grete feetes of ſtrengthe / that out  
 of thebes of Athenes and of Atticque dayly cam men /  
 women and children for to ſee hym The more and elder  
 he grewe / the more enforced hiſ ſtrenghte / whan he was  
 x . yerolde ther mighte no man ſtande neabide in hiſhande 30  
 At .xiii . yer of hiſ Age / he began to doo and ſue the Armes



And of his propre mocion he thought that he wold goo  
 vpon the mount Olympus / And there he wold abyde  
 and answer alle maner men theder comyng by the space  
 of . xv . dayes And to receyue them / In Armes or in wraf-  
 5 telyng or at any proof or assaye of strengthe . And for  
 to come to the effect of his enterpryse . He awayted a  
 day whan Eristeus cam for to see hym / And sayd to  
 hym / Syre ye haue nourysshid me vnto this tyme lyke  
 as I were your owne sone / yf fortune were to me as  
 10 contrarye as nature I knowleche that I shold be the  
 most Infortunat childe that euer was born / Some  
 saye that I am sonne to Iupiter / And other saye of Am-  
 phitrion how be hit I haue no fader but yow only / That  
 do me to be nourysshid with your substance / wherfore  
 15 I drawe me vnto yow as to my fader / And aduertysse  
 yow how that I am purposid for to be on the mounte  
 of Olympus in as hasty tyme as I goodly may / And  
 ther I shall abide alle them that theder shall come . xv .  
 dayes duryng full / .For to furnyssh them at the spere .  
 20 At swerde / at wraftlyng / and at rennyng / alleway  
 forseen that hit be by your lycence and leue . And that  
 hit plese yow of your courtoysye to gyue to hym that  
 shall do beste som prys / to thende for to meue the hertes  
 of noble men vnto vaylliance that they myghte Attayne  
 25 to worshippe / Eristeus answerd and sayde hercules  
 fayr sone ye can requyre me of no thyng that is ho-  
 nest and worshipfull but I shall be therto agreable  
 ye be yong / how well ye be strong and puyssant .  
 And I wote well ther is no man that may endure  
 30 agaynst yow . Syn hit is so that ye haue the will .  
 I am right well contente that ye shewe the proof .



And the strength of your youghth / and for to conduyte  
and brynge this enterprife vnto your worshippe / I shall  
araye yow as richely as yf ye were my propre sonne.  
My fader Anwerd hercules I thanke yow of this  
grace and kyndenes / sin hit is so your playfir / hit beho- 5  
ueth yow to chese a man of grete vnderstandyng and of  
Auctorite that shall goo vnto alle the royames of these  
Marches for to shewe vnto the kynges prynces and  
gentill men the will and enterprife that I haue taken .  
.Fayr sone saide eristeus ye saye trowth / ye shall make 10  
your lres conteynyng your entencion And sende them to  
me / And than whan I haue receyuyd them I shall do so  
good diligence That ye of reson shall be content .

**A**.Fter these deuyses and many other the kyng  
Eristeus went home & hercules toke enke and 15  
parchemyn / and sette hym to wryte the lettres  
of the forme of his paas / whiche he wolde make And  
conteyned in this wyse Greeting be to alle kynges . prin-  
ces . knyghtes . gentill men . ladyes and damoyfelles / fro  
the esquier vnknownen and well fortunèd / we late 20  
yow haue knowleche that the first day of the moneth  
of may next folowing / the esquier vnknownen shall be  
on the mounthe of olimpus for to dispose hym in habille-  
mens conuenient vnto Armes at the playfir of p<sup>r</sup> goddess  
and fortune / and for to resseyue alle them that ben of no- 25  
ble hous and name / that will and shall come theder by  
the maner that foloweth / In the begynnyng the firste  
thre dayes he shall holde a paas of wrastring / And he  
that shall do beste by the Iugement of the Iuges therto  
comised shall wyne an elephant of fin golde / the fourth 30  
day he shall renne a forlong or a stade ayenst all them

that wole renne / And he that best renneth shall wyne  
 a courseur leuyng / At the fyfte and sixthe dayes he  
 shall shote wyth the hand bowe / .First at the moste  
 strayt and nyghe . And after at the moste ferre / And he  
 5 that shoteth most strayt and nyghe shall wyne a  
 gloue of golde / And he that is best at ferre shall haue a  
 bowe and a sheef of Arowes / At the seuenth day he  
 shall caste the stone ayenst alle men . And he that best  
 doth ther at . shall haue a ryche dyamont . At the eyghte  
 10 day and other folowyng vnto the fyfteenth . He shall  
 do Armes . And yf ony will proue hym self oon alone  
 ayenst hym he shall be receyuyd forseen that duryng the  
 first fixe dayes he shall come and presente hym vnto the  
 Iuges And he that so doth best shall haue a riche swerde  
 15 And yf hit happe that they that shall come to this feste  
 wyll torne to gyder in maner of a batayll in Ioustyng  
 wyth courtoys rochettis and fyghtyng wyth swerdes  
 Rabatues / The Iuges shall ordeyne Capitaynes suche  
 as them shall seme conuenient / And who that best  
 20 doth in this exerfite shall wyne a chapelet of lawrer  
 Alle these thynges to fore wreton the sayd esquier  
 vnknown promytteth to Accomplish And prayeth  
 vnto all noble men ladies and damoyfelles that they  
 wylle vouchesauf to come and see thassembly of no-  
 25 bleffe whiche shall be parformed by the playfir of  
 the Immortall goddes / Whiche wyl gyue to the re-  
 ceyuours of thys mandement multepliance of honour  
 and encrefyng of good fortune &c .

30 **W**Han hercules had wreton this mandement & grof-  
 syd hit vp he sente hit to Eristeus whiche red hit  
 250 [leaf 124 verso]



And hym femed that the Inuencion of the auctour and  
 makar was good and right digne to be put in memorie  
 And callid on of his knyghtes and gaf hym the charge  
 and office to go publiſſhe this mandement in the courtes  
 of alle the kynges of grece / The knyght enprised with 5  
 right good herte to do the ſayd office And this was the  
 firſt officer of Armes that euer was / he wente to Athe-  
 nes. Thebes. Arges. Lacedomone. Archade. Achaye. pere-  
 ſye. Magnefie. Crete. Epheſe. Pepos. Triopolye & The-  
 ſaylle / And alle aboute he publiſſhid the mandement 10  
 with oute declaring who he was that ſhold kepe the  
 paas / They that herde ſpeke of the ſquier vnknownen  
 and vnderſtode his hye enterpriſe Iugyd hym that this  
 cam of a noble corage / And that he myght not fayle to  
 gete honour and worſhippe / The knyghte for to fur- 15  
 nyſſh this viage had .iiii. monethes terme to acompliſſh  
 hit / Duryng this tyme hercules diſpoſed hym for to fur-  
 nyſſh his paas / And ſo dide the kynges and noble men  
 for to come theder / What ſhall I make longe proceſſe.  
 whan the euen to fore the firſt day of the paas was co- 20  
 men / The kynge Eriſteus brought hercules vpon the  
 mount of olimpus / And fro alle parties cam theder ſo  
 many of noble men / ladyes of damoyſelles that the nom-  
 bre myght not be extemed / the mounte was full on alle  
 ſides / In this nyght ther was grete bruyt and noyſe of 25  
 oon and other for to make theyr tentes and loggys of  
 howes and leues and theyr tabernacles And hit ought  
 not to be forgotten whan the euen was comen / the knight  
 that had publiſſhid the mandement Aſſemblid in a co-  
 myn tente alle the kynges that were comen theder And 30  
 requyred them in the name & on the behalue of the ſquier



vnknownen / That they wold chese amonge them / suche  
as shold be Iuges and gyue the prys / whan the kynges  
that were there had herd and vnderstond the requeste  
of the noble esquier / They thankyd hym / And they  
5 Chesse thre kynges for to be theyr Iuges / That is to  
wete the kynge of Thebes callyd Creon The kynge of  
Arges named Gorgophon . And the kynge of Myron-  
done named Eson whiche was fader to Iason . They  
were wyse and rype / They enterprysed the office  
10 wyth a good herte . And that nyght passid ouer wyth  
grete Ioye / .For they assemblid in a tente / whiche was  
made for to daunse / And the kynges wyth the knygh-  
tes yong and old wente theder And thus began the feste  
whiche endured to mydnyght in daunses and in songes

15 **T**He kynge Iupiter and Amphitryon were not at  
this assemble by the counseyll of kynge Eristeus  
Whiche lete hem haue knowleche secretly . That  
hercules was he that shold hold and kepe the paas / for  
to eschewe alle wordes & langage that myght foudre  
20 or ryse vpon the cause of the natyuyte of hercules / .For  
amphitryon on that on side beleuyd not þ<sup>t</sup> he was his sone  
And Iupiter on that other side sayde that he apperteyneth  
not to hym / he sente hem worde þ<sup>t</sup> they myght do no better  
Than not for to come to this solempnyte / whiche was  
25 moſte especiall thyng & the moſt newe þ<sup>t</sup> euer was spo-  
ken of at that tyme The first day of maye at þ<sup>e</sup> oure what  
tyme the sonne caste his hete vpon the erthe / hercules dide  
do fowne a trompe for to make the ladyes to go vp in to  
the scaffoldes & places And anone after / they beyng mou-  
30 tyd & fette Hercules lepe out of his tente in habillemens  
to wrastle And cam in to the myddis of the place or felde

Makyng reuerence vnto the Iuges . kynges and to the  
ladyes / he was than . xiiii . yer old full accomplifhid .  
Anone as he had don the reuerence The knyght Officier  
of Armes Made a crye and sayd / hye and excellent  
Iuges we late yow haue knowleche with alle kynges . 5  
knyghtes . and gentill men of Armes / Ladyes and da-  
moyfelles That here is þ<sup>e</sup> esquier vnknownen / comparant  
in his perfone vpon the mount of olimpus And presen-  
tith him self for to forniffhe þ<sup>e</sup> contenu of his mandemēt  
by ordre and after the manere that the chapitres make 10  
mencion / wherfore yf ther be ony man that will proue  
and affaye hym at wrafling Late hym come & he shall  
he receyuyd &c .

**T**Heseus of Atthenes at the ende of this crye / and  
at the comandement of the kynge Egeus his fa- 15  
der entrid than in to the feld / he was a passing  
fayr childe and a gente At his comyng he falewed her-  
cules And sayd to hym Maister of alle habilites corpo-  
rall / I am come hether no thing of prefumpcion but for to  
lerne / wherof I haue nede / and therfore I recomande me 20  
vnto your grace / My broder theseus Answerd hercu-  
les I may more lerne of yow / than ye of me / wherfore  
late vs putte vs in payne to wyne the prys / hit muste be  
begonnen at on ende These wordes accomplifhid the two  
noble esquyers approchid & feafid eche other / Theseus 25  
employed his puyffance / And hercules suffrid hym to  
do as moche as he wold or cowde / with oute shewyng  
and puttyng oute his vertu and myght agayn to hym .  
And so they shoke and lugged eche other / but finably  
hercules caste theseus / the moſte ſoftly and fauourably 30  
that he cowde / wherof the lawghter was grete among



the ladyes and damoyfelles / Theseus than departid fro  
the place . And wente amonge the ladyes and damoy-  
fellys / Praying them that they wold take hit in gree.  
That he had don / Than cam vnto the paas many yong ef-  
5 quyers of whom I knowe not the names / And they la-  
boured and traueyllyd largely for to gete honour and  
worshyp . But theyr laboure prouffityd lytyll vnto  
them . as to the regard of the prys / .For hercules caste  
and put to the erthe alle them that cam . And the wraist-  
10 lyng duryd foure owres contynually / At the laste at the  
requeste of the ladyes the Iuges made the wraistlyng to  
cesse for that day / Be cause that they semed that hercu-  
les was yong / And that he had achyeuyd a grete  
werke &c .

15 **W**Han hercules had vnderstand that the Iuges  
had made cesse the wraistlyng he was ryght  
forowfull .For in his wraistlyng he had a  
singuler playfir / The Iuges wyth Eristeus cam to hym  
And made hym do on his Clothes and Araye hym . Af-  
20 ter they brought hym in the comyn halle where as the la-  
dyes were daunfying and syngyng Ioyously / And sayd  
to hym that he mustedaunseand syng lyke as other dide  
Hercules excused hym fore / His excuse myght not  
auaylle / He was sette on the daunce in the hande of a  
25 right fayr damoyfell Named megere of yong eage / but  
she was right well adressed of witte and vnderstan-  
dyng she was doughter of kynge Creon / whan hercules  
sawe hym in the hand of oon so noble a damoyfelle . He  
was fore abasshid and shamed / The damoyfell on  
30 that other syde was also shamfaste . . For as she had  
seen hercules wraistle . she had sette alle her loue on hym .



And they wiste not / none of hem bothe what to saye.  
how be it in stede of wordes / they vsid preuy and couert  
regards hercules caught a singuler plaisir to beholde and  
see the damoyfelle / And the more nere the damoyfelle  
was to hercules þ<sup>e</sup> more her herte she sette on hym what 5  
shall I saye / loue in this nyght submysid and constray-  
ned them to loue eche other with oute spekyng / theyr be-  
awtes was cause therof / men shold not haue founden in  
all grece two so fayre children ne better accomplisshid  
they were ynowhe beholden and seen / And in especiall 10  
hercules for his prowesse And euery man meruayllyd  
of hym and of his conduyte .

**B**I space of tyme than / hercules was broughte fro the  
feste in to his tente / his tente ne the tentes of the kin-  
ges & of the ladies were not maad but of brawnches 15  
leeues and of herbes giuyng good odour and fauour / hit  
was not knowen to make tentes of cloth ne of silke .  
Hercules passid this nyght more entendyng to thinke  
on the beawte of megere than for to slepe The day folo-  
wyng at oure competente he cam vnto the paas And 20  
there were many yong men strong and deliuer And the  
strengeste of alle grece / But hercules with oon Arme  
threwe and caste hem / And that day and the day folo-  
wyng he caste and putte to the erthe moo than thre hon-  
derd / And ther cowde not so many come to hym but he 25  
caste hem down and put hem vnder / with oute ony chauf-  
fing hymself ne greuyng / At that tyme he gate a right  
grete glorie & honour there . Megere oftentimes behelde  
hym . And in like wyse dyde the ladies and damoyfel-  
les And many ther were that sette theyr loue in hym / and 30  
thus he passid the paas of þ<sup>e</sup> wrastring to his worship

alle thre dayes At the fourth day he assemblid alle them  
that were come theder for to renne / And he made them  
that were moſte feble to ride vpon the beſt courſeurs that  
were in grece / And after he ſhewde hem the forlonge or  
5 ſtadye / And made hem to meue and renne And he ran af-  
ter the horſe and men But he paſſid alle them that ranne  
And with oute takyng ones his breth he ran the for-  
longe / And cam therto to fore alle the ryders & rennars .  
wherof he was gretely preysed and had a grete lawde .  
10 and ſome men ſaye that he ran alſo ſwyftely as an herte  
Of this cours that hercules made alle the world won-  
dred / And helde hit for a meruayllous thyng / And  
wrote hit in her bookes Amonge other thynges worthy  
to be put in memorye .

15 **A**T the fyfthe and fyxthe dayes folowyng / hercu-  
les toke his bowe and his arowes And wente  
in to the place that was ordeyned for to ſhote in  
with the bowe The ladyes and the damoyſelles were  
there / Hercules and many other ſhotte at moſt ſtrayt  
20 and next the marke / but ſhotte by ſhotte as to þ<sup>e</sup> regarde  
of the nygheſt / he ſhotte allway in a lytill rynge of golde  
And as for ſhotyng a ferre / he paſſid the fertheſt on the  
felde . xxiiii . ſtredes / his bowe was ſo grete that hit was  
the charge & burthen of a man / No man cowde bende hit  
25 but hym ſelf Hit was a playſir to ſee hym / he gate grete  
loos and bruyt the two dayes And yet gate he more the  
daye folowyng / whiche was the ſeuenth day of þ<sup>e</sup> paas  
. For whan hit cam to the caſtyng of the ſtoon a ferre / oon  
afre another Than he caſte hit in employeng his ſtrength  
30 in ſuche wiſe þ<sup>t</sup> he paſſid . vi . paas further than ony man  
that at that tyme employed hym in þ<sup>t</sup> excerſite Than they

that were comen to this feste cryed with a hyghe voys.  
the squyer vnknownen is neyther the sonne of amphitri-  
on the sonne of Iupiter / but he is the sonne of god of na-  
ture whiche hath garnysshid hym with double force &  
redowblid an honderd fold / In his Innocencye he vain- 5  
quysshid the serpentis And in his yougthe he surmoun-  
teth in witte . force and vailliance alle the world / Blef-  
sid be the wombe that conceyuyd hym and bare hym for  
to glorifie Grece / .For certes the tyme shall come ones  
that he shall be the glorye of the grekes and theyr trium- 10  
phe And well shall helpe them yf they haue nede .

**S**Vche were the wordes of the kynges of the la-  
dyes and of the damoysselles of the nobles and  
of the vayllyans Eche man preyfed hym in his  
guyse / The fayr megera herde gladly the loos and prey- 15  
sing that men gaf hym / but yet she sawe him more gladly  
do his feetes and vaylliances And hit is no meruayll  
though she sawe hym gladly & gaf her to beholde hym  
.For in hercules was / that was not in other / his beawte  
surmounteth the mesure to the porcion & quantite of his 20  
force and strengthe / what shall I saye after that eche  
man that cast wolde the stoon had doon / he wente in to  
the comyn tente / where many an Amerous man was  
with his lady / and there he began to putte hym self forth  
a litill / And deuyse with oon and other . And well be- 25  
cam hym / .For he had a right hyhe and a cler vnderstan-  
dyng Megeris and hercules in this euenyng often tymes  
behelde eche other secretly / hererregardes mette and smote  
eche other / other while And than of force they chaun-  
ged colour / In this chaungyng of colour / there was not 30  
a vayne but he was meuyd And by this meuyng grewe



amorous desires in haboudance of pfonde sighes / whiche  
were nouriffhid in the abifmes & botoms of their hertes .

**A** Monge all other thynges for to fpede the ma-  
tere The kynges and the auneyent knyghtes af-  
5 **f**emblid hem in counceyll .For as moche as they  
had many yong knyghtes that were comen and had abi-  
den fro the begynnyng of the feſte for to do armes ayenſt  
hercules / The puyffance and ſtrength of hercules was  
well conſiderid in this counceyll / And for as moche as  
10 hit was verray ſemblable þ<sup>t</sup> no man myght dure ayenſt  
hym / Hit was ordeyned that he ſhold do no Armes  
particuler And that the dayes that were yet to comen of  
the contenu of the feſte fro two dayes to two dayes they  
ſholde tornoye in maner of a bataylle / wherof ſhold be  
15 capitaynes two kynges that were there That is to wete  
tandarus that was fader of menelaus huſbond of the  
fayr helayne / And yxion that was kyng of theſaylle .  
Theſe two kynges empyfed with a good will this  
charge And hit was ordeyned that hercules ſhold late  
20 them tornoye vnto the tyme that the oon partye were at  
werſe And that than he myghte helpe that partye ſo ſuf-  
fryng / vnto the tyme that he had brought hem to theyr  
aboue This ordenance was ſhewid in the tente by thoſ-  
ficyer of armes / What ſhall I make longe counte / They  
25 that were afore named for to fighte And do armes man  
for man ayenſt hercules were right loyous of this newe  
ordenance / The feſte than ceſſed And oon and other  
wythdrewe hem vnto on the morn till they cam to the  
feldes for to begynne the firſt tornoye / And there  
30 were well fyue honderd ſquyers / And thre honderd  
knyghtes alle Armed as for to go in to bataylle .

Referuyd that her fwerdes were rabatues & not sharp  
and that her speres had rochettes of tre or of woode The  
kynge tandarus And the kyng yxion were richely ara-  
yed and well horsed And Armed well with quyer  
boullye / and ran in the moſte hardeſt place of this aſſam- 5  
blee / ther were no more but an honderd knyghtes a hors  
back .For the hors at þ<sup>i</sup> tyme were but litill knowne ner  
vſed Alle they on hors back and they a foote were par-  
tyd in two companyes like in nombre / that oon of theſe  
companyes was deliuerid to tandarus / And that other 10  
to yxion / And whan tandarus and yxion had all that  
they oughte to haue / they that had horſes at the fowne of  
the trompe were redy for to luſte / and ran oon ayenſt an  
other ſo couragiouſly that they trowblid all the Ayer  
with duſte and pouldre that roos by theyr hors feet / At 15  
the recountre eche mette with other often tymes / And  
ther were ſome ouerthrowen vnder the hors And ſom re-  
uerſid and torned vp ſo down at coopyng / and ſome ther  
were that brakke theyr ſperis knyghtly and cheuaul-  
rouſly .For ther was plente of vaylliant knyghtes / but 20  
at the point whan þ<sup>e</sup> knyghtes on hors back had don theyr  
feet And that they ſette her hande on her ſwerdes the pie-  
tons or footemen began to renewe the torneoye with ſo  
grete bruyt and noyſe that alle the mounte redounded / on  
that oon ſide and that other ther were many ſperes bro- 25  
ken and ſheldes vniointed / They ſoynd with her ſperes  
eygrely / theyr ſtrokes and ſoynes were grete eche man  
ſhewid the quantite of his force / hit was Ioyous to ſee .  
the ſperes ſlewe in the Ayer by pyeces / ther were grete  
cryes / None ſparyd other / Auncient ne yonge . The aun- 30  
cient bete and faughte with the yong / The yonge men by



grete corage lerned and siewed the olde men Whan theyr  
speres were broken they toke theyr swerdes Wherof be-  
gan a newe stowr Ioyous & playfant in forgyng theyr  
helmes and hewyng on the sheldes so coragiously And  
5 in especyall they of the partye of yxion / that they of the  
partye of kynge tandarus were constrayned to crye her-  
cules vnto the rescows &c .

10 **W**Han hercules herdethattheycryedafter hym/he  
was passing Ioyous / .For hit was noyous to  
hym to be ydle and to see other laboure He was  
nyhe by the tornoye / beholdyng them that dyde beste He  
had his swerde in his fyste / At the Crye that they that  
were put to the werse made He wente vnto theyr ayde  
and helpe / And began to tornoye on the fyde where  
15 were the grettest strokes gyuen / so plesantly that hit  
was Ioye to beholde . The kynge yxion cam agaynst hym  
for to susteyne his faytes and to holde to gyder his folk  
But certes to his byen venue hercules smote hym on the  
shelde in fuche wyse that all a stonyed he bare hym to  
20 the erthe and doun of his hors / Tho began ther a grete  
showte and laughter / As well on as other began to  
entende to the rescouffe of kynge yxion / Hercules put  
hym self in to the prees . And made ringes on alle fydes  
so grete that tandarus and his folk recouerd and entrid  
25 in to the batayll of theyr countreparty / At that tyme be-  
gan agayn the tornoye strong & sharpe They that ryght  
now fledde / toke herte . force and vertue to hem agayn by  
the weldoyng of hercules / and recouerd vigour & strength  
Hercules of all them that were there was take hede of / his  
30 strokes surmoüted al other with out mesure / he brought



agayn tandarus to his aboue with litill labour .Finabli  
he dyde so grete prowesse that day and in the dayes fo-  
lowyng that he was recomanded aboue alle the men of  
the world / what shall I make longe processe of the tor-  
noye and of the passe temps of this feste / ther were thre 5  
grete tornoyes and notable At eche tornoye as sone as  
hit happend that oon partye was put a back and to the  
werse / Hercules by his well doying recouerd hem & put  
hem vp aboue agayn / No man toke hede but to his glorye  
Euery man sayd well of hym at daunces at festes euery 10  
man louyd hym / eche man hym worshippid / ther was  
no tonge of noble ne of vilayn but that gaf hym lawde  
and preyfing / wherof the conclusion was fuche that all  
the prifes a bode with hym And also there were gyuen  
to hym many giftes of the kynges that were there / The 15  
dayes of this solempnyte drewe ouer the last nyght / the  
kynges and the ladyes and nobles assemblid in the co-  
myn tente / And of oon comyn accorde they wolde that  
fro yer to yer they and theyr eyres shold holde and re-  
newe the feste that hercules had begonne and stabliffhid 20  
.For they sayde that hit was the moste honorable passe  
temps that euer was made in grece / and named the feste  
Olimpade / by cause of the mounte olimpus . And they  
had hit so recomanded that fro thens forth / they noted  
theyr mandemens & theyr lettres perdurable of the yere 25  
of the first olimpade / In fuche wise as we saye the yere  
of thincarnacion These thinges ordeyned gyuen and pro-  
mysed / thofficyer of Armes of hercules thanked alle  
them that were comen to this Olimpade After that / eche  
toke leue of other and departid on the morn . And thus 30  
finyffhid and ended this feste &c .

**H**ow hercules saylled by the see in to esperye . And  
how he vaynquysshid þ<sup>e</sup> yle with the moutons or shepe  
And vaynquysshid philotes And slewe his felawe .

**A**T the departyng hercules passeth lightly the with-  
drawyng & departyng of alle hem that were there  
Referuyd the departyng of megere / he knewe not the  
maladye of loue vnto the tyme that he sawe her departe  
in to her contre / megera wente vnto thebes / and hercules  
drewe hym to athenes / right penyf & thēkyng moche on  
his lady And fore desiryng to see her wente in the compa-  
nye of Eriste<sup>s</sup> vnto athenes where they fested hem foure  
dayes longe At the fourth day tydynges cam That vnto  
the poort & hauene were comen strange folk by fortune .  
whiche were clothed in righte plesante robes & garmētes  
Whan the kynge Eristeus herde these tydynges / He  
sente anon for to secche these straungers to hym / and axid  
hem fro whens they were They answerd hym that they  
were of the occident & of the regyon of hesperye / where is  
the regyon of hesperye sayde Eristeus And what maner  
contre is hit. Verayly answerd oon of them I trowe  
that in all the world is no better contre . For ther is ha-  
boundance of alle thynges that is necessarie to mannes  
lyf And I can well telle to yow That in the places of  
our conuersacion . And where we haue our hauntyse .  
Ther ben many yles lyyng aboute the ferthest partyes  
of Mauree be yonde Ampolesye Where growe alle the  
beste thynges that men can thynke And ther is a kynge  
named philotes / fayr sone of a kynge named Athlas .  
Whiche ben of the generacion of grekes And it is not  
to be vnremembryd that the kynge phylotes accompa-  
nyed wyth the doughters of kynge Athlas fond late an



yle right playfant / as was his auenture This yle is alle  
playn withoute mountaygne or valeye / hit is in fuche  
wyse as is a gardyn alle grene . And ther ben ther in so  
many sheep and moutons that it is meruaylle / whiche  
ben kept & cheriffhid there also diligently as they were 5  
of fyn golde / Of these moutons that I speke of / we haue  
our robes & gownes maad we and they that may haue  
them muste bye them at grete pris of gold / we ete þ<sup>e</sup> flessh  
and clothe vs with the skynnys And knowe ye for cer-  
tayn that in to this yle is but oon entree / And he entreth 10  
not ther in that wold . For the kynge philotes and an  
other geant whiche ben wise and subtile and merua-  
yllously stronge alwey kepe thentre of the yle And all-  
wayne that oon waketh / while that other slepeth / Cer-  
tes said Eristeus by that / that I vnderstonde of yow the 15  
yle that ye speke of is of grete excellence / This philotes  
that ye make mencion of / what man is this kynge philo-  
tes The straunger answerd and saide that he is the most  
redoubted and drad kynge of the partyes occidentall .  
He is a geant that by his force and strength hath con- 20  
querd the yle with the sheep . And hath putte oute them  
that dwellid and were inhabited there afore / he is so  
stronge that it is but late a goo that he sayd yf he mighte  
finde a man more strong & puyssant than he is / he wolde  
neuer after bere Armes to fighte in batayll duryng the lif 25  
of that other &c .

**T**He kynge Egeus than gaf leue to the straungers  
to departe fro his presence and comaunded that  
no man shold gif hem empeffhement in her retor-  
nyng toward theyr contre . And they wente and depar- 30  
tyd . Eristeus abode with egeus . And eristeus cam to



hercules and theseus / And wyshed by a grete desir to  
haue of tho moutons sayyng to hem that he wold that  
hit coste hym as moche golde as a payr moutons weye  
and that he hadde a ram and an ewe for to engendre in  
5 his contre / In that tyme were no sheep in grece Whan her-  
cules had herde the desire of kynge Eristeus / sodaynly he  
sayd to hym Syre ye haue desired here to haue a payr of  
moutons appertenynng to the daughters of Athlas by the  
conquest and Armes of the strong geant philotes I pro-  
10 myse yow here for trouth vpon my gentileffe / That fro  
this day thre wekes / I shall departe by water or by  
lande for to fecche and gete them And that I shall neuer  
retorne in to grece vnto the tyme that I haue founden the  
yle and that I shall oppose my self ayenst the geants that  
15 kepeth hit / And shall assaye yf I can gete the yle vpon  
them lyke as philotes hath goten hit vpon other Whan the  
kynge Eristeus had vnderstonde the enterpryse that her-  
cules made / he was passing sory .For he louyd hercules  
as moche as he had ben his owen sone / he repyfid hym  
20 fro that hye enterpryse / wenyng to haue broken hit but  
hercules answerd so wisely and so rypely that eristeus  
was contente to suffre hym to goo vnto this auenture .  
And theseus wyth hym .

25 **T**He renomee of this vyage was spradde anon in  
alle the contre / Egeus and Eristeus made redy  
for theyr two sones a right good galeye and  
well garnysshyd hit of alle maner thynges The ga-  
leye & alle other habillemens were alle redy in good  
tyme At the ende of thre wekes They wente to the  
30 see And wyth them ryght many noble grekes And  
rowed so forth tyll they cam in to the hyghe see .

where they sayled and rowed many dayes with oute  
findyng of ony auenture to speke / .For at that tyme the  
fee was but lityll vfid neyther of theues ne yet of mar-  
chants / what shall I saye / theyr patron in proceffe of  
tyme brought hem in to esperye that afterward was na- 5  
med spayne And ther fought so longe the yle with the  
sheep / that at laste arriued there/at the paas /The geant  
that was comysid to kepe the entre and the warde of  
the yle slepte not at that tyme / whan þ<sup>e</sup> grekes descendid  
But yssued oute of his hows And cam alle Armed 10  
vnto the strayt passage / where myghte no man gon vp  
but oon at ones And he cryed to the grekes / fyres what  
seke yow her / Hercules answerd we seke the moutons  
that ben in this yle for to carye some of them in to grece .  
The geant Answerd haue ye money Inowe / yf ye haue 15  
so ye shall haue Inowe / how sayd hercules shulle we  
not haue them other wyfe / no sayde the geant Than sayd  
hercules / at the leste late vs haue them at the pris that ye  
haue gotten hem /how sayd the geant /the kynge phylotes  
hath conquerd with his swerd the yle and the moutons 20  
Hercules answerd myn entencion is in like wise to con-  
quere the yle vpon him /yf ye wole defende hit /haste yow  
ye muste haue the batayle ayenst me / or ellis late me the  
yle that I may do ther in my wille .

**A**None as the geant had vnderstande the conclu- 25  
sion of hercules /he made hym redy to defende the  
paas . And blewe a grete horne that was there  
hangyng on a tree . Atte sownyng of the horn the dought-  
ters of Athlas awakyd philotes . And tolde hym that  
some were there for to gete the paas / and that the geant 30  
had blownen the horn / Philotes with the wordes roofe



vp and armed hym and cam to the paas And fonde that  
hercules by force had putte a back his geant That refer-  
uyd philotes was the most subtyll man of armes of alle  
hisperye He was sore abasshid and began to sihe / But  
5 this notwithstandyng he had not longe sojourned there  
whan hercules smote the geant but on the right sholdre  
by fuche strength and vertu that the shelde of the geant  
was falle fro hym and his armes alle to frussid And  
his glayue entryd so ferre in to his body vnto his herte  
10 that he smote hym down ded at his feet .

**W**Han philotes sawe his geant ded/He cam vnto  
hercules for to defende the paas sayng that he  
wolde auenge his geant yf he myght/Hercules  
had grete Ioye whan he sawe philotes come to the paas  
15 And sayd to hym kynge thou art well come / I haue  
now Ioye in my herte syn I shall proue my self ayenst  
the / men saye/ther is no strook but of the maistre / nowe  
late vs see how we shall werke to gyder . well and  
happy be he / that well shall do and proue hym self .  
20 Philotes in the heeryng of these wordes cam vnto the  
paas & helde a grete bordone with whiche he smote fore  
vpon the shelde of hercules and made hym to disauale a  
paas / wherof philotes began to lawhe / And thoughte  
for to haue smeten yet hercules with that bordon/whiche  
25 was a shamed of that other strook / he kepte hym well  
and awayted so þ<sup>t</sup> in the smytyng he caughte hit & rached  
hit out of his fistes /and casted hit in to the see/than was  
philotes all abasshid of the force of hercules / whan he  
had losse his bordon he toke his swerde & cam for to fighte  
30 with hercules / philotes was at auantage / .For hercules  
was vnder him/they assaillid þ<sup>t</sup> oon þ<sup>t</sup> other right ardātly



and well they kepte hem bothe two / In this day they  
faught with oute cessyng also longe as the daye endu-  
red / The nyght cam oon that they muste reste / They laye  
there bothe two vpon the paas They slepte no thing / for  
hit was no tyme / bothe two kepte the wacche They en- 5  
dured hit well for they were accustomyd for to wake  
Thus wakyng philotes had many wordes vnto hercu-  
les and demaunded fro whens he was . And hercules  
told hym the trouthe After they spack of theyr bataylle  
And at the seching and pourchas of philotes They pro- 10  
mysid eche to other That yf ony of hem were vainquy-  
shid / he that were vainquyshid and ouercomen for to  
saue his lif / shold be holden to serue truly the vainqueur  
all his lif duryng &c .

**D**Vryng these deuyses and promyses . The daye 15  
sterre That the poetes calle aurora began to arise  
in his regne . The ayer was cleer and nette . The  
sterres shone At this oure hercules caste his eyen amonge  
the sterres . And seeyng there Aurora shyne aboue alle  
other / he began to remembre his lady megere Alas Ma- 20  
dame where be ye now / I wolde hit plesid the goddes  
that ye remembrid as well me as I remembre yow . In  
trouthe the light of this sterre eschauffeth the Amorous  
fyre / wherof I was late seafid by thadmynystacion of  
yowre beawte / ye be also ferre shynyng in beawte aboue 25  
the maydens of grece as this aurora shyneth aboue alle  
the other sterres / of whom the nombre is so grete that no  
man can telle . O noble megere the right clere sterre / your  
remembrance enlumyneth myn herte Lyke as this sterre  
enlumyneth the heuen . And me thinketh that by this re- 30  
membrance whan I come to the batayll I shall preuayll

the better / wherfore I promette yowe yf fortune helpe  
me lyke as I desire ye shall haue your parte of alle that  
I shall conquere &c .

5 **T**He nyght drewe ouer þ<sup>e</sup> day began at the poynt  
of the sonne ryfing hercules was alle esioyed  
of the fouenance and remembrance that he had  
had of his lady . And tooke his swerde and sayd to  
philotes / we haue sojourned longe ynowhe / Lo hit is  
day And the sonne ryfeth / hit is better that we excerfite  
10 Armes now Than whan the rayes of the sonne ben gre-  
ter . Late vs take this tyme er the grete hete come and  
late eche of vs do his power / Philotes that was alle  
redy was ryght Ioyous whan he herde hercules / .For  
hym thoughte that he sholde sone and in lityll space spede  
15 his mater . And sayd to hym . Hercules I am redy .  
And was syn yesterday to achyue thys batayll .  
Repe yow as well as ye can / ye haue slayn my geant  
the moste subtyll man that was in alle the Occydent .  
Wherof I haue grete displayfir . But at the leste syn  
20 his deth may not be recoured by deth of a man . I shall  
put me in payne and deuoyr / to haue a newe souldyour .  
And that shall be ye . or elles my swerde and fortune  
shall fayle me / Shall I so sayd hercules and yf your  
swerde and fortune fayle yow / What tydynges . By  
25 my gentylnes sayd philotes that befelle me neuer . And  
yf my maleheure and my fauenture renne vpon me / than  
muste I nedes by your seruauant by condicion / that I shall  
neuer after entre in to batayll at my empryse / Ne em-  
pryse of non other duryng your lyf / Ne for yow ne for  
30 other I shal neuer fighte / but yf hit be / my self defendauant



with oute other wordes the two champions approchid  
eche other and smote to gyder so fadly and fore that the  
place redounded of her strokes In a litill while they had  
detrenchid her sheldes by grete quarters / philotes mighte  
not fayle to smyte on hercules / but his strokes were no- 5  
thing so grete but that hercules myght bere hem well  
ynowh with oute greef or souffryng grete damage .

**T**Hus began the batayll agayn of þ<sup>e</sup> two geantes  
Hercules was hyhe as a geant / he was right  
Aspre in Armes / he dyde moche payne togete the 10  
paas / but yet he myght neuer attayne to smyte philotes a  
playn strook for as moche as philotes was aboue on þ<sup>e</sup>  
paas / whiche conteyneth well two cubites of heighte .  
Whan hercules sawe and knewe that philotes kepte his  
paas with oute abassing or aduenturyng to come down 15  
He thoughte subtylly that he wold fayne hym self  
wery And lityll and lityll after he began to smyte more  
sebly than he dyde afore / After that he reculed hym self  
and smote fro ferre as he had fayllid and ben wery / the  
grekes were a ferd and wende he moghte no more / and 20  
than philotes sprang down fro the paas wenyng to haue  
putte hym to vtterance / but than whan hercules sawe  
hym to fore hym And that oon was no more hyher than  
that other Hercules cam to his place agayn And gaf so  
grete a strook to philotes that he made hym recule and 25  
goo a back more than foure foot Philotes was than all  
abasshid / And repentyd hym that he descended fro the  
paas / but that was for nought for þ<sup>e</sup> repentyng myght  
not auaylle . Than he took corage and enhaunfed his  
swerd and smote hercules on the lifte arme so harde that 30  
he gaf hym a wounde that the blood sprang oute / whan



hercules sawe the Armes of philotes besprenct with his  
blood / he made none other countenance but that he wold  
sodaynly be auenged of the strook In gyuyng to philotes  
thre strokes wherof of the firste he brake his helme and  
5 smote hym on the heed / And of the seconde he gaf hym a  
grete wounde on the ryght sholder And wyth the thirde  
strook he made his swerd to flee out of his fyfthes / And  
than he caughte hym in his armes and after longe wraft-  
ling he caste hym to the erthe / In suche wise that philotes  
10 yelded hym seruauant vnto hercules And promysid hym  
to serue hym trewly alle the residue of his lyf And that  
he wolde bere his Armes After hym in alle place where  
he shold goo / Hercules receyuyd to mercy phylotes .  
And than callyd theseus and his selsauship They cam  
15 and were ryght glad and Ioyous of the victorie that  
he had don . Than hercules Philotes And alle the other  
wente in to the yle where they fonde the daughters of ath-  
las gretly disconfortid for the deth of the geant / and for  
as moche as hercules had also conquerid phylotes theyr  
20 wardayn / Hercules & phylotes confortid the daughters  
the beste wise they coude And there the grekes refreschid  
them þ<sup>e</sup> space of thre dayes / The fourth day he toke .xxx.  
rāmes & .xxx. ewes / and brought hem Into theyr shippe  
After that they wente to the see / withoute onyharne do-  
25 yng in the yle for the loue of þ<sup>e</sup> damoyfelles / they departid  
thens and wente to the see / Accompanyed of phylotes  
Whiche was conquerd by hercules as sayd is / and after  
loued well hercules & trwly seruyd hym euer after / but  
of theyr Iournees I shall tarye for this tyme / And shall  
30 speke of a monstre of the see þ<sup>i</sup> the goddess sente to troye  
for to deuoure the fayr exione daughter to kyng laomedon

**H**ow hercules fought at the poort of troye ayenst a  
monstre of the see for the doughter of kynge laomedon .

**I**N that tyme as bochace reherceth in his gene-  
logy of goddes in the thyrde chapitre of the sixte  
booke / Laomedon the kynge of Troye was besy 5  
to walle and mure his cyte with mures and towres to  
the ende to make hit more stronge / he was not well gar-  
nysshid of trefors ne of monoye for to accomplishe his  
desire / he wente vnto the temple of the god of the sonne &  
of the see That were passing riche And took all the mo- 10  
ney that he cowde finde / promettyng to paye hit agayn at  
a certayn day & tyme sette / by the moyen of this moneye  
he clodid and fortified the Cyte of Troye with mures &  
towrs / The warke was costlewe / how be hit in lityll  
tyme he achieuyd hit And hit was not longe after that 15  
the werke was finysshid but the day cam in whiche la-  
omedon shold paye and rendre vnto the temples of the  
goddes the money that he had taken and borrowed At  
whiche day . The prestes of the temples cam vnto lao-  
medon and demaunded hym yf he wolde rendre the obla- 20  
cions and offrynges that he had taken out of the temple  
Laomedon daigned not to speke to the prestes but sente  
hem worde shamefully that they shold retorne & kepe  
her temples wherfore he was afterward fore punysshid /  
For in the same nyght after that he wold not 25  
here the prestes The grete windes began to ryse & meue  
that on ayenst that other and caused the see to ryse in  
fuche wyse that hit entryd and solowid in to the toun  
so ferre that hit filde the stretes full of water & drowned  
a grete parte of the toun Aboue this in eyghte dayes fo- 30  
llowing the sonne shone so Ardantly and gaf so grete



hete that the peple durst not goo in the ayer by daye tyme  
And that dryed the superfluyte of the haboundance of  
the water of the see that was leste / Wherof roos a cor-  
rupte and a mortall vapour that Infectid alle the Cyte  
5 Wherof engendryd so grete a pestelence that the moste  
parte of the troians were smyten to deth by the grete In-  
fluence of the corrupt Ayer .

10 **B**I thys pestelence they of troye fyll in grete deso-  
lacion The cytezeyns men and women / yong and  
olde dyed wyth oute spekyng sodeynly / the fader  
coude not ner myght not helpe his childe in necessite / ner  
the childe the fader at that tyme regned in troyes neyther  
loue ne charyte . For eche man that myght saue hym self  
fled a way for fere of this mortalite / and gaf ouer and  
15 leste the cyte / And wente to dwelle in the feldes / And  
among all other the kynge laomedon seeyng þe destruction  
of his royame wente in to the yle of delphos vnto the tem-  
ple of the god Appollo / for to haue the counceyll of the  
god towchyng the helthe of his Cyte / Wyth laomedon  
20 wente the moste noble and the most puyssant men of  
Troye . Whan they were comen vnto the temple / They  
put hem in contemplacion and deuocion to fore the ydole.  
And the deuyll that was ther in answerd them & sayd .  
The money whiche was taken out of the temples / and  
25 not rendryd and payd agayn / Is cause of the maladie  
and vengeance of troye / And I doo alle the troians to  
wete that neuer shall troye be quyt of this maladye  
vnto the tyme that the sayd Cyte pourueye to Appese  
the goddes / In this wyse That is to wete that euery  
30 moneth they muste chese oon of the virgyns and may-  
dens whyche muste be sette on the fyde for to be



deuoured by a monstre that the goddes shall sende theder  
And the sayd virgyns shall be chosen by lotte or auen-  
ture . And in this wyse muste the cyte doo for tappefe the  
goddes perpetuelly / vnto the tyme that they finde oon  
man that by his armes and his myght shall ouercome 5  
the sayd monstre &c .

**A**.Fter these wordes and answere laomedon and  
the troians assemblid to counceyll vpon this  
matere And concluded that for the comyn wele  
and helthe of troye / They wolde putte her virgyns in þ<sup>t</sup> 10  
leopardye and auenture to the seruitude of the monstre  
with oute any excepcion or reseruyng / Than they retor-  
ned vnto troye / and toke theyr virgynes and caste lotte  
amonge hem And on her that the lotte fille / was taken  
and brought to the see side . And anone after was seen 15  
comen oute of the Abismes or swolowe of the see so grete  
a tempeste that the see aroos and was troublid The see  
brought this monstre And a right grete flood of water  
liste vp the monstre by tymes out of the see / he was as  
grete as a balayne or a hulke . And than he toke the vir- 20  
gyne and swalowed her in / And wente a way agayn  
in to the see And fro than forth the pestelence seced / thus  
was troyes deliueryd of theyr sekenes and maladye by  
the oblacions of her virgynes that were offerd vnto the  
monstre fro moneth to moneth / And thus as sayd is . 25  
her virgynes were deuourid / hit happend that in the ende  
of the moneth þ<sup>t</sup> the sorte or lotte fell on oon of the dought-  
ters of kynge laomedon named exiona / This doughter  
was yong and sayr and welbelouyd of alle the peple  
Whan this lotte was fallen on her / she was not oonly 30  
bewayled and sorowed of kynge laomedon her fader

and of his sone pryant and of her suster Antigone and  
 of her cofyns and alyes / But of alle the peple men wo-  
 men and children / Notwithstandyng theyr wepyngs  
 ner the good renomee of her cowde not saue her .For for  
 5 the comyn wele and helth of them alle / She was put in  
 thauenture of the monstre / The noble virgyne was redy  
 for tobeye. The kynge laomedon brought her vpon the see  
 side accompanied of nobles / ladyes / and damoyfelles  
 wyth grete sute of troians bourgoys and marchans / all  
 10 they made forowe for her and complayned and beway-  
 led her / what shall I saye / At the poynte that she was  
 thus brought theder / Hercules at aventure arrayued at  
 this poort of troye wyth his moutons / and he willyng  
 to refreshe hym there made to caste his Ankers oute/and  
 15 goyng oute and takyng land he behelde on that oon side  
 and sawe the troians wepyng and bewaylyng exiona  
 in castyng a brood her armes / and wryngyng theyr han-  
 des that he had pyte to see hit / And desiryng to knowe  
 what them ayled putte hym self in to the presse/& sawe  
 20 there where they bonde the fayr Exiona in the route  
 Attyred of ryall Aournementes alle discolourd and  
 full of teerys as she that abood no thyng but the deth  
 Hercules meuyd wyth compassion on the damoyfelle .  
 Adressid his langage vnto kynge laomedon for as mo-  
 25 che as hym semed that aboue alle them that were in the  
 place he was a man of Auctoryte And demaunded hym  
 wherfore þ<sup>t</sup> the damoyfell was there bouiden / laomedon  
 casted his eyen alle bewept on hym/And was alle abaf-  
 shed to see his gretenes and his beawte neuerthelesse he  
 30 answerd hym what art thou þ<sup>t</sup> arte so hardy to demande  
 me of myn Infortune/Whiche is to alle comyn in Troye

Syre said hercules I am a strounger / and I loue the wor-  
 ship and honour of ladyes . And ther ne is thing that I  
 might do for hem/ but I wold do hit vnto my power/ and  
 for as moche as I see this damoyfelle thus entretyd / In  
 the fauour of alle ladyes I haue axed of yow the cause 5  
 and I wille knowe hit or put my self in auenture for to  
 dye with her / And ther for I demande yet agayn what  
 trespaas or synne hath she doon/ that thise men thus binde  
 her My sone answerd laomedon I se well that ye be ig-  
 norant and knowe not the termes and the cause / wher- 10  
 fore this damoyfelle my doughter is here abandonned .  
 Ther is no man but he may well knowe hit . For she  
 shall dye for the salute and helthe of troye And I shall  
 telle yow how we be comen therto/ The goddes of the see  
 and of the sonne hath enmachyned and greuyd troye 15  
 with a right grete pestelence . That toke his begynnyng  
 of a furhabondance of the see/ wherof þ<sup>e</sup> stretes of troye  
 were full in euery place of water After this deluge and  
 flood the tyme was meruayllously hoot & outragiously  
 By the grete heete of the sonne this see was dried vp . 20  
 Of this dryenes or drought engendrid a vapour Infecte  
 And of this vapour ensued a pestelence . And for to re-  
 siste this pestelence I haue ben in the oracle of the god Ap-  
 pollo Where I haue had answer that for tappefe the god-  
 des and to sesse the pestelence/ The goddes of the sonne 25  
 and of þ<sup>e</sup> see wille that fro moneth to moneth be taken  
 in troye of the virgyns by forte or lotte for to be expofid  
 and offryd in this place vnto a monstre of the see / The  
 troians were content to fulfyll the wyll of the goddes  
 and I with hem/ we haue castid our lottes vpon our vir- 30  
 gynes / wherof many ben swalowed and englowted by



the monstre And now the forte or lotte is falle on my  
doughter will she or not / she muste nedes obeye and  
appayse the goddes / After her shall come another /  
Ther is no remedye / And this shall dure vpon the  
5 virgynes of troyes perpetuely / .For hit is the desty-  
ne that Troye shall neuer be quyte of this right harde  
seruytude and thraldom / vnto the tyme that they haue  
founde a man that allone shall vaynquyshe and ouer-  
come the forsayd monstre by his puyssance and pro-  
10 wesse / whiche shall be Impossible How be hit that  
it is true that alle the men of the grettest Cyte of the  
world can not fynde manyer to vaynquyshe hym he  
is so gret & dredfull / And for these thynges confide-  
red demande me no more My doughter shall dye for  
15 the comyn wele of the place of her natyuyte / She  
was born in a good oure / whan the goddes wyll /  
That by lotte and this fortune she be to them offerd  
Syre answerd hercules / Truly I wene that vnder  
heuen is no Cyte so bonde and thrall as youris is .  
20 How he hit hit ought to be vnderstande þ<sup>t</sup> the goddes  
wille not suffre / That this malediction shall hold and  
endure pardurably / ye muste lyue in hope / yf fortune  
and the goddes will do me that grace that I myght  
vaynquyshe and ouercome the monstre and make  
25 Troye free of this seruitude what reward wolde ye  
gyue me / Truly sayd laomedon I trow not that hit  
be possible þ<sup>t</sup> ye shold vaynquyshe the monstre Who  
is he that shall expose hym to so grete a folye / hercu-  
les answerd / vnto a vaylliant hert is no thyng Inpossi-  
30 ble / yf I triumphe vpon the monstre & saue thy doughter

what reward shall I haue / laomedon answerd / yf thou  
maiste do that thou sayste / I haue two horses the beste  
that ben in alle the world / whiche I loue as well as  
halfe my royaume / I shall gyue hem to the as to the beste  
knyghte of knyghtes and as to the moſte hardyeſt of  
hardy . Syre ſayd hercules . Hit is ynowh to me and  
ſuffiſeth to haue the two horses . Late me allone with  
your doughter . I haue a truſt and hope that this day I  
ſhall labour for the wele of troye . And that I ſhall  
fraunchyſe and make free the virgynes and maydens  
of that cyte But I praye yow yf ther be in your cyte ony  
grete barre of yron or of metall . That ye wille ſende for  
to ſecche hit to me for to deffende me with alle .

**T**He kynge laomedon and the troians were alle  
abaſſhid whan they ſawe thempriſe that hercu-  
les had made And at the wordes of hercules the  
kinge remembred hym of a grete clobbe of yron that laye  
at the entree of his palais of ylion that was ſo heuy that  
the ſtrengeste man of troye had ynowh to doo to leye hit  
on his ſholder he ſente for hit and preſentid hit to hercu-  
les And hercules liſte hit vp as hit had ben a litill glayue  
Philotes and theſeus were preſent at alle theſe thinges  
Hercules toke leue at them and at the preſſe and recom-  
manded hym vnto theyr prayers / and forth with all the  
ſee began to rore terrybly Laomedon and the ladyes and  
they that were there toke leue of exione and at hercules .  
And recomanded them vnto the mercy of the goddes / and  
wente vpon the downes for to ſee the ende / Thus abode  
exione allone and all diſpayred vpon the grauell with  
hercules / Than hercules knelid down on his knees vpon  
the grauell tornyng his face vnto the Oryent , and made



his prayers vnto the godde that made the monstres & terrible bestes requyryng hym that he wold gyue hym force strength and vertue of power for to delyuer exione from her Infortune of the monstre / This oryson accomplifhid  
5 hercules entryd in to a lityll boot / where exione was in .  
And anone after the see roryng more and more grewe & aroose in fuche wise that the boote floted and was lyfte vp & born by dyuerse wawes .Folowyng this in a grete trowblyng of wynde whan the see was ryfen in grete habondance of watres hercules & the troians sawe comyng  
10 the grete horrible & vnmesurable monstre / bringyng with hym a tempeste so terrible that hit semed that all þ<sup>e</sup> monstres of helle had ben wyth hym he made the wawes to redowble asprely / he lyfte hym vp aboue the water & put  
15 out his mosell vnto his sholdres / that of þ<sup>e</sup> swalowyng in of the water / sprang out of his ghilles grete floodes of the see / That mounted so hye that hit semed that hit had ben a goulffre that had perced the clowdes / .For to saye the veray trouthe of this monstre / he was so horrible and  
20 so serdfull that only for to loke on and beholde / The moste hardy and assewryd of troye tremblid for fere as a leef on a tree / This notwythstandyng hercules was no thyng e aserd / Allewey he comforted Exione that fyll down as ded . He toke his clubbe . The mon-  
25 stre cam by the boot and caste his mosell vnto Exione wenyng to haue swaloughed her in / as he had doon the other vyrgynes afore / Hercules kepte her / .For he smote hym so acertaynly vpon the mozell that he gaf hym a ryght grete wounde so fore and heuy to bere  
30 That he made hym to goo a back and recule in to the botom of the see / Than in the fallyng of the monstre



in to the see / the wawes a roos hyhe in to the Ayer / whe-  
rof hercules and exione were all wette of the waffhing  
and springyng of the wawes / theyr boote was born  
with the wawes vpon a bancke of fande where the see  
was fo lowe / that þ<sup>e</sup> monstre mighte not well fwymme 5  
with his ease vnto hem / The monstre alleway fwāme  
after hem and comyng nyhe to them lifte vp his hede / and  
in the lifyng vp Ther yffued out of his throte fo grete  
habondance of water of the see That the boot was full  
of water and fanck in fuche wyfe that hercules was 10  
in the see vnto the grete of his thyes And exione stood in  
the water vnto her myddell &c .

**A** None as hercules sawe hym in this Auenture .  
he had grete displayfir in hym self More for the  
payne and dispayr that exione had than for the 15  
drede that he hym self had The kynge laomedon Theseus  
Philotes and alle the other supposed than that hercules  
and the damoyfelle with oute rescouffe had ben deuou-  
red of the monstre . The monstre than sekynge his proye .  
Leep agayn ayenst exione with a terrible wawe Her- 20  
cules had his clubbe redy on his nekke . And awayted  
no thing but the monstre desiryng to auenge hym of the  
displayfir that he had / And that he wold haue don hym  
Dischargid his clubbe on his heed so myghtily that the  
barre entryd therin and the blood sprange oute / Than 25  
was the monstre more wood vpon hercules / he cessed  
the assault of the damoyfelle And assaylled hercules .  
And all wey as he lifte his heed out of the water / he  
desfgorgid vpon the vayllyant champion grete flodes of  
the see / but this notwithstanding he coude not do so 30  
moche harm vnto hercules / but that hercules dyde moche

worfe to hym Hercules fued hym wyth his clubbe / and  
made hym to reboute in to the botome of the see / by the  
peyfaunt weyght of his strokes .

5 **T**He batayll endured longe betwene hercules and  
the monstre / yf the monstre myght ones haue  
touched hercules / he wold at on gulpe haue en-  
glowted or swaloughed hym in / He had a wyde and a  
grete throte oute of mesure he maad grete noyse & bruyt .  
He was ardant in excersifyng his office Alleway her-  
10 cules faughte wyth hym boyftoufly / And helde the vir-  
gyne by hym And what thyng that euer the monstre dide  
He coude not so sodeynly lyfte vp his heed out of the wa-  
ter / But that wyth oon strook of his clubbe he was re-  
bouted allwey vnto the bottom of the see / What shall I  
15 say hercules was ofte tymes in parill for to be drowned  
The peryll was grete and more than I can reherce . For-  
tune was wyth hym and the damoyfell / he fought and  
bete the monstre vayllyantly / And so exployted in smy-  
tyng contynuelly on his mozell and on his heed that the  
20 see withdrewe And toke fro hym the spiryte of lyf and  
alle to fruffhid his brayn vaynquysshid hym and slowe  
hym / And after whan the see was withdrawen & ferre  
ebbed / he toke exione by the hand & broughte her vpon p<sup>r</sup>  
dicque & delyuerd her vnto her fader the kynge laomedon .  
25 **¶** How Laomedon fhette hercules oute of troye And  
how hercules fware that he wolde auenge hym .

**W**Han the kynge laomedon fawe his doughter thus de-  
liueryd fro the monstre & troyes made quyte of the  
feruage of the pestelence / he enclyned and thanked par-  
30 fondly hercules After he descended vnto the see side accom-  
panied of hercules thefe<sup>9</sup> philotes And of the troians &



wente for to see and beholde the monstre that was so  
grete / that thre honderd horses myghte not meue hym fro  
the place where he was / Oon and other toke hede for  
to see the strokes that hercules gaf hym And they coude  
not see all / but in that they sawe they meruaylled . For 5  
hercules had broken boones That hit semed not possible  
to breke / and they had founden the heed hurte in so many  
places . That with grete payne they cowde not knowe  
whether he had hede or none Of this hyhe and increable  
victorie the troians enioyed them meruayllously And 10  
had hercules more in grace than ony man in the world .  
whan they had seen and beholde the monstre ynowh they  
departed thens and brought hercules in to Troye / They  
cam not so sone vnto the dycque but they fonde exione  
newe clothed with newe araye and vestementes . And 15  
as for hercules all that he had vpon hym was weet and  
nothing drye The kynge laomedon wold haue had hym  
to haue chaunged his habites and wold haue gyue hym  
newe but the vayllyant squyer refuséd hit alle / sayyng  
that he had ben well acustomed not for to bee allwey 20  
well at his ease / In this estate than laomedon brought  
hercules in to Troye vnto the castell of ylion and his gre-  
kes with hym and fested hem as hit apperteined Her-  
cules and his grekes were foure dayes triumphant in  
ylion Duryng these foure dayes the troyans wente oute 25  
in grete rowtes for to see þ<sup>e</sup> monster / and gaf so grete loos  
and preysing to hercules That laomedon had enuye ther  
at / Dowtyng hym that the peple wold loue better hercu-  
les than hym / He sente hercules and his folk oute of the  
toun for to hunte And as sone as they were oute of 30  
Troye / He drewe vp the brygge and shette the yates



ayenst hym / Whan hercules wende for to haue entryd .  
Laomedon spack to hym and sayde to hym fro ferre/that  
he had meued by conspiracion the cyte ayenst hym And  
that he wold no more receyue hym in to the toūn/hercules  
5 was passing wroth whan he vnderstood thaccusacion  
of laomedon And answerd hym/that neuer in his lyue he  
had tought ony vilanye to hym /wherin he chargid and  
offryd hym self to proue by bataylle in the felde and to  
aventure his body agayn . xxx . other /that wold saye or  
10 mayntene the contrarye / whiche offre laomedon wold  
not resseyue/Than hercules requyred hym/that at the leste  
he wold deliuere hym his horses that he had promysed  
hym for the victorie of the monstre/Laomedon answerd  
that he wold none deliuere hym/wherfore sayd hercules  
15 Laomedon answerd & sayd / for as moche as hit is my  
wyll and pleseth me so to do / Ha false & vntrewe kyng  
said hercules / thou withholdest me the prys and reward  
of my labour/and thou yeldest me euyll for good/I swere  
to the by the puyffance of alle my goddes/that as I haue  
20 deliueryd troye perpetuely by my clubbe of the monstre  
of the see and consequently fro the swerde of pestelence .  
Semblably and in lyke wise by the same clubbe I shall  
yelde and rendre vnto troye the pestelence of deth and  
of warre yf the goddes yeue me the grace / And I haue  
25 Intencion for to make the troyans saye that they were  
happy that ben ded in the tyme of the pestelence that is  
passed &c .

30 **H**ercules full of grete yre departed wyth these  
wordes and leste there the kyng laomedon that  
fette litill stor of that he had sayd to hym / .For  
he trusted and putte all his affiance in the strength of the

wallis of his cyte/and hym thoughte that no man mighte  
noye ner greue hym And than hercules wente agayn to  
his shippe and mounted in to the see with his clubbe &  
his sheep and his felawe theseus/Philotes helde hym self  
well happy for to haue ben vaynquysshid of oon so va- 5  
ylyant a man as hercules was & he enprised the office  
for to bere his harnoys in alle places where he wente .  
What shall I saye .Fro troye vnto thebes fill nothyng  
worthy to be putte in memorie that is of record In the  
ende he arryued in grece And knewe by some certayn 10  
man there That kynge Eristeus was in thebes Wherof  
he had grete loye .For hym toughte he sawe his lady me-  
gere/whiche he desired to see by grete desire/he wente vn-  
to thebes where he was solempnly receyuyd of þ<sup>e</sup> kinge  
Creon whiche had hym in grete chierie for his vaylli- 15  
ance Oon and other cam and welcomed hym he sente  
his sheep and moutons vnto the kynge Eristeus by phi-  
lotes Philotes hym self tolde and recounted how hercu-  
les had conquerd hem and hym also And how he had  
slayn his geant at the paas Of these tydings was the 20  
kynge Eristeus passing Ioyous . And so were alle they  
that were there or herd speke of hit/Euery man glory-  
fied hercules Ladyes and damoysselles cam and well-  
comed hym Amonge alle other megera faylled not/she  
cam to hercules and wel comed hym . And wel became 25  
her to festoye & make hym chyer . .For she was wyse  
and of good manyer And certes her comyng gaf more  
solace vnto hercules Than all the louynges & preysinges  
that were than gyuen to hym / how well Alle þ<sup>e</sup> world  
preysed and exalted hym by this voyage aboute alle the 30  
grekes/and þ<sup>e</sup> sheep were so desired/that kinges boughte



hem for the weight of golde / wherfore the historiagraphes & poetes putte this conquest in perpetuell memorie . Wrytyng amonge his dedes in this wyse / *Sustulit mala aurea* / that is as moche to saye as he bare away the  
5 moutons of gold / .For as moche as they were extymed at prys of the weyght of gold / .For *mala in greke* is as moche to saye as sheep in englyssh or moutons in frenshe / and so racounteth bokace in his genelogye of goddes / And so approuyth varro whiche writeth in like wyse in his book de Agricultura .  
10

**B**I this conqueste the name of hercules began to flee in heyghte and in excellence The poetes haue fayned vpon this historie That the doughters of Athlas had a gardyne kepte nyght and day  
15 of a serpent wakyng Wherein grewe Apples of gold And that hercules slewe this serpente And gadred and bare away the Apples By this gardyn is vnderstonde the yle / By the serpent wakyng / the subtyll geant cōmysid to kepe hit that allway wook at the  
20 paas And by the Apples of gold ben vnderstand the sheep / Extymed to the valeur of the weyght of fyn goold / After than the presentacion maad to Eristeus of this sheep or moutons as eche man meruaylled of the prowesse of hercules Philotes adiousted and gaf  
25 to his vaynqueur hercules preyfying aboue preyfying and loenge and loos aboue loos and honour aboue honour / .For heeryng kynges and prynces . ladyes and damoysselles seeyng that hercules helde his pees wherof he oughte and myghte embrace honour and  
30 worshyppe he decayred fro poynt to poynt his Adventure not creable / of the monstre of Troyes .



And shewed the clubbe wherwith he had put hym to  
deth After that he reherced the honour and grace that he  
had gotten in troye And the wronge that laomedon had  
don to hym And sayde so moche therof That they enter-  
prised alle to goo and warre vpon the kynge laomedon 5  
for to take vengeance of the wronge that he had don to  
hercules &c .

¶ How hercules had batayll agaynst the kynge laome-  
don And how he vaynquysshid and destroyed troye the  
first tyme &c .

**H** It is not possible that my penne can wryte the  
grace and excellent renome that hercules gate  
in grece at his comynge fro troye / The kynges &  
the princes reputed hem self happy and ewrews for to  
haue theyr regne in his tyme Amphitryon his fader puta- 15  
tyf began to haue hym in grace / And cam in to thebes to  
hym / His moder Alcumena cam also / and certes she fail-  
led not to haue largesses of Ioye / whan she myghte sette  
her eyen to see her sone / whiche was so gretly renommed .  
The noble lady had not seen hym in longe tyme afore . 20  
she sawe hym triumphe in honour in vayllyance and in  
prowesse Alle the Anoyes . greues . and displayfirs that  
she had for hym / be cause that he was named the sone of  
Iupiter / wherof she held her self Innocent were all for-  
gotten and put in oubliance The feste was grete in thebes 25  
for the loue of hercules Men spack not but of hym and  
of his prowesse Creon Eristeus Egeus Amphitryon &  
many other assemblid them to geder And made theyr  
mustres and assembles for to goo vnto troye . By space  
of tyme theyr excersite was redy And than they toke 30  
theyr leue . And hercules was maad capytayne of this

Armee / he wente to the see accompanied of the kyn-  
ges abouefayd and ten thousand men all chosen for  
the nones At the tyme couenable the Maryners dis-  
ankred And wente to saylle They saylled so longe  
5 by theyr cours wyth out Aduenture or lettyng that  
yet duryng theyr vitaylles they cam on a day in to  
frygye vnto a porte of a Cyte named laryse beyng  
nyghe to tenadon / This cyte was of the demayne of  
Troye / .For whiche cause the grekes assayllyd hit  
10 and toke hit by force of armes / And after that ryfled  
hit and took alle that was therin And whan they  
had so spoyled hit They wente to tenadon Whiche  
was a gentilmanly cyte They assaylled hit and toke  
hit as they dide the cyte of laryse and they put therin  
15 the fyre & brenned hit that the ayer was enflamed  
in suche wise þ<sup>t</sup> hit was seen in troye how the cyte  
brende Thassault of tenadon dured not longe .For as  
moche as the troyans were not aduertisid of her co-  
myng whan than they sawe þ<sup>e</sup> ayer so enflamed for  
20 to see fro what place the flame cam They mounted  
and wente vp on the hyghe edifyces of ylion and  
see yng toward tenadon sawe that the cyte was alle  
on a fyre wherof they that sawe hit were right sory  
and gretly abasshid Aboue this they loked in to the  
25 see And aspyed than there the flote of þ<sup>e</sup> grekes wher-  
of they were more abasshid than they were afore .  
And than wyth oute ony more lenger taryng they  
descended and wente down in to the halle of kynge la-  
omedon / And sayd to hym / Alas fyre what is beste  
30 to be doon / The grekes come vpon vs wyth ryght  
a grete flote we haue seen hem and knowe hem .

The stronge hercules manaceth yow for to destroie your  
cyte / Certes I beleue hit is he .For for the begynnynge of  
the fesse he hath brente tenadon / And that is that causeth  
the Ayer be full of fyre &c.

**T**He kynge laomedon heeryng this tydyng / began 5  
to sighe and to taste the punycion and trespaas  
that he had comysed and don ayenst hercules .  
This notwithstanding for to gyue courage vnto his  
men and to his sone pryant that was that tyme of the  
cage of . xx . yer . he dyde do sowne to Armes And adou- 10  
bed hym with armes shewid a right fiers and hardy  
semblant This don he Armed pryant his sone that neuer  
had ben in bataylle afore and dubbyd hym knyght Af-  
ter he toke hym by the hande and yssued out of ylion / In  
yssuyng oute he mette many troyans that told hym that 15  
at his poort were descēded many grekes þ<sup>t</sup> had destroied  
tenadon And but yf he hasted hym / They sholde sone take  
land Laomedon with oute spekyng ony worde passid  
forth by them that had brought hym this tydyng And  
cam to a place that was there by ylion where he fonde 20  
mo than . xx . thousand troians redy armed / and seeyng  
them he began to Ioye in hym self And callyd the princy-  
pals and sayd to hem Lordes ye ben renommed in alle the  
world by the hye prowesses of your Antecessours  
afore that troye was wallyd they defended hit with 25  
the swerd agaynst theyr enemyes The renommed kynge  
Iupiter of Crete coude not gete this Cyte Ne the thesal-  
onyques by theyr warre myghte neuer subdue this Cyte  
Hit is now happed this day that a newe assemble of  
enemyes come vpon this cyte as men saye They haue put 30  
the fyre in tenadon Lete vs goo receyue them coragiously



And late vs make of them lyke as our faders haue made  
wyth other &c .

5 **W**Han the troians had herd thefewordes of their  
kyнге They answerd alle / that they wold lyue  
and dyewyth hym for thewele of the cyte and  
that they had Intencion to kepe hit in his honour and for  
to do growe theyr auncyent glorye / wyth oute holdyng  
of longe processe / The kyнге laomedon dide than do dis-  
playe alle his banyers After yssued out of troye setting  
10 and rengyng his men in good ordenance And than as he  
began to conduyte and lede hem forth Sodaynly he herd  
at the poort a passing grete noyse & bruyt of trompettes  
clarions and tabours of the grekes / Anone his blode  
began to chauffe / than his heer of his heed began to  
15 stande vp / he knewe that they were his enemyes / And  
as sone as they knewe the grekes with oute holdyng of  
ony ordre ne mesure / they meuyd them & began to renne  
to the poort oon to fore an other / whan they approchid  
the poort they aspyed the grekes that descended wyth  
20 grete puiffance / than they ascryed hem vnto the deth and  
ran vpon hem asprely / the grekes were furnysshid of  
good armures & put hem to deffence / And began to skar-  
muffh p<sup>t</sup> oon p<sup>t</sup> other so desmesurably / that in thabordyng  
and metyng ther were many dede & hurte / hercules was  
25 there among the grekes he began to medle sharpli among  
the troians / he had his clubbe / certes he fested hem in suche  
wise that the moſte ſtrengest of his enemyes durſte not  
abide hym / he fought fierly in deſir of vengeance in cou-  
tiſe of worſhip & for to gete hym a name / In forſing his  
30 hand he ſhewid to the troians his clubbe / and made hem  
to ſele the weyghte therof / and the ſtrength of his Arm

And he wroughte so hyghly and dyde so vayllyantly  
that they that sawe hym doubtyd hym more than þ<sup>e</sup> deth  
And sayden that oon vnto that other / beholde hercules .  
but approche hym not / hit were folye Alle that he are-  
cheth he sleeth and forfrushith / we do euyl to fighte 5  
agaynst hym This is the fraunchysar of the terrible ser-  
uage and thraldom of troye / howe shulle we resiste his  
clubbe / whan the mortall monstres ben by the fame put  
to vttrance &c .

**S**Vche were the wordes of the troians / hercules 10  
faught ayenst hem fierfly / he was ferme and sta-  
ble / he wente afore all / the grekes folowid hym  
and toke a playfir to beholde hym . The Cry was grete  
aboute hym / what shall I saye he faughte vnto the night  
and neuer cessed vnto the gooyng down of the sonne / and 15  
the troians sowned the retrayt and they departyd bothe  
parties / laomedon put his swerd in to his shethe whiche  
was all bloody with grekes blood . And in like wyse  
dyde pryant his sonne . They reentryd in to theyr Cyte .  
After the scarmuffe they concluded that oon the morn 20  
they wold furnyshe theyr enemyes of batayll And the  
grekes logged hem in the champayne and made good  
chiere . For they had losse but litill of her peple at her co-  
myng a lande This night passid ouer / whan the day ap-  
pered the troians & the grekes eche in his maner made 25  
hem redy to the bataylle / many of the troians wold  
gladly haue broken this bataylle . And prayde vnto  
kyng laomedon that he wold rendre and deliuere to her-  
cules the horses that he ought to hym / laomedon wold  
not do hit . But answerd that he doubtid no thing his 30  
enemyes / he had than well fyfty thousand of fightyng



men all redy / of these fyfty thousand he made two bata-  
yllis oon of twenty thousand and that he ladde hym self  
And that other of therty thousand he made pryant cap-  
tayne / this doon he yssued oute of troyes wyth his . xx .  
5 thousand fyghtyng men and cam vpon the feldes entring  
vnto the grekes &c .

**W**Han the grekes espyed comyng kynge laomedon  
They were full of Ioye As they that were redy  
for to resseyue them at the poyntes of theyr speres  
10 and with hewyng of theyr swerdes / they had maad of  
their ooste foure bataylles In the first was hercules And  
in the second was Amphitrion and Theseus And in the  
thyrde was the kynge Creon / And in the fourth was  
Eristeus / Hercules than that had the first bataylle mar-  
15 ched whan hit was tyme ayenst the kynge laomedon .  
And he had foure auncyent knyghtes well adresshid in  
the feet of armes that sette & conduyted his folk in araye  
and ordenance / They marched so nyhe that oon þ<sup>r</sup> other  
wyth grete noyse of trompes and tabours / that the Ar-  
20 chers and Arblasters began the batayll / After that that  
hercules had sommend laomedon to paye hym that he  
had promysed hym and that laomedon had made reffuse  
therof / The grekes were garnysshed wyth strenger  
bowes and shotte than the troians were / by that moeyn  
25 they slowe largely of theyr enemyes / And soueraynly  
hercules bare hym so well that of . xl . Arowes that he  
shotte oon After an other he slewe . xl . of his enemyes  
suche as he wold chese wyth oute fayllyng .

**H**ercules was at that tyme the beste Archier and  
30 the moste Iuste that was in all grece / and also in  
all the world / he & his men as said is caste many



of the troians to the ground by theyr shotte / whan the  
shotte faylled hercules deliueyde, his bowe vnto philo-  
tes that bare his harnoys and took a glayue strong and  
fure / whan hit cam to glayues and breking and foynnyng  
with speres hercules that was al way in the first fronte 5  
Leepe ayenste the kynge laomedon that was departid  
fro his oost afore alle other / for as moche as he rood  
vpon oon of the horses that he had promysed to hercules  
And rennyng oon ayenst that other as swyftely as  
they had flowen in the ayer / mette and smote eche other 10  
so fore that theyr speres brak in peces whiche sprange  
aboute them . Hercules passid forth and smote amonge  
the troians And laomedon in like wyse entryd in to the  
oost of the grekes . They began to handle theyr swerdes  
and to hewe eche vpon his enemyes Than aroos there a 15  
meruaylous noyse . They that had speres and sheldes  
employed them for to Ioyne . The fyghtyng was grete .  
The strokes were harde The batayll was generall / for  
of that oon partye & that other many men were distres-  
fid and beten Allway the grekes were moste boystous 20  
and moste hard in Armes And more vaylliant than the  
troians And better helde hem togyder than they of the ba-  
taylle of kynge laomedon / Hercules wrought and be-  
foyngnerd fast with the swerde that he had conquerd  
philotes . At euery strook and euery paas . He deffeted 25  
a Troian And smote of her heedes & Armes in grete ha-  
bondance / That hit semed that they that he towchyd  
had not be Armed . Laomedon was on that other syde  
That fayned not / but bare hym right well upon his  
hors And ran fro reinge to reinge among the grekes . He 30  
had no reffe / he conduyfed his peple knyghtly / his peple

were grete in nombre / he approuched theyr enemyes so  
asprely that they enclosed them And than was the tui-  
sion and slaughter so grete that on alle sides a man shold  
not haue seen but blood & hedes & armes flee in the place  
s and the felde &c .

**W**Han theseus and amphotrion beheldethe batayll  
of hercules so enclosed with the troians they me  
uyd them and cam to his helpe er he had nede At  
theyr comyng they made a right grete bruyt / They thref-  
10 sted & couched theyr glayues vpon the troians whiche  
were to ferre auauncyd / and Ioyned to them with suche  
prowesse that they smote down the most stable & strengest  
and wente so ferre among hem & made them that were so  
fer comen to resorte agayn and go aback by force and  
15 strength In this goyng a back and recueyllyng the oost  
of laomedon was all affrayed and abasshid / The thre  
swerdes of Hercules of Theseus and of Amphitrion  
were seen flambousshynge aboue alle other in well doying  
In shorte space they began to vaynquyshe and ouercome  
20 their enemyes / and shold haue brought hem to vtterance  
and shame / whan that the yong Pryant with his .xxx.  
thousand apperyd to come to the Iourney makynge so  
grete a noyse that alle the ground tremblid / And gaf a  
meruayllous sowne / and they p<sup>r</sup> were vpon the wallys  
25 and edifices of troye made with all a grete crye / Hercu-  
les theseus and Amphitrion beholdyng Pryant comyng  
and the puissance of troye sette their peple in araye & in  
renges wente with a grete sute of grekes ayenst them for  
to sousteyne her faytes / Theseus was the firste and as-  
30 pried priant that sette and cowched his speer ayenst hym  
And that he cam wyth a grete corage mounted vpon

the second hors of kynge laomedon his fader And seafid  
with so grete myghte vpon thefeus that he bare hym to  
the ground torned vp so down brofing hym vpon his  
fhelde Thefeus releuyd hym right angry of this falle en-  
tryd among the troians fmytyng and hewyng on hem 5  
with his fwerde in fuche fureur that he fmote of the hee-  
des of moo than of .xxx. troians / er he celled / the bruyt  
and noyse was grete aboute hym / The troians wold  
haue vengid them of his fwerd . But ther power was  
not fo grete they had werke ynowh to faue hem felf . 10  
many grekes cam in to the Ayde and helpe of Thefeus .  
And than they began to renewe the bataylle .

**A**T this tyme and at this recountre Hercules and  
Amphitriion were nothing ydle They were on o  
fide / and thefeus on an other At metyng ther was 15  
many a man hurte and flayn . Pryant dyde meruaylles  
vnto the grekes at the begynnyng / he bare hym fo vaylly-  
antly amonge his enemyes / That he fonde no man that  
dyde hym ony thinge that difplefid hym . He made his  
fwerd for to taſte ſtrongly þ<sup>e</sup> blood of his aduerfaryes 20  
Than as he was in this poynt / he herde aboute hercules a  
right hye and a right perſing Crye of his peple cryyng  
troye Troye In deſpair for to haue preuayllyd / and than  
pryant wenyng to haue holpen / And to ſmyte down ded  
alle them that were afore hym ran vnto the reſcouſe to 25  
his maleauenture . For as ſone as he was comen to fore  
hercules / And hercules ſawe hym ſo on hors backe / He  
remembrid hym that hit was he that had ouerthrowen  
theſeus to the grounde And ſayd that he wold auenge  
hym And enhaunced his ſwerde and ſmote pryant ſo ru- 30  
dely vpon his helme that he was all aſtonyed And that



his swerd flode down on the hors nekke and entryd in so  
ferre that they fyll down bothe pryant and the hors .

5 **W**Han Pryant was so ouerthrowen hors and  
man / And also so estoned that he wyfte not  
where he was / hercules was aduertysed that  
hit was pryant sone of the kynge laomedon / And had  
pyte of hym And toke hym prysonner And dide do sende  
hym oute of the batayll / The troians seeyng this were  
fore and strongly troublid and for the rescousse of hym  
10 they meuyd them self and encoraged so terribly that her-  
cules myght not susteyne alle the faytes of the batayll .  
And that the grekes were constrayned to lese place The  
kynge Creon than displayed his banyer and his batayll  
And in lyke wyse dide Eristeus & they putte hem in two  
15 wynges oon on that right side and that other on the lyfte  
side / And they cam rennyng in vpon the troians with so  
grete noyse & so grete tempeste that alle the troians felte  
well theyr comyng / .For at that tyme they wyfte not  
where to entende / They were so smyten afore & behynde  
20 so fore that they losse the rowte of pryant / and wiste not  
where he becam &c .

**A**T this entremetyng and faytes laomedon was  
oute of the prees / And refresshid hym / he herd  
saye that his sone pryant was taken . Wherefore  
25 he was passing sorowfull and had so grete payne that  
the swete cam to his herte & fro thens in to alle his mem-  
bris / and wente hym self agayn to batayll half out of his  
mynde / the batayll was than fell & enuenymed / and most  
hard fightyng / but for to augmente and encrease the ouer-  
30 grete sorowe of this laomedon / he sonde that his folk

had the worfe & losse and lasse foughte On that other  
side he sawe the horyons and strokes of the grekes so  
grete and so desmesurable that his men were disrenged  
And tharayes broken And chargid with so heuy stro-  
kes of the heuy glayues that they wente and torned a 5  
back and began to flee / And than whan hyt cam to the  
disconfiture Laomedon abode not with the lasse but en-  
trid agayn in to his cyte as hastily as he mighte The gre-  
kes folowed the troians asprely and so nyhe that they  
entryd in with hem with grete effusion of blood Hercu- 10  
les was the firste that wan the gate And as for the gre-  
kes he was portier and putte in alle them that were of  
his knowleche / many troians passid by the cuttyng of  
his swerd / And many fled away by the feldes and  
bushis / what shal I saye whan laomedon sawe that by 15  
force his cyte was taken and put in the handes and go-  
uernance of the grekes Right fore disconforted and all  
in despayr he took his daughters Exione and Antigone  
And his moste precyous Iewels and bagues / and fled  
away preuely Thenkyng that his enemyes shold make 20  
there a right grete destruction and pyllyng as they dyde  
.For whan hercules had put his men within the cyte he  
abandonned to robbe and pylle Thus the troians were  
psecuted The canellys were tempryd with theyr blood  
The howses were beten down / And the grete rycheffes 25  
were put in to proyes And of alle the goodes of the cyte  
Ther was leste nothing hoole but the palays of ylion  
where the ladyes and the maydens were withdrawen  
Hercules wolde in no wyse destroye this palays . .For  
as moche as the ladyes made to hym a requeste for to 30  
spare hit At this pryse hercules foughte longe laomedon

In the palays of ylion And in alle places of the cyte / But  
he cowde here no tidyngis of hym / wherfore he was fore  
deplayfant And whan he had beten down the walles .  
that had ben made wyth the moneye of the goddes/hede-  
5 parted thens and retorned in to grece wyth grete glorye  
And in this wyse was Troye destroyed the firste tyme .  
Wherfore I shall thus now make an ende of this firste  
booke / And shall begynne the seconde booke / where  
shall be shewyd how troye was reedyfied / And how  
10 hit was destroyed the seconde tyme . And how Pryant  
areysed hit and made hit agayn / In contynuyng the no-  
ble labours of hercules now newe begonne &c .

Thus endeth the first book of the recueyll or  
gadryng to geder of the historyes of Troye .



**H**iere begynneth the seconde booke of the recueill of the historyes of Troye / that speketh of the prowesses of the stronge Hercules and of his deth &c : : .

**H**owe hercules foughte ayenst thre lyons in the foreste of nemee . and how he slewe them and tooke their skynnys or hides &c : : .

**I**N the fyrste booke is begonnen the faytes & prowesse of the stronge and puyssaūt geant hercules . And how he destroyed fyrste the cyte of Troye vpon kynge Laomedon after whiche feet and conqueste he retorned in to Grece . where he helde hym a certayn space of time without doying of ony thyng that is founde by writyng / But than as the olde Iuno by her euyl & cursid enuye gaf her to ymagyne and thynke how she myght make hercules to be destroyed & dye / Tidynges cam i to Crete that in the foreste of nemee were comen many lyons And amonge all other ther was oōn that was sixteen palme of heyght that destroyed and wasted alle the contree . And this Iuno had warre agaynst eristeus . and than for to haue aqueyntance of hercules & vnder fayed colour of good loue for to sende hym in to the clawes of this lyon she maad pees with eristeus . and sende for hym to come in to Crete for to conferme the pees . Eristeus that thought no thyng but well wente in to Crete and brought with hym hercules / the pees was made . Iuno acqueyntid her with hercules / they cam to speke of the lyons in the forest of nemee &c : . And so moche spake Iuno and accountid of hem . that she said to hercules that hit were wel his faite for to gete hym honour and worshipp / as for to go vnto the foreste of

nemee and for to employe hym to conquere tho lyons  
 hercules wenyng that Iuno had counceillid hym for  
 to goo and assaylle the lyons for his worship and  
 prouffyt / enterprysed for to goo in to the foreste / Iuno  
 5 requyred hym yf that he wente that whan he had vayn-  
 quysshid the lyons he shold retorne vnto her / hercules  
 promysid her that he wold so doo / After he departed  
 fro crete / and fyrste he wente in to thebes for to see me-  
 gera / and for to make his harnoys & armes to a poynt  
 10 Whan the ladyes of thebes knewe that hercules wold  
 goo ayenst the lyons of nemee / alle they complayned  
 his youghth & they thoughte that he shold dye there / ffor  
 the lions were cruell & terrible Megera aboue all other  
 was passyng forowfull / and required the ladies that  
 15 they wolde praye euristeus that he wold kepe hercules  
 fro going vnto so daungerous a voyage / The ladyes  
 accomplisshid the requeste of megera . And had wende  
 to haue broken the voyage of hercules by the meen of  
 euristeus / but they myght in no wyse lette his purpose /  
 20 .For hercules answerd to euristeus & vnto the ladyes /  
 that hit was the first emprise that he had taken in hand  
 at requeste of ony ladie / and for as moche as the quene  
 Iuno had made hym to do hit / he had Intencion for to ac-  
 complissh hit by the playfir of tho goddes & of fortune : .

25 **H**ercules was grete in herte & in courage exalted  
 in honour he had leuer haue dyed than to haue  
 don a thyng werof shold folowe ony dysho-  
 noure / whan his armes were redy he adowbyd hym / af-  
 ter he toke leue of kyng creon . of euristeus . of amphitri-  
 30 on of þ<sup>e</sup> ladyes & of the damoiselles accompanied only  
 of philotes whiche wold neuer leue hym / he deptyd fro

thebes And so spedde hym in his Iourney that he cam  
 vnto the foreste of nemee whyche stood not fer from  
 Arges / In approching this foreste he wente two daies  
 with out findyng bestes or men vnto the tyme that he  
 entryng in to the foreste fonde a pastour or a hierdman 5  
 named melorcus / this herdeman was mountyd vpon  
 a grete tree / whan that he sawe hercules entre in to the  
 woode . he ascryed hym sayng / fyre ye be ded yf ye goo  
 ony further / retorne lightly . for the fiers lyons will ete  
 yow . or ellis come hether vp to me vpon this tree . her- 10  
 cules heeryng the wordes of molorcus lokyd vpon the  
 tree . demaunded hym what he was . Alas said the pas-  
 tour I am the moſte poure man of alle other / the lyons  
 of this foreste at theyr comyng haue eten a grete herde  
 of bestes that I haue nourishid here by . aboue that they 15  
 haue eten alle my famyllye and meyne And they haue  
 all deuoured saue me allone whiche haue by auenture  
 a grete while sauyd my self vpon this tree where I ete  
 no thyng ellis but leues and akehornes . And dare not  
 descende and come down for fere of thre lyons whyche 20  
 ben here by / whiche wyll sone assayle yow but yf ye  
 departe and see &c : : .

**T**He pastour synysfhyng his wordes / ther cam  
 leepying out of a bussh the thre lions . and mar-  
 ched ayenst hercules roryng and cryng And 25  
 openyng her eyen by so grete felonnye . that hit ſemed  
 that they wold haue thurgh percyd hercules with her  
 fell sight . The grete lyon cam fyrst / his heer stondyng  
 vp . he was as hye as an olyphant and grete after the  
 auenānt And his hede was twyes so grete as the hede 30  
 of a boole . hercules ſecyng them come took his glayue



and his clobbe that philotes bare / Philotes notwithstanding his prowesse / was so fore aferde that he wente vpon the tree vnto the herdeman . Hercules sette hys clobbe vnto a tree / and toke hys glayue faste be-  
5 twene hys fyfthes / the lyons at the approchyng brayed in her throtes / hercules smote oon of them betwene the eyen / and bare hym down to the erthe that he satte vpon his buttokes . The grete lyon wende than to haue sprongē vpon hercules and to haue taken hym in his clawes  
10 And maad a terryble leep / whan hercules sawe and knewe his entente / he torned fro hym and smote at the thirde lyon whyche was lyght and peert / And conduyfed his glayue so right & so fermely in to his throte that he rought hym to the herte what som euer resistance  
15 that he made in bytyng the glayue / and leste hit wythin his body in fuche wyfe that he fyll down ded / whan the two lyons sawe her felawe so arayed / they sette her clawes on the erthe / and howlid so yroufly that hit semed that the thonder had spronge out of her stomakes / All the foreste denned therof / hercules toke his  
20 swerd . the two lyons approched of newe agayn / and ran vpon hym with her pawes and hurte hym so desme- furably / that they losed his armeurs and her nayles entryng in to his flessh / they drewe hem out alle dy-  
25 ed with his blood : : .

**H**ercules had the herte fore troublid whan he felte his woundes that the lyons had made / he hauncid his swerd & smote on oon & other / but the grete lion had his skyn so hard / that his swerd myght no more entre  
30 therin than hit myght on a grete stedy / Thus began the batayll of the lyons & of hercules / the lityll lyon was

passyng angre and fyers he launched hym forth ofte  
tymes ayenst hercules . And allewey wende to haue  
hurte hym with his clawes that cutted lyke a rasour  
but he launched so ofte that hit was to his euyl helth  
and ease that hercules amonge after many strokes / he 5  
made to departe from his body the ryght legge ryght  
nyghe by the sholdre and smote hym down by the feet  
of that other lyon that laye ded &c : :

**W**Han hercules sawe that he was delyuerid of the  
two euyl bestes . And that he had nomore to 10  
doo but with the grete lyon . he began to haue an  
hope of good fortune / he had lye in hym self of the ba-  
taylle . whyche was stronge to susteyne / ffor the grete  
lion gaf hym grete strokes with his pawes . And putte  
hym ofte tymes in parill of deth / the swerd of hercules 15  
myghte neuer entre in to the skyn of the beste hit was  
so hard / the lyon toke his swerd betwene his teth and  
his nayles that wyth grete payne he pullid and ra-  
chid hit from hym . ffynably whan he had longe fough-  
ten with his swerd . And knewe well that therby 20  
he myghte reyse no blood of the lyon / he wold assaye  
yf his Clubbe were to hym more prouffitable . than  
be toke hyt / And the fyrst strook that the lyon cam vp-  
on hym . he gaf hym a strook wyth his clubbe so grete  
on his moutthe that alle his teeth braak and fyll out 25  
to fore hym . the lyon selyng the stroke maad a grete  
and meruayllous howling . he haunfed his pawes and  
wende to haue pullyd down hercules / but he fledd the  
comyng of the lyon And the lyon fill to ground of the  
grete fierfnes & sailyng that he maad And whan her- 30  
cules sawe p<sup>r</sup> he was fallen . he leep vpon hym / & bete



hym and helde hym with his handes aboute the throte  
so difmesurably that he brought his lawes out of her  
places or out of Ioynte / and made his eyen to flee out of  
his heed and stranglid hym and so flewe hym : .

5 **I**N doying this feet orwerke hercules shewid a synguler  
hardynes & an Increable force / hee stranglid wyth his  
handes the lyon with the skyn so hard that no glayue  
ne swerd myghte entre ner do ony harme / he put hym to  
deth by excessiue vailliance / And whan he had so doon  
10 he wente to that other that lyued yet / and all to brake  
and tare hym as yf hit had ben a lityll lambe / After he  
called philotes and the pastour or herdman that were  
meruailously Ioyous and glad of so highe a victorie /  
and hercules fonde the manyer for to fle the lyons and  
15 take of her skynnes by the helpe of the herdman / whan  
they had slayn hem hit was nyght / hercules demaunded  
the herdeman yf ther was ony hous or loggyng ther by  
where he myght haue mete and drynke / the herdeman  
brought hym to his hous wher they fonde prouision of  
20 mete & drinke / wherwith the good man feested hercules  
to his power / and hym semed that he was in paradys  
And thus hercules passid the day & the nyght / and for-  
gate not to thenke on his woundes that were felle and  
smarted that litill or nought he slepte that nyght / this  
25 notwithstanding whan the day apperid he toke leue of  
the herdeman & so deputed / & toke his Iorney for to goo  
in to crete for to shewe to the quene Iuno the thre lyon  
skynnys & for to thanke her of her good aduertisment .  
¶ How Iuno sente hercules in to egypte for to be slayn  
30 of the tyrant Busire and how hercules flewe the ty-  
rant ayenst the hoope and will of Iuno : .



I N this tyme regned in Egipte the kynge busire  
the sone of the quene of libie / the londe of egipte  
was drye and not fertile but barayne . Busirie  
for to remedye this callid his clerkes that helden the sci-  
ence of zorastes . and axed of them what he myght doo 5  
for the helthe of his royame / They counceyllled them  
with the goddes and had answere that they muste sa-  
crefyce vnto hem mannes blood . Whan busire that natu-  
rally was euyll And that had neuer doon good herde  
this answer . he began to tyrannyse hym self that was 10  
a tiraūt afore . and began first on his peple . takyng and  
pluckyng fro the moders here lytyll children and fro  
the men their wyues . and fro the wiues her husbondes  
in brennyng & fowling the tēples of egipte with their  
blood / ffor these homysides & slaughter the droughte 15  
cessed not . but augmentid & waxe more / the clerkes de-  
maūded her gooddes the cause why they had no dewes  
of water ne rayne fro aboue / they answerd that they  
wold not haue the Iuste and true blood of egypte . but  
the strange blood whiche they shold take & make sacre- 20  
fise therof / the goddes by this answer wold haue in sa-  
crefyce the blood of busire . ffor he was strange in vertu-  
ous policye & ferre fro all good . And the clerkes vnder-  
stood that they wold haue the blood of strangers / Bu-  
sire aduertised of this aufwer cessid to psecute the blo- 25  
od of egipte / & tourned his glayue vpon the blood of  
strangiers / and made an edycte & statute p<sup>r</sup> no stranger  
shold entre in to his cyte / but he shold be sacryfied to  
his goddes . and that he wold do flee all the estrangers  
that he might gete . By this edicte & by this dampnable 30  
custome many estrangers nobles and other were putte

in sacrifice and had their blood shedde in egipte / amonge  
all other oon noble man of crete of the lignage of Iuno  
perisshe in this Infortune by the swerd of busire / the  
tydynges cam in to crete and there was made for hym  
5 a grete sorowe / As this sorowe was in his most cours  
hercules & philotes cam vnto quene Iuno / they fond her  
charged with teeres of wepyng in her cyte / At that  
tyme there were an honderd Cytees in Crete / And the  
kyng Iupiter held hym no more with Iuno for many  
10 causes and resons / whan than hercules was retorne  
vnto this lady Iuno his stepmoder / he made to her the  
reuerence / after he shewid to her h<sup>e</sup> skynnys of the lions  
that he had slayn / And thanked her of the hye auen-  
ture that she had ensigned hym &c : .

15 **T**He curfid stepmoder for the retorne of hercules  
augmentyng her sorowe vpon newe sorowe /  
reseyued and fested hercules / and made to hym  
fayntly the grettest chiere that she coude / hit was vpon  
the poynt to goo to dyner / she made hym to dyne & ete  
20 wyth her / In etyng after dyuerce deuycs of the lyons  
she thoughte and remembrid howe she myght make  
hercules for to dye / she myght no better do than to sende  
hym in to egipte / at that tyme she concluded in her self  
that she wold sende hym in to egipte yf she myght / for  
25 to so doo / she chaunged the propose of the lyons / and  
said to hercules / your comyng agayn in sacste is to me  
so recomendable that your name shall be put in perpetu-  
ell louyng & preisyng amonge the most worthy & beste  
of the world / for ye haue doon many fair enterprises &  
30 feetes / In your yong childhood ye made all the world to

wondre and meruayle of the victorye of the serpentes  
by yow enstranglid After ye haue maad your swerd  
to braundyfthe in the occidente in ffrygie & now newly  
in Nemeen / Thauentures of thefe places haue gyuen to  
yow ryght moche honour and worfhippe / wherof I 5  
haue right grete Ioye . ffor eche pfon ought to be glad  
& enioye in the well doying of a nother And in efpeciall  
of a noble man . And fpecyally whan that he putteth  
hym in payne to vaylliantnes . euery perfone is holden  
and bounden to councele hym vnto his worfhipp and 10  
wele / wherfor whan hit fo is that ye enuertue your  
felf fro day to day . and feke the peryls of the fee and  
the fals daungers of the erthe . to thende for to furmoüt  
alle them / I aduertife yow that in Egypte is a tyraüt  
that facrefieth all efrangiers that come in to his contre 15  
with oute referuyng noble man or villayn . fo than me  
femeth yf fortune will helpe yow for to go and con-  
quere hym . that ye fhold gete grete honour and wor-  
fhip to yow and yowres . and helthe and prouffit to  
all the nacions of the world . Madame anfwerd her- 20  
cules I am not ner neuer fhall be in all my liue of fuche  
recomendacion as ye faye & reporte . notwithftondyng  
for as moche as I haue grete defyre for to doo werkes  
that may be to the plefyr of the peple & for their helthe  
and wele / I promette yow . and fwere that to morn 25  
with oute any other delaye / I fhall put me in deuoyr  
on the way for to goo in to egypte / And I fhall neuer  
retorne agayn in to my contree vnto the tyme that I  
haue feen the teraüt And yf he leye or put hand on me  
for to facrefyfe me / I haue entencion that he fhall not 30  
do hyt wyth out fmytyng of ftrokes / Iuno heeryng



thenterpryse of hercules had in her herte passyng grete  
Ioye / that day they passid in many deuyses / hercules  
took the skynnes of the lyons and delyuerid to certayn  
werkemen for to make of them a garment in maner of  
5 armour to arme hym with all / On the morn he toke  
leue of his stepmoder & departed fro crete / and so longe  
Iourneyed on the waye with philotes with oute syn-  
dyng of ony auenture wherof ony memoire is had / that  
on a day he cam to the gate of the cyte of menphyn that  
10 was in egypte wher the tyrant busire held his residence .

**W**Han hercules was comen nyghe vnto the gate  
hetokehis clobbe that philotes bare / he lest philo-  
tes there and entrid hym self in to the cyte / he  
had not ben longe there / ner ferre goon but busire whiche  
15 was aduertysed of his comyng by hys espyes cam a-  
gaynst hym with many of his complices . and with oute  
spekyng of ony word ran vpon hym / hercules was  
all well assured / he knewe the tyrant by his mayn-  
tien and by the syngnes that was told hym / he lyfte vp  
20 his clobbe whan he sawe hym come / and as the tyrant  
wold haue smyten hym with his glayue with oute  
ony word spekyng . he smote the tyrant with his clobbe  
vpon the ryght syde so desmesurably that not only he  
bare hym vnto the erthe / but also he brake all his ryb-  
25 bys of his body / And so arayed hym that he myght  
neuer releue hym self after / The Egipcians seeyng busire  
so ouerthrowen / some ran to hym for to releue hym  
whiche they coude not doo for he was to heuy / And the  
other assailed hercules . Than was the cyte alle ameuyd  
30 Hercules right Ioyous that he had so beten the tyrant .

began to lerne the egypciens to knowe his clobbe / he  
 flewe many of them . And the remenant he maad to  
 flee / his strookes were so heuy and peysaūt that the  
 complices of busfire that were acustomed to shede man-  
 nes blood / had their blood shedd & sparkled abroad 5  
 And coude not ner myght not remedie their meschance  
 that was so grete / that hercules fillyd all the place of  
 dede bodies . And after longe bataylle he fonde hym filf  
 allone . ffor their was none so hardy that durste be seen  
 to fore hym . The peples and the comonte of the egipcy- 10  
 ens gaf no charge of the rescous of their kynge / whan  
 they sawe hym beten . Alle they hated hym and sawe  
 the bataylle fro ferre by grete rowtes / whan than her-  
 cules had so moche doon . that he fonde no man to fight  
 with hym . he sette down his clubbe . And adressed hym 15  
 vnto a grete companye of egipcyens that stood there  
 And assured them that he wold no thyng don vnto  
 them . and axed what peple they were that had assail-  
 led hym . They answered hym knelyng on their knees  
 that they were mansleas hangemen and peple of vi- 20  
 cious and euyl lyuyng . And that their kynge that he  
 had first beten down was the worste of hem alle . And  
 hadd purposed to haue put hym to deth as a strangier  
 for to make sacrefice vnto the goddes . And they pra-  
 yd hym . that he wold sacrefyce their sayd kynge / 25  
 Hercules graunted their petycion and accorded hyt  
 vnto the peple . And anone toke this cursid tyraūt bu-  
 fire that lyued yet and bare hym vpon his sholdre  
 vnto the temple whiche the egypciens shewid to hym  
 the fals tyraūt cryed after helpe terribly . but his crye 30  
 auayled hym not . The egypciens cryed vnto hercules



sacrefice sacrefice hym / whan hercules cam in to the  
temple he sacrefised hym after þ<sup>t</sup> he had shewid to hym  
hys cursid & euyl lyf / And than whan the fyre was  
put vnto the sacrefice / hit began to rayne / and the grete  
5 droughte began to faile / wherof the egypciens were so  
Ioyous that none coude specifye / they songe louynges &  
preisinges to hercules they brought hym vnto the palais  
and philotes also / whiche had all seen and they ordey-  
ned & constituted hercules kynge ouer them / whiche he  
10 refused / but he ordeyned Iuges for to gouerne them Af-  
ter he departed & retorned vnto the quene Iuno whiche  
had grete sorowe / And to kynge Creon whiche had  
grete Ioye for to here told & recounted his prowesses :  
**C** How hercules espowfed megera and how he was  
15 made kynghte in thebes &c : .

**I**N suche wise as the yonge wyne by the labour and  
besynes of the labourer groweth in heighte & his bowes  
spred a brood full of fruyte / semblably hercules by ver-  
tue labouryng in hym grewe in verdur of well doying  
20 and in fruyt of nobleffe / his werkes his bowes hys  
braunches than began to spread a brood & to mounte  
and ryse fro royame to roiaime / the secrete conspiracōns  
of Iuno and her cursed enuyes myght not hurte ner my-  
nusihe the vertue of hercules / the more that she wenyd  
25 to abasshe and hurte hym . the more she was cause of  
his enhauncement / yf he were puyssant and stronge of  
body / he was yet more stronge of vertue for hit was  
sette in hym as the precyous stone is in gold / and as  
the odour is in the flour / And as the raye or sonne  
30 beme is in the sonne / he was belouyd of kynges . of  
prynces . of ladyes . of damoyelles . of nobles and



of villaines . en especial megera the doughter of kynge  
Creon louyd hym / Certes she was not deceyued . ffor  
hercules loued her also . And was neuer houre but  
he thoughte on her . how well they durst none of them  
speke to other of this matyere . they were ashamed to  
dyscoure that / whereof they had hope to haue honour  
and worship . they behelde eche other / And ofte they  
bewayled and complayned to them self . And desy-  
red the day that they myghte take eche other by mary-  
age . And so moche they wisshed after that day that  
at laste hit cam . For on a morow tyde as hercules was  
goon vnto the wood for to take a wylde beste / he re-  
membrid hym of his lady . And began to speke and  
saie to hym sylf softly . Shall I be alleway in payne  
Shall myn herte neuer be eased but alway languys-  
hyng in loue / I see oon and other In grete loye wyth  
her loues and ladyes . And I wote neuer how to come  
to the poynte of oon only that I haue chossen aboue all  
other / And how to achyue my purpoos I wote ne-  
uer how to begynne . I dar not speke to her / ner I haue  
not yet requyred her of loue . ner I haue not assayed yf  
she wold condescende . Shall I speke to her / I wote ne-  
uer / yf I speke to her and then she reffuse me . I shall  
fall in dispayre . I shall dye for sorowe of melancolye  
and desplaisir I shall neuer dar come after in noble as-  
semblee a foot . Alas what payne . all considerid oon ty-  
me must come that I speke to her . yf all her frendes were  
of oon acorde for to gyue her to me in maryage . And  
she were not contente ner pleased alle were lost . the  
moste Ieopardye is to haue her good will and grace  
ffor with out her grace I may nought doo . Than hyt

is neceffite feke and requyre yf I may haue her good  
wyll / fyn hit fo is / ffor yf I flepe thus and fpeke not  
I fhall neuer achyue ner come to my pourpoos : .

5 **H**ercules ferme in his purpoos efpried and en-  
flamed of grete defire departid from the wood  
and abandoned the wild beſte and gaf hit ouer  
for to come vnto megera / thenkyng how and by what  
wordes he myght come and ſhewe to her / that laye on  
his herte / he wente ſo ferre that he cam vnto the gardyn  
10 of the palays where ſhe was with many ladyes and  
damoyſelles / he made to them the reuerences / After he  
eſpied the tyme that he myght ſpeke to megera . And he  
waxe ſo penſyf that hit was meruaille / he entremeted  
no thyng to deuylſe with the ladyes / but he drewe hym  
15 a parte in to the gardyn / whan the ladyes beheld hym  
ſo penſyf / dyuerce of them cam to hym & talked with  
hym . to put hym from his thoughtes & penſyfnes . but  
they coude not . and at laſte megera cam to hym . Aſſone  
as hercules ſawe her come to hym he began to ſyghe &  
20 cam agayn her / and ſhe ſayd to hym / hercules why are  
ye ſo penſif / put away fro you ſuche melancolye / And  
telle me of your tydynges I pray yow / lady anſwerd  
hercules I thanke yow of your good viſitacyon . And  
fyn hit pleſeth yow to here of my tidynges & to knowe  
25 I ſhall ſaie to yow a paart / firſt I aduertyſe you that  
the cauſe that I am brought & put in the abyſme or ſwo-  
lowe of penſifnes & ſighes that is this day comen vnto  
me / is by your contemplacion / ffor as I wente to the  
wood to hunte the remembrance of your ryght noble  
30 beaute contynuelly beyng in myn ymaginacōn cam in to  
me / & made me entre in to a ſecret debate that is to wete



yf I shold allewey lyue vnguerdoned and vnrewarded of loue. And also yf I durst saie to yow that I haue sette myn herte and loue in yow. Madame this debate was grete / but in the ende I concluded to come vnto yow for to knowe the conclusion of my fortune whether hit be deth or lyf / In this deliberacion thynkyng how I myght speede vnto yow. I am in this poynt and partie / where your comyng hath put me out of a right grete thought and pensifnes / ffor I wiste neuer how to come to the poynte for to speke with yow apart. as I may now do. than for to employe the tyme / I saye to yow for trouthe / that syn the tyme of my olympiade. I haue desired yow nyght and day. And at that tyme putte myn herte in your seruitude. concluding to loue yow pardurably. Madame I knowe and woot well that I haue enterprysed thyng that I am Indygne and not worthy / this notwithstanding I abide your mercy and requyre yow that hit please yow to resseyue me in to your grace in suche wyse that shortly I may see the day of our maryage &c : :

**W**Han megera vnderstood the wordes of her loue hercules she was in her herte reioysed wyth grete solaas / notwithstanding she was a shamed And all shamefaste she answerd / Helas hercules by what fortune fynde I me in the grace of so gentil a man as ye be / your excessiue prowes your glorious labours your resplendant vertues ben so moche of value that ye ar worthy to haue to wyf the flour of ladyes and the choys. with these wordes many damoysselles cam there vnto them / that causyd them to sece theyr deuyses of loue. And sayden to megera that hyt was



tyme to withdrawe her for to go dyne Megera sorow-  
ful of so hasty departyng/& that she had no more space  
to deuyse with her loue/ne myghte not achieue her pur-  
poos/by constraynt she toke leue of hercules & wente in  
5 to the halle/all refeccioned of loue/And hercules abood  
in the gardin all glad and Ioious of the swete answer  
that he had receyuyd &c : .

10 **W**Han the ladyes than had leste hercules in the  
gardyn/also sone as they were goon/hercules  
assemblid Euristus & amphotrion/and said to  
hem that he had grete desire and will to be married/and  
prayed them that they wold goo to kyng Creon to  
knowe yf he wold giue hym his doughter megera . They  
spake to kyng creon of this mariage/the kyng herd hem  
15 speke ryght gladly / ffor the mater plesyd hym / And  
answerd that he myght nowher better bestowe hys  
doughter/than to the moste noble man of the world her-  
cules / whom he louyd as his owen sone / whiche was  
so vailliant & so noble & had no felawe like vnto hym  
20 and that he was content to gyue to hym his doughter  
And with her all that he wold demande Euristus and  
amphotrion thanked the kyng of his courtoys answer  
Megra & hercules were sente fore/the kyng made hem  
to trouthplyte eche other with grete loye of bothe par-  
25 ties/After this in processe of tyme the day of the espow-  
sailes & mariage was halowed with glorie . tryumphe  
honour & Ioye/what shal I saie they laye to gider with  
out more auenture/and liuyd to gyder right honestlye : .

30 **A**none after þ<sup>e</sup> solemnyte of this mariage. hercu-  
les cam to kyng creon & praied hym þ<sup>t</sup> he wold  
adubbe & make hym knyght / for as moche as

they of the royaume of Iconie were comen vnto hym . &  
had chosen hym for to be kynge of their Cyte for his  
good renomee . The kyng Creon Ioyous of that/that he  
was chosen for to be kynge of yconie . answerd that  
he wold accomplissh his desire . but he wold that this 5  
shold be don at a certayn day assigned / Saiyng that  
than he wold make a right noble feste where men  
shold Iouste and torneoye . And that he wold do come  
theder alle the kynges and the prynces of Grece/hercu-  
les Accorded and agreed the counceyll of the kynge 10  
And than the kynge sente his messagers vnto all the  
kynges of grece . And praied hem to be at the chiualerie  
and dubbyng knyght of a noble man / that shall hold  
a paas at a day named and sette for to furnyshe all  
them that shall come to the Ioustes . The Renōme of 15  
this forsayd ffeite was a none borne and knowen  
vnto alle the regnes of grece / The apparayll and orde-  
nance was grete in thebes Oon & other disposed them  
for to be there . The tyme passed and the day cam/many  
a kynge and knyght were comen at that tyme to the- 20  
bes . Theseus and Iason the sone of kynge Eson were  
there amonge all other / the kynges maad grete bruyt  
and grete pompes aboute ten of the clocke to fore none  
the kyng Creon wente in to the place that was ordey-  
ned and arayed for the Ioustes . at a corner in the same 25  
place was a Tente / In this tente was Hercules alle  
alone . that same tyme the ladyes and damoyfelles  
wente and mounted vpon the scaffoldes / the Iousters  
cam in to the place . No man knewe ne wiste not who  
was this newe knyght . what shall I saye whan the 30  
kyng Creon sawe that the knyghtes were comen



in on all fydes and that the ladyes were gon vp on the  
skaffoldes/he sente for hercules & made hym knyght af-  
ter their statutes / and than hercules mountyd vpon his  
hors . toke his spere & hys shelde / And escryed them  
5 that were ther to thende that eche man shold do his de-  
uoyr / And than oon & other that desired to haue wor-  
shipp toke her speres and ran ayenste hercules/And be-  
gan a Ioustes that was right hooite & sharpe/Their spe-  
res were stronge and brake not lightly / but they mette  
10 often tymes / and some ouerthrowen & smyten down of  
her horses / They that myght not Iuste ayenst hercules  
Assayed eche other / lyke to lyke / Iason and theseus  
Iusted ofte tymes ayenst hercules / and pirothus sone  
of kynge yxion in lyke wyse / Alle they that I name  
15 mayntened them right vailliantly / Notwithstandyng  
aboue all other hercules abood all men / and no man  
myght abide his strokes but he bare hem all down/refer-  
uyd Iason / whiche encountrid hym dyuerce tymes &  
gaf hym many grete strokes/hercules bare down theseus  
20 to the erthe and pirothus & well fyfty stronge knygh-  
tes/he dide so moche that no man abode on the place but  
Iason & he And than he leste and fessed the Ioustes for  
the vailliance that hercules fonde in Iason/and euer af-  
ter he had a specyall loue to hym / and toke acqueyn-  
25 tance of hym and fested hym & made hym grete chere : . .

**A**T the ende of this Ioustes / knyghtes ladyes &  
damoyfelles wente vnto the pallays / there  
was hercules maad kynge of yconye / the feste  
was grete and riche more than I can reherce/the stran-  
30 gers were gretly fested and hyghly thanked in co-  
mune / what shall I make longe processe / whan all the



feste was passid with honour and glorye of hercules  
And was no more to do wherof ony memoire is for to  
saye / Pirothus praid all them that were there to be at  
his wedding in thessalonyque at a certayn day named  
eche man promysid hym to go theder and be ther ate / 5  
Euery man toke leue of hercules whan tyme was  
come of departing . And eche man retorned in to his con-  
tre and place / And they coude not ynowhe meruail of  
the glorye haboūdyng & apperynge to habonde . growe  
flourysshē . & fructesie in hercules / whiche was so cour- 10  
toys and humble . And that for the grace that he had  
in temporall honour and worship . he was so vertu-  
ous that he was not the more prowde ne enhaunfid  
hym self / but the more meked and lowed hym self :: .

¶ How the centaures rauysshed ypodame at the wed- 15  
dyng of Pirothus . And how Hercules recouerd her  
agayn and vaynquysshid in batayll the centaures : .

**F**or to contynue our matiere / than whan hercules  
sawe approche the day of the wedding of pi-  
rothus . he disposed hym to go theder / by space 20  
of tyme he wente forth on his way and toke philotes  
with hym / And at alauenture toke with hym his Ar-  
mures of the skyn of the lyon . whan megera sawe hym  
departe . she was sore troublid for his departyng / & for  
that / þ<sup>t</sup> he toke his armours with hym . for she thought 25  
yf hercules had herd speke of ony auēture he wold goo  
theder & put hym in deuoir to assaie hym self agayn hit  
with grete sighes she loked after hym as ferre as she  
myghte / praiyng to the goddes that they wold bringe  
hym shortly agayn / hercules & phylotes wente forth in 30  
to the contrey also moche as they myght they exploited

fo her Iourney that they cam in to theſſalonycque / wher  
they were reſſeyued wyth grete Ioye of pirothus and  
of his ffrendes / they fonde there a right grete aſſemble  
of noble men . Ladyes and damoyſelles / Theſeus and  
5 Iaſon were there / the ffrendes of Iaſon wolde that Ia-  
ſon ſholde be maad knyght / And for to doo that / they  
preſented hym to hercules whiche gaf hym the ordre of  
knyghthode / And hercules ſayd that he had ſeen in hym  
a good begynnyng of a noble man / and yf he may lyue  
10 he ſhall attayne ones to thynges right hye and noble  
Amonge other thynges the day of weddyng cam . the  
cyte was all full of nobleſſe / the centaures were there /  
they were an honderd geantes armed that ran as the  
wynde / whiche the kynge yxion had ordeyned in theſ-  
15 faylle / of whome ſome dwellyd in molloſe and the  
other in Aphyte a cyte of Epire / wherof was quene  
ypodame the ladye and Bryde of the weddyng / ther  
were many kynges and prynces of whom I haue not  
the names . The quene ypodame and pirothus were  
20 weddyd to gyder after their lawe / Whan the tyme of  
dyner was come they ſette the ladye in the halle / where  
was maad a generall feſte / In this feſte alle the  
worlde was amply ſeruyd of all manyer good wy-  
nes and good metes / In eſpecyall the Centaures made  
25 paſſyng good chyere / And dronke ſo moche of the  
ſtronger wyne / that the pryncypall capitayn of all  
named Euricus and ſome of the other had wordes  
to gyder and troublid the feſte / In this trouble they  
foughte to geder / and caſte eche on other pottes . pla-  
30 ters . wyne and metes ſo terrybly that many of them  
were hurte and ded . Than anone was the halle full of

noyfe Euricus and fyfty of his geantes yffued out of  
the prees and wente to feche her harnois and armours  
whan they were armed they entrid in to the halle and  
not content of the trouble that they had maad how  
well that hercules and the other entendyd to appefe  
them that flewe eche other / they toke the quene ypo-  
dame and bare her out and raufshid her and fledd  
away with her / whan the ladies sawe this grete out-  
rage / they efcried all affraied . thaffraie was fo grete  
that hercules . Iafon . pirothus & thefeus ran vnto them  
And whan they knewe that the centaures had rauf-  
shid the lady / at fewe wordes they wente and armed  
them anone &c : : .

**H**ercules dyd on the skyn of the lyon and toke  
his fwerd his bowe & his arowes And than  
wente after the geantes wyth oute abidyng  
of any other companye or perfone . the geantes were  
withdrawen vnder a tree / and there they renged them  
in bataylle . as they that wiste well and feurly that  
the firfte that shold come to them shold be hercules . they  
hatyd hercules fecretly . And they had envie of his glo-  
rye . they swore all the deth of hercules / and than whan  
they were in these termes and deuyses / Euricus aspi-  
ed fro ferre hercules . and shewid hym to his felawshipp  
hercules was all alone and cam not a paas softely as  
a man . but he cam rennyng as lightly and also fwyf-  
tely as the herte rennyth in the valeye And femed that  
he flawe in the ayer / the fwyftenes of hercules ne abaf-  
shyd ne affrayed not the centaures . they were well  
foure fcore . And they were alle of grete corages They  
toke than their glayues . polhaxes . fwerdes and other



habyllemens of warre / And some of the strengest of  
 them wente ayenst hercules / on that other syde assone  
 as hercules approchid so nyghe as he myght shote at  
 them / he bente his bowe and with an arowe he smote  
 5 a centaure named gryneus in fuche wyse that the  
 arowe perced the heed entryng by the visage and nay-  
 led & attachid his hede vnto a tree that stood by hynde  
 hym . with the second arowe he smote another geant  
 named petreus in the breste thurgh his armour that hit  
 10 wente thurgh his body / with the thirde he hurte doril-  
 las a terrible geant & nailed his hand vnto his visage  
 ffor whan the geant sawe the strook come he held vp  
 his hand to fore his visage / & the arowe entrid with  
 so grete myght as afore is sayd and made the hand to  
 15 be attachid to his visage of whyche strook he was  
 ded / he shotte many moo arowes than also longe as he  
 had ony / and he shotte none . but yf he hurt or slewe oon  
 of the geantes / whan his shotte was failled / the gean-  
 tes strongly esmeuyd of that they had seen her felawes  
 20 dye by the shotte of hercules / they escried vpon hercules  
 and they enuyronned hym on all sydes / Cilarus . pheo-  
 tones . nessus . myncus . astilo lodeum . and pifeon . were  
 the firste that smote vpon hercules with the glayues /  
 hercules toke his sward and cam agayn pheotones that  
 25 had a grete axe so grete that hyt was a mannys bur-  
 thon // Pheotones anone lyfte vp hys grete axe and  
 wende to haue smyten a myghty strook vpon hercules  
 But hercules that knewe ynowhe of the warre tor-  
 ned hym from the strooke / And so the grete axe fyll-  
 30 down to the ground / And than sodenly hercules caught  
 that grete axe and plukkyd hit out of his handes / and

forthwith gaf hym a strook with all so grete that he smote of his right arme with the sholdre &c : : .

**S**Vche was the begynnyng of the batayll of hercules & of the centaures . Cilarus smote than hercules behynde with all his myght / pifeon <sup>5</sup> and ledeum smote hym also all at oon tyme . notwithstanding hercules astroyed not ones therfore / but in retornyng to cilarus he gaf hym a strook with the axe so fermlly on his helme that hit entrid in to his body that he confounded the geant to the erthe . And so he feruyd <sup>10</sup> in lyke wyse pifeon and ledeum . Iafon and thefeus put them than in the batayll . And well proued her yougthe / at theyr comyng for to gyue them herte and courage . hercules threstid in to the gretteft prees of the geants And so wroughte with the axe . that they cur- <sup>15</sup> syd phiotones that had brought hit theder And alle them that had forged hit . In betyng and smytyng down to fore them . hercules began than to seke ypodame . he fonde her alle be wepte right beside and nyhe Euricus / Than he spake to euricus and said to hym . thou euyl <sup>20</sup> gloton thou haste this day trowblid the feste and the lady of my ffrende pirothus . And now anone I shall trowble thyn esperite . with this word he descharged the axe and smote with all euricus in suche wise on the heed that he fill down dede / vnto the grete enbasse- <sup>25</sup> ment of the other geantes . ffor in beholdyng the Axe dyed wyth the blood of euricus their capitayne . they were all abasshid . Than began hercules to smyte more and more vpon the geantes / their was none than so feure . but he was aferde ner none so ferme but he ne <sup>30</sup>



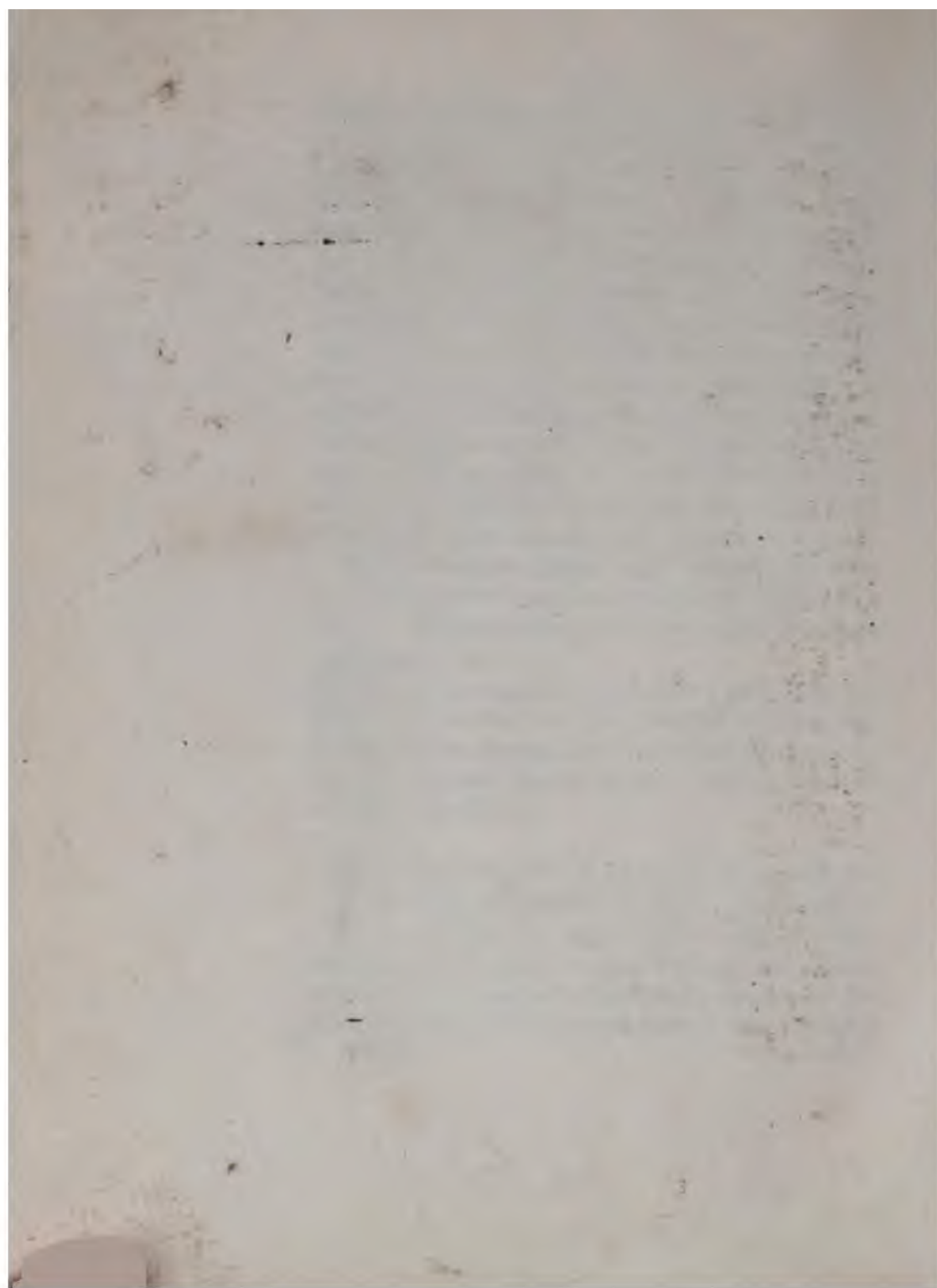
began to hyde hym and tremble for fere / hys strookes  
were not sustenable / he put his enemyes out of araye /  
and vnto flyght / finally wyth the helpe of Iason of  
theseus & of pirothus that were meruailloussi vaillant  
5 they vaynquysshid & chassed them vnto a ryuer / wher  
that . xii . of them sauued them in passyng and swim-  
myng ouer / And all the remenant of them were perse-  
cuted vnto the deth / reseruyd lyncus that hercules helde  
prisonner / for as moche as at the discomfiture . he praid  
10 hym of mercy . and yelded hym vnto hym / Thus were  
the centaures destroied more by the strength & hand of  
hercules than by any other / whan hercules had so doon  
that ther were no moo of the centaures vpon the place /  
he and hys felawys retorned vnto ypodame / And  
15 brought her agayn vnto the cyte with grete tryumphe /  
what shall I saye the ladyes recourid Ioye by the reco-  
urance of ypodame / and recomenced and began agayn  
the feste that dured after eyght dayes ryght grete and  
sumptuous &c : : .

20 ¶ How pluto rauysshid proserpyne / And how Or-  
pheus wente for her in to hell / and how the quene Se-  
ra cam vnto the the weddyng of pirothus and how these-  
us and pyrothus foughte wyth Cerberus porter of  
the sayd helle &c : : .

25 I N this tyme that is to wete a lityll tofore the  
weddyng of pirothus as pluto the kynge of  
molose sone of Saturne and broder of Iupi-  
ter sayld and wente by See sechyng hys aduen-  
tures / And so longe he sayled that he arruyd in Se-  
30 cyle / And that he fonde there nyghe by the Ryuage a







THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED  
AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS NOT  
RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON OR  
BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED  
BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE  
NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE  
BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.

STUDY  
CANCELLED  
CHARGE





